Oxford English Grammar Course
Basic

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English
Oxford English Grammar Course

Basic

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

With answers
publisher's acknowledgements

The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs and cartoons:

Alamy pp57 (Isabella Lucy Bird/Visual Arts Library), 109 (Paris/Antony Nettle), 137 (airplane/Antony Nettle), 137 (speedboat/Ron Bedard), 137 (motorbike/Oleksiy Maksymenko), 137 (tractor/Juice Images), 282 (cafe/KIM), 282 (corner/Jim Powell), 282 (shopping/STOCK4B GmbH); Ancient Art & Architecture Collection pp45 (ship), 45 (Namibia); Bridgeman Art Library pp109 (Sunflowers/National Gallery, London, UK); CartoonStock p86; Corbis UK Ltd. pp137 (yacht/Patrick Ward), 282 (river/Jeff Henry); French Ministry of Culture and Communication p45 (Chauvet); Getty Images pp57 (Ann Carstairs/Mike Powell/The Image Bank), 282 (diving/PhotoDisk Green/David De Lossy); Greg Evans International pp13, 161 (Taj Mahal), 161 (Edinburgh Castle); Philip Hargraves: p167 (no shirt no shoes); Impact Photos p45 (China); iStockphoto p167 (no hard hat/Linda Steward); Oxford University Press pp45 (Stonehenge/Photodisc), 59 (supermarket), 73; 109 (book/Mark Mason), 117 (spider/Eureka), 117 (cat), 117 (bear), 161 (Tower/Corel); 209; 221; 282 (steps/Photodisc), 282 (bike/Photodisc), 282 (skiing/Photodisc), 282 (gate/Photodisc), 282 (fence/Photodisc), 282 (yellow line/Photodisc), 282 (bridge); 205 (Mark Mason); Private Eye p287 (keys/Michael Heath); Punch Cartoon Library pp50; 58; 93, 195 (children, toys/Honeysett), 231, 287 (married/Pete Dredge); Raleigh Cycles p137 (bicycle); Robert Harding Picture Library pp109 (China/Gavin Hellier), 161 (Globe Theatre/Fraser Hall); Robert Thompson pp119; 139 (Marriage Guidance); Royal Geographical Society p109 (North Pole); Sayle Screen Ltd p188; Shutterstock pp117 (dinosaur/Jean-Michel Girard), 117 (penguin/Jan Martin Will), 117 (elephant/Victor Soares), 117 (tiger/pandapaw); Stan Eales p114; The Cartoon Bank pp1; 22; 59; 139 (spell-checker/Marshal Hopkins/Conde Nast Publications), 195 (bed/Stephen Stein/Monde Nast Publications), 218; The Diana Fossey Gorilla Fund International p101; Michael Swan: pp 167 (no cycles/good food served here, look both ways), 212

Commissioned illustrations by:

Hamesh Alles: p13; Emma Brownjohn/New Division: pp 35, 37, 91, 200; Stefan Chabluk: pp 19, 85, 131, 156, 168 (prepositions), 187, 215, 254, 290; Mark Duffin: pp 146, 152, 153, 155, 177, 190, 191, 197, 199, 224, 225 (snakes), 230, 241, 256, 261; Paul Daviz/Illustration: pp 183, 203; Richard Coggan: pp 80, 211


Every effort has been made to trace the owners of copyright material used in this book, but we should be pleased to hear from any copyright holder whom we have been unable to contact.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p132 The Sound of Silence Copyright © 1964 Paul Simon and Bruce Woodley. Used by permission of the Publisher: Paul Simon Music.

Sources

p73 www.zerocarbonbritain.com
p82 Lucile by Owen Meredith
p107 The Elephant's Child in Just So Stories by Rudyard Kipling
p183 Based on A contribution to statistics from Wislawa Szymborska Poems New and Collected
authors' acknowledgements

We owe a continuing debt to the many people whose advice and comments helped us with earlier versions of this material. The present book has benefited enormously from the hard work and professionalism of our editorial and design team at Oxford University Press. In particular, we would like to acknowledge the contributions of our remarkable editor, Sarah Parsons, and our equally remarkable designer, Phil Hargraves, who have made it possible for us to write the book that we wanted to, and whose input is evident on every page.
introduction

Who is this book for?
The *Oxford English Grammar Course* (Basic Level) is for all elementary and pre-intermediate learners who want to improve their knowledge of English grammar.

What kind of English does the book teach?
This book teaches the grammar of spoken and written British English. But it can also be used by students of American, Australian or other kinds of English – the grammatical differences are very small and unimportant.

How is the book organised?
There are 22 sections. A section covers one part of English grammar (for example: making questions and negatives; present tense verbs; problems with nouns). Each section contains:

- a presentation page which introduces the point of grammar
- several short units with explanations and exercises
- two ‘More Practice’ pages: these include ‘Grammar in a text’ exercises and internet exercises
- a short revision test.

Grammar in a text. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).

A TRUE STORY

In 1......... 1969, in 2 .......... Portland, 3.......... Oregon, 4 .......... man went to rob 5 .......... bank.
He didn’t want 6 .......... people in 7 .......... bank to know what was happening, so he walked up to
one of 8 .......... cashiers, wrote on 9 .......... piece of 10 .......... paper, ‘This is 11 .......... robbery and
‘I’ve got 12 .......... gun’, and showed 13 .......... paper to 14 .......... cashier. Then he wrote, ‘Take all
15 .......... money out of your drawer and put it in 16 .......... paper bag’. 17 .......... cashier read
and gave 22 .......... paper back to 23 .......... robber. 24 .......... robber ran out of 25 .......... bank.

Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google).
How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Hits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“too much fast”</td>
<td>40,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“everybody is”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“everything are”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“most people”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“too fast”</td>
<td>10,900,000: Correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“everybody are”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“everything is”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“most of people”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two levels
More basic units are marked ‘Level 1’; more advanced units are marked ‘Level 2’.

One way of using the book: to study particular points
If you want to know more about a particular point (for example present tenses, the difference between *should* and *must*, or the position of adverbs), look in the index (pages 355–362) to find the right unit(s). Read the explanations and do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).
Another way of using the book: for systematic study

If you are working without a teacher, we suggest:

1. DON'T go right through the book from beginning to end – some parts will be unnecessary for you.
2. Decide which sections you most need to study. Section 1, 'be and have', for example? Section 8, 'questions and negatives'? Section 19, 'relative pronouns'? Or other sections?
3. Go to the pages that you need. Read the grammar explanations, do the exercises, and check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).
4. In some units there are 'Grammar and vocabulary' exercises for students who would like to learn more words. Try these as well if you want to.
5. Do some or all of the exercises in the 'More Practice' pages.
6. Go to the revision test at the end of the section, and try some or all of the questions.
7. Check your answers. If you still have problems, look at the explanations again.

Website

On the website there are tests which will help you to decide what you need to study, or to find out how well you have learnt the different points of grammar. There are also extra exercises and games to give you more practice on some of the points.

Pronunciation

The 'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM will help you to pronounce structures fluently, with good rhythm and stress.

Examinations

This book teaches all of the grammar (and more!) that is needed for Common European Framework Levels A1 and A2, and is suitable for learners studying for Cambridge KET and PET.

If you know everything in the book, will you speak perfect English?

No, sorry!

1. Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. (And not many people need to.) But this book will help you to speak and write much more correctly.
2. Books like this give short practical explanations. They cannot tell you the whole truth about English grammar, and they cannot give you enough practice to get all the difficult points right. If you follow the rules in this book, you will not make many mistakes. But you will probably need to practise using the structures in different situations. (The website material will help with this.) You will find more complete information about difficult points in the Intermediate Level of the Oxford English Grammar Course.
3. Grammar is not the only important thing in a language. You also need a wide vocabulary, and – very important – you need a lot of practice in listening and speaking, reading and writing. Remember: this is a grammar practice book, not a complete English course.

We hope that you will enjoy using our book.

With our best wishes for your progress in English.

Michael Swan and Catherine Walter
words for talking about grammar

active and passive: I see, she heard are active verbs; I am seen, she was heard are passive verbs.

adjectives: for example big, old, yellow, unhappy.
adverbs: for example quickly, completely, now, there.
affirmative sentences or statements are not questions or negatives – for example I arrived.
articles: a/an ('indefinite article'); the ('definite article').
 auxiliary verbs are used before other verbs to make questions, tenses etc – for example do you think; I have finished, she is working. See also modal auxiliary verbs.

clause: see sentence.
comparatives: for example older, better, more beautiful, more slowly.
conditional: a structure using the conjunction if.
conjunctions: for example and, but, because, while.
consonants: see vowels.
contractions: short forms like I'm, you're, he'll, don't.

classical: see formal.
countable nouns: the names of things we can count – for example one chair, three cars; uncountable (or 'mass') nouns: the names of things we can't count, like oil, rice.
determiners: words like the, some, many, my, which go before (adjective +) noun.
double letters: pp, tt, ee etc.
formal, informal, conversational: We use formal language with strangers, in business letters etc: for example 'Good afternoon, Mr Parker. May I help you?' We use informal or conversational language with family and friends: for example 'Hi, John. Want some help?'
future verbs: for example I will go; Ann is going to write to us.
imperatives: forms like Go home, Come and sit down, Don't worry, which we use when we tell or ask people (not) to do things.
indirect speech: the grammar that we use to say what people say or think: for example John said that he was tired.
infinities: (to) go, (to) sleep etc.
informal: see formal.
-ing forms: going, sleeping etc.
irregular: see regular.
leave out: If we say Seen John?, we are leaving out Have you.
modal verbs or modal auxiliary verbs: must, can, could, may, might, shall, should, ought to, will and would.
negative sentences are made with not: for example I have not seen her.
nouns: for example chair, oil, idea, sentence.
object: see subject.
opposite: hot is the opposite of cold; up is the opposite of down.

passive: see active.
past perfect tense: see perfect tenses.
past progressive tense: see past tenses.
past tenses: for example went, saw, stopped (simple past); was going, we're eating (past progressive).
past participles: for example gone, seen, stopped.
perfect tenses: forms with have/has/had + past participle: for example I have forgotten (present perfect); It has been raining (present perfect progressive); They had stopped (past perfect).

personal pronouns: for example I, you, us, them.
plural: see singular.
possessives: for example my, your, mine, yours; John's, my brothers'.
prepositions: for example at, in, on, between.
present participles: for example going, sleeping etc (also called -ing forms).
present perfect tenses: see perfect tenses.
present tenses: for example He goes (simple present); She is walking (present progressive).
progressive (or 'continuous'): for example I am thinking (present progressive); They were talking (past progressive).
pronouns: for example I, you, anybody, themselves.
question tags: for example isn't it?, doesn't she?
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc.
regular: plurals like cats, buses; past tenses like started, stopped; irregular: plurals like teeth, men, children; past tenses like broke, went, saw.
relative clauses: clauses that begin with relative pronouns: for example the man who bought my car.
relative pronouns: who, which and that when they join clauses to nouns: for example the man who bought my car.
sentence, clause: A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B etc) and ends with a full stop (.), like this one. A sentence may have more than one clause, often joined by a conjunction. For example: I'll come and see you when I'm in London.
simple past tense: see past tenses.
simple present tense: see present tenses.
singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.
spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.
simple past tense: see past tenses.
simple present tense: see present tenses.
singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.
spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.
subject and object: In She took the money – everybody saw her, the subjects are she and everybody; the objects are the money and her.
superlatives: for example oldest, best, most beautiful, most easily.
tense: She goes, she is going, she went, she was going, she has gone are different tenses.
third person: words for other people, not I or you: for example she, them, himself, John, has, goes.
uncountable nouns: see countable nouns.
verbs: for example sit, give, hold, think, write.
vowels: a, e, i, o, u and their usual sounds; consonants: b, c, d, f, g etc and their usual sounds.

other useful words
Here are some other words that are used in this book. Find them in your dictionary and write the translations here.

action .........................
choose ..........................
common ......................
complete (verb) ..................
correct ..........................
derivation ........................
difference ......................
event ...........................
expression ........................
form (noun) ......................
go on, happen ......................
in general .....................
introduction .....................
join .............................
mean (verb) ......................
meaning ........................
necessary ......................
news ..........................
normal ........................
normally .....................
particular ......................
plan ..........................

polite ..........................
politely ........................
possibility ........................
possible ........................
practise ........................
predict ........................
prefer .........................
probable ........................
pronounce ........................
pronunciation ........................
repeat ........................
report ........................
revision ........................
rule ........................
section ........................
similar ........................
situation ........................
pronounced (pronunciation) ........................
structure ........................
unnecessary ........................
unusual ........................
use (noun) ........................
use (verb) ........................
(verb) ........................
(verb) order ........................
list of units

SECTION 1  be and have  pages 1–14
grammar summary  1
be  I am happy today. Are we late?  2–3
be: past  Where were you? I was in Glasgow.  4
be: future  The bus will be full.  5
there is/was  There's a dog in the garden.  6
there is: future  Will there be cars?  7
have  I have do you have? I don't have  8
have: past and future  9
have: actions  He's having a shower.  10
have without do: have got  Have you got a cat?  11
be and have: more practice  12–13
be and have: revision test  14

SECTION 2  present tenses  pages 15–34
grammar summary  15
simple present affirmative  16
I work; you work; she works  17
simple present: use  I work in a bank.  18
simple present negatives  19
I don't know. She doesn't ski.  20
simple present questions  21
Do you remember me?  22
simple present: more practice  23
present progressive: forms  24
I'm reading. I'm not working.  25
present progressive: use  26
I'm working just now.  27
present progressive negatives  28
He's not listening to me.  29
present progressive questions  30
Is it raining?  31
present progressive: more practice  32
the two present tenses: the difference  33
non-progressive verbs  34
I don't understand.  35
present tenses: more practice  36
present tenses: revision test  37

SECTION 3  talking about the future  pages 35–44
grammar summary  38
going to  Look – it's going to rain.  39
present progressive  40
What are you doing this evening?  41

SECTION 4  past tenses  pages 45–56
grammar summary  42
simple past: forms  43
I worked. I went.  44
simple past: use  45
I left school in 1990.  46
simple past: negatives  47
I did not work.  48
I did not go.  49
simple past questions  50
Did you pay?  51
What did she say?  52
already, yet and just  53
since and for  since Tuesday; for ten years  54
past tenses: more practice  55
past tenses: revision test  56

SECTION 5  perfect tenses  pages 57–72
grammar summary  57
present perfect: forms  58
I have paid. Has she forgotten?  59
finished actions: present perfect  60
or simple past?  61
time words: present perfect  62
or simple past?  63
already, yet and just  64
since and for  since Tuesday; for ten years  65
present perfect progressive  66
It's been raining since Sunday.  67
past perfect  68
It had already begun when we arrived.  69
perfect tenses: more practice  70
perfect tenses: revision test  71

SECTION 6  modal verbs  pages 73–92
grammar summary  72
modal verbs: introduction  73
can, must, should etc 74
must  75
You must be home by eleven. Must you go?  76
have to  77
Do you have to teach small children?  78
SECTION 7 modal verbs: revision pages 93–102

grammar summary

modal verbs

modal verbs: more practice

modal verbs: revision test

SECTION 8 questions and negatives pages 103–118

grammar summary

yes/no questions

question words

question-word subjects

questions with long subjects

prepositions in questions

SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms pages 119–138

grammarsummary

infinitives: using to

infinitive

infinitive: more

preposition + infinitive

verb + object + infinitive

verb + infinitive

infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150

grammar summary

structures with get

verbs with prepositions

phrasal verbs

verbs with two objects

have something done

imperatives

let’s (suggestions)

special structures with verbs: more practice

special structures with verbs: revision test
### SECTION 18  if  pages 243–252

**grammar summary** 243

*if: position; unless*

*if: future*  
*I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.*  

*not real / not probable*  
*If dogs could talk, ...*

*if I were you, ...*

*lf I go, I will ...; if I went, I would ...*

*unreal past*  
*If A had happened, B would have happened.*  

*lf: more practice*  

*lf: revision test*  

---

### SECTION 19  relative pronouns  pages 253–262

**grammar summary** 253

*relative who and which*  
*the keys which I lost*  

*relative that*  
*a bird that can't fly*  

*leaving out relative pronouns*  
*the car (that) you bought*  

*prepositions*  
*the man that she works for*  

*relative what*  
*It was just what I wanted.*  

*relative pronouns: more practice*  

*relative pronouns: revision test*  

---

### SECTION 20  indirect speech  pages 263–272

**grammar summary** 263

*tenses and pronouns*  
*Bill said he was really happy.*  

*indirect questions*  
*She asked him what his name was.*  

*present reporting verbs*  
*She says she comes from London.*  

*here and now > there and then*  

*infinitives*  
*She told me to get out.*  

*indirect speech: more practice*  

*indirect speech: revision test*  

---

### SECTION 21  prepositions  pages 273–286

**grammar summary** 273

*at, in and on (time)*  

*from ... to, until and by*  

*for, during and while*  

*in and on (place)*  

*at (place)*  

*other prepositions of place*  

*prepositions of movement*  

*prepositions: more practice*  

*prepositions: revision test*  

---

### SECTION 22  spoken grammar  pages 287–298

**grammar summary** 287

*question tags*  
*This music isn't very good, is it?*

*short answers*  
*Yes, I have. No, they didn't.*  

*reply questions*  
*Oh, yes? Did they really?*

*revision of spoken question and answer structures*  

*leaving out words*  
*Don't know if she has.*  

*so am I; nor do I etc*  

*spoken grammar: more practice*  

*spoken grammar: revision test*  

---

LIST OF UNITS  xiii
SECTION 1  be and have

grammar summary

be (am/are/is/was/were)
- We can use adjectives, nouns or expressions of place after be.
  She is late. I'm hungry. Are you a doctor? Is everybody here?
- We use a special structure with be – there is – to introduce things: to say that they exist.
  There's a strange woman at the door. There are some letters for you.
- Be can be an auxiliary verb in progressive tenses (see page 23) and passives (see page 94).
  She is working. It was made in Hong Kong.

have (have/has/had)
- We can use have or have got to talk about possession, relationships and some other ideas.
  Do you have a car? I don't have any brothers or sisters. Ann has got a headache.
- And we can use have to talk about some kinds of actions.
  I'm going to have a shower. What time do you have breakfast?
- Have can also be an auxiliary verb in perfect tenses (see Section 5).
  I haven't seen her all day. We knew that he had taken the money.

'The thing is: you can be or not to be, that is the question.'
(Shakespeare: Hamlet)

There's a thin man inside every fat man.
(George Orwell)

Is there life before death?
(Seamus Heaney)

You can have it all, but you can't do it all.
(Michelle Pfeiffer)

If you've got everything, you've got nothing.
(Leni MacShaw)

When I was young there was no respect for the young, and now that I am old there is no respect for the old.
(J B Priestley)
I am happy today. Are we late?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BE: PRESENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am a doctor. Are you American? We are not ready.

1. Put in am, are or is.
   - You ........ late.
   - We .......... very well.
   - My sister ........ a doctor.
   - Paul and Ann ........ in America.
   - I think you ........ tired.
   - My name is Peter.  
   - My sister is ill.
   - We are all tired.
   - They are here.
   - I am sorry.
   - Claire is ill.
   - We are very late.
   - They are here.
   - She is at home.

2. Write these sentences with contractions.
   - Claire is ill. Claire's ill.
   - My name is Peter. My name's Peter.
   - I'm a doctor. I'm late.
   - Our house is small. Our house is very small.
   - You're late. You're very late.
   - They're late. They're here.
   - We're ready. We're ready.

3. Make questions with be.
   - STATEMENT: I am late. The taxi is here. We are late. Your keys are in the car.
   - QUESTION: Am I late? Is the taxi here? Are we late? Are my keys in the car?

4. Put in question words with are or is.
   - Who's that? 'It's my brother.'
   - Where are those men? 'I don't know.
   - 1. .................. you late? 'My watch is broken.'
   - 2. .................. your mother? 'Not very well.'
   - 3. .................. Daniel? 'In hospital.'
   - 4. .................. those men? 'I don't know.'
   - 5. .................. your birthday? 'March 17th.'
To make negative (__) sentences with be, we put not after am/are/is or 'm, 're, 's.

I am not Scottish. We are not ready. I'm not tired. She's not here. They're not my friends.

We can also make contractions with n't: you aren't, she isn't etc (BUT NOT I'mn't).

5 Write negative (__) ends for the sentences.
   - I'm Greek, but (from Athens) I'm not from Athens.
   - It's winter, but (cold) it's not cold.
   1 She's tired, but (ill) it's not cold.
   2 They are in England, but (in London) it's not cold.
   3 You're tall, but (too tall) it's not cold.
   4 We are late, but (very late) it's not cold.
   5 It's summer, but (hot) it's not cold.
   6 I'm a student, but (at university) it's not cold.
   7 John's good-looking, but (very nice) it's not cold.
   8 Anne is at work, but (in her office) it's not cold.
   9 This is a nice coat, but (mine) it's not cold.
   10 It's a big car, but (very fast) it's not cold.

We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?
And we use be with ages.

Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer.
'I'm late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? 'I'm interested in politics.'
What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you? I'm 17.'

6 Complete the sentences under the pictures.

She is hungry...
1 He ............... 2 She ............... 3 ............... 4 It ............... 

7 Put in words from the box.

afraid ✓ cold colour hot hungry interested old right size thirsty wrong

- He is a big man, but he is ............... of her.
1 You think I'm wrong, but I know I'm ............... 
2 ‘What ............... is that T-shirt?’ ‘Extra large.’
3 What ............... is your car?
4 Sorry, I'm not ............... in her problems.
5 'It's the 18th today.' 'You're ............... - it's the 19th.'
6 'Something to drink?' 'No, thanks. I'm not ...............'
7 'It's ............... in here.' 'Open a window.'
8 Is it ............... here in winter?
9 'How ............... is your girlfriend?' 'She's 19.'
10 'I'm ............... ' 'Would you like a sandwich?'

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**be: past** Where were you? I was in Glasgow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Forms</th>
<th>Contractions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>wasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>weren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was/were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we were</td>
<td>were/were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they were</td>
<td>were/were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Put in was or were.**

1. In summer 1990 I ______ in Brazil.  
   - 'We __________ very happy to see you yesterday.' 'And I __________ happy to see you.'
2. Lunch __________ OK, but the vegetables __________ not very good.
3. I can't find my keys. They __________ here this morning.
4. It __________ cold and dark, and we __________ tired.
5. My grandmother __________ a doctor, and her two brothers __________ both doctors too.
6. '__________ you in London yesterday?' 'No, I __________ in Glasgow.'
7. 'When __________ your exam?' 'It __________ yesterday.'
8. 'Why __________ you late?' 'The train __________ late.'

**Put the words in the correct order to make questions.**

1. __________ Ann at home yesterday?
2. __________ good party was the.
3. __________ people were the interesting.
4. __________ teacher father your was a.
5. __________ everybody was late.
6. __________ your was driving test when.
7. __________ open windows why the all were.
8. __________ John's brother school was with at you.

**Put in wasn't or weren't and words from the box. Make sure you understand actually. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

- The lesson __________ interesting. Actually, it was very boring.
1. You __________. Actually, you arrived 10 minutes early.
2. My father __________. Actually, he worked as a bus driver.
3. I __________ yesterday. Actually, I was with Susan.
4. The children __________ yesterday. The doctor came to see them.
5. We __________ last week. We went to Scotland for a few days.
6. The snow __________ at Christmas. We couldn't ski.
7. Ann and Peter __________ when I phoned.
8. It __________ last night. Actually, it was quite cold.

**For the present perfect of be (I have been etc), see page 61.**
be: future  The bus will be full.

1/you/he/she/it/we/they will be
will (you/she etc be?)
l/you/he etc will not be

Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)

It will be cold this evening. I'll be at home all day tomorrow.
Where will we be ten years from now? The exam won't be difficult.

Look at the table and complete the text.

 Tomorrow .................. very hot in Cairo.
It ...................... hot in ......................
...................... warm in ......................
...................... cold in ......................
...................... very cold in ......................

Change these sentences to affirmative (+) or negative (-).

The bus will not be full. The bus will be full.
She'll be late. She won't be late.
1 I'll be sorry. I won't be sorry.
2 It will not be hot. It will be hot.
3 We won't be at home. We will be at home.
4 The shops will be closed. The shops will be open.
5 He'll be in Scotland. He won't be in Scotland.
6 Lisa will be at school. Lisa will not be at school.

To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject.

STATEMENT +: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. The bus will be full.
QUESTION -: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Will the bus be full?

Make questions with will ... be ...?

you / at home / this evening Will you be at home this evening?
when / lunch / ready When will lunch be ready?
1 when / your father / in England
2 Ann / at the party / with John
3 everybody / here / at 8.00
4 the train / late / again
5 when / Joe and Mary / in the office
6 the weather / good / tomorrow
7 where / you / on Tuesday

Complete the sentences.

1 (your age) This year I am ........................................ In 2000 I ........................................
   Last year ........................................ Next year ........................................ In 20.... I ........................................
2 (a friend's age) This year he/she ........................................ In 2000 ........................................
   Last year ........................................ Next year ........................................ In 20.... ........................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**there is/was** There’s a dog in the garden.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there is</td>
<td>there was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there are</td>
<td>there were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn’t</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contractions: there’s; isn’t, aren’t, wasn’t, weren’t

We use *there is, there are* etc to say that something or somebody exists.
We often use *there is, there are* etc before *a/an, some* and *any*.

*There’s a dog in the garden.* (NOT *A dog is in the garden.*)
*There are some letters for you.*
*Is there any milk in the fridge?* (NOT *Is any milk ...?*)
*There isn’t much coffee.*
*Were there any phone calls?* (NOT *Were any phone calls?*)
*There was a good film last night.*

1. Make some sentences with words from the three boxes, using *there is* etc.

- There is/are a lot of water air grass dogs elephants trees cars people computers ...
- There isn’t much (you think of some more things)
- There aren’t many
- There isn’t/aren’t any
- There wasn’t/weren’t any

- ... in Africa
- ... in the USA
- ... in Antarctica
- ... in London
- ... on the moon
- ... in 1600 ...
- ... (you think of some more places or times)

To make questions with *there is* etc, we put *is* etc before *there*.

**STATEMENT**: There is a letter for you. There were some problems. William says there are six eggs.

**QUESTION**: Is there a letter for me? Were there any problems? How many eggs are there?

2. Make present or past questions with *there is* etc.

- any fruit juice in the fridge (present)  Is there any fruit juice in the fridge?
- any letters for me (past)  Were there any letters for me?
- how many people / in your family (present)  How many people are there in your family?
- a doctor here (present)  A doctor here (past)
- any trains to London from this station (present)  Any trains to London from this station (past)
- a special price for students (past)  A special price for students (past)
- any mistakes in my letter (past)  Any mistakes in my letter (past)
- much money in your bank account (present)  Much money in your bank account (past)
- how many students / in your class (present)  How many students / in your class (past)
- many children at the swimming pool (past)  Many children at the swimming pool (past)
- how many people / at the party (past)  How many people / at the party (past)
there is: future  Will there be cars?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will there be?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there will not be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contraction: won't (= will not)

There will be a public holiday next Tuesday.  Will there be a meeting tomorrow?

There will not be any time for us to see Mary.  There won't be any of my friends at the party.

1 Complete the sentences with there will be and words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fish</th>
<th>flowers</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>hospital</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>sun</th>
<th>ten people</th>
<th>trouble</th>
<th>two new students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 I think there will be rain tomorrow.
2 But I think ................................................. on Tuesday.
3 ...................................................... in the class tomorrow.
4 ...................................................... in our house at the weekend.
5 ...................................................... for supper tonight.
6 ...................................................... a new .............................................. in our town next year.
7 'Mum, I've broken a window.' .............................................. when your father comes home.
8 ...................................................... a lot of .............................................. in the garden this summer.

2 Make negative (􀀂) sentences. Use There will not be or There won't be.

1 time / see Granny  ........................................................................
2 exam / Saturday  ........................................................................
3 meeting / tomorrow .................................................................
4 any trains / Sunday .................................................................
5 any buses / 4 o'clock in the morning ........................................
6 If you get up late tomorrow, / any breakfast .............................
7 anybody / home tomorrow evening ........................................
8 any children / the party .............................................................
9 a French lesson / Monday evening ...........................................
10 time / have lunch today ............................................................

3 Write questions about life in the year 2100, with Will there be …?

1 (cars) ............................................................. 4 (different countries) .............................................................
2 (trains) ............................................................. 5 (governments) .............................................................
3 (computers) ....................................................... 6 (a lot of problems) .......................................................
4 (good food) ....................................................... 7 (your question) .......................................................

4 Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.

1 There will be cars.  OR  There won't be cars.  4 .............................................................
2 ............................................................. 5 .............................................................
3 ............................................................. 6 .............................................................
4 ............................................................. 7 .............................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
have  I have  do you have?  I don’t have

I /you/we/they have
he/she/it has

We can use have to talk about possessions, family (and other) relationships and illnesses.

I have a new car.  Nina has two sisters.  Pete has a nice girlfriend.  We all have colds.

We also say that people have hair, eyes etc; and that things have parts.

You have beautiful eyes.  My new car only has two doors.

1 Circle the correct form.
- John / have two brothers.
- Grace has / have a cold.
1 My father / My parents has two cars.
2 We all / Sally have blue eyes.
3 I have / has a headache.

4 I see that your brother have / has a new girlfriend.
5 You / Paul has very long hair.
6 These houses have / has big rooms.
7 I can’t read this book – it has / have 800 pages.
8 Susie / Susie and Mick have a really nice flat.

2 Write about three things that you have, and three things that one of your friends or relations has.
1 I have ........................................
2 I ........................................
3 ........................................
4 ........................................
5 ........................................
6 ........................................

3 Make questions (?) and negatives (??) with do/does/did + infinitive (without to).
(For questions and negatives without do, see page 11.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>NEGATIVE ??</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have the keys. Joe has a car.</td>
<td>Do I have the keys? Does Joe have a car? (NOT Does Joe has …)</td>
<td>I do not / don’t have the keys. Joe does not / doesn’t have a car.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Write about three things that you don’t have, and three things that one of your friends or relations doesn’t have.
1 I don’t have ........................................
2 ........................................
3 ........................................
4 ........................................
5 ........................................
6 ........................................
**have: past and future**

**PAST: I/you/he/she/it/we/they had**
When I was a student I **had** an old Volkswagen. Ann **had** a cold last week.

We make past questions and negatives with *did* + infinitive (without to).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clara <strong>had</strong> a cold.</td>
<td>Did Clara <strong>have</strong> a cold?</td>
<td>Clara <strong>did not</strong> / <strong>didn't have</strong> a cold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Make sentences about Clara when she was six.**

   - a bicycle  
   - a dog  
   - a computer  
   - very fair hair  
   - lots of friends  
   - many nice clothes  
   - her own room

2. **Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use *I had* and *I didn’t have*.**

   1. I **had** ...........................................................
   2. I **didn’t have** ..................................................

**FUTURE:** I/you/he/she/it/we/they **will (not) have**

Contractions: *I’ll, you’ll* etc; *won’t (= will not)*

One day, everybody **will have** enough food. Julia says that she **won’t have** children.

To make future questions with *have*, we put *will* before the subject.

**STATEMENT:** John **will have** a car soon. The baby **will have** blue eyes.

**QUESTION:** Will John **have** a car soon? Will the baby **have** blue eyes?

3. **Read the text and complete the sentences about John’s future.**

   This year, John **doesn’t have** money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:

   - more money  
   - a small room  
   - a cat

   1. a job  
   2. a bicycle  
   3. a car  
   4. a house  
   5. a girlfriend  
   6. old clothes  
   7. a suit  
   8. a guitar

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I’m, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**have: actions**  *He’s having a shower.*

We use *have* in a lot of common expressions to talk about actions.

I usually *have breakfast* at seven o’clock. I’m going to *have a shower.*

Would you like *to have something to eat?* If Bill comes this weekend we’ll *have a party.*

Teresa *had a baby* in June. Are you *having a good time?* ‘*Have a good flight.*’ ‘Thanks.’

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *have, has or had* with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a baby</th>
<th>coffee</th>
<th>dinner</th>
<th>a game</th>
<th>a party</th>
<th>a shower</th>
<th>toast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- The people next door *had a party* last night and I couldn’t sleep.

1 I ........................................ with John yesterday evening.
2 My boss usually ................................ at 11 o’clock.
3 Nicole’s going to ................................ in August.
4 I usually ........................................ before breakfast.
5 We always ................................ for breakfast.
6 Would you like to ................................ of tennis?

We make simple present and past *questions* and *negatives* with *do/does and did.*

*We don’t have* parties very often.  *Does Kurt have* eggs for breakfast?

Did you *have a good journey?*  *We didn’t have* a holiday.

2 Make questions (?) and negatives (≠).

- *(good time)* ‘We went to Paris at the weekend.’ .................................................................
- *(breakfast)* I got up late this morning, so I .................................................................

1 *(lunch)* What time ................................................ on Sundays?
2 *(good trip)* Ann was in America last week. .................................................................
3 *(shower)* The hotel bathroom was very dirty, so I .................................................................
4 *(good flight)* Welcome to England, Mr Garcia. .................................................................
5 *(good game)* ‘Mark and I played tennis this morning.’ .................................................................
6 *(coffee)* ................................................................. before I go to bed.

**LEARN THESE COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH HAVE (USE A DICTIONARY IF NECESSARY)**

- have breakfast, lunch, dinner, (a cup of) tea/coffee, a drink, something to eat/drink
- have eggs/toast for breakfast, have fish for lunch etc
- have a wash, a shower, a bath
- have a good time, a bad day, a nice evening, a party, a holiday, a game
- have a good flight/trip/journey etc
- have a conversation
- have a baby
**have without do: have got**

Have you got a cat?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>l</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they have got</th>
<th>he/she/it has got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have l</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>etc got?</td>
<td>has he/she/it got?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>etc have not got</td>
<td>he/she/it has not got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contractions: I've, he's etc; haven't, hasn't

We often use **got** with **have**, especially in spoken English, and especially in the **present**.

This does not change the meaning: we use **have/has got** like **have/has** to talk about possession etc.

- **I have got** is the same as **I have**.
- **Have you got?** Is the same as **Do you have?** (We don't use do/does with have got.)
- **She hasn't got** is the same as **She doesn't have**.

I've got a cat. Has she got a dog? (NOT Does she have got ...)

I haven't got a car. She's got a sister. You've got beautiful eyes. Have you got a cold?

1. **Write about John's possessions etc.**
   - a bicycle: ✅ John's got a bicycle
   - suits: 2 He's got two suits
   - a horse: ✗ He hasn't got a horse
   - any children: ✗ He hasn't got any children
   - 1 brothers: 2
   - 2 a car: ✗
   - 3 dogs: 3
   - 4 a dictionary: ✅
   - 5 long hair: ✗
   - 6 any sisters: ✗

2. **Write three sentences about your possessions etc, and three about the possessions of a friend or relation.**
   1. I've got ........................................ 4 ........................................
   2. ........................................ 5 ........................................
   3. ........................................ 6 ........................................

To make questions (?) with **have got**, we put **have/has** before the subject.

**STATEMENT** 1: I have got a cold. Harry's got a fast car. Amy and Juan have got tickets.

**QUESTION** 2: Have you got a cold? Has Harry got a fast car? Have Amy and Juan got tickets?

3. Beth and Tom have got a lot of money. Ask questions with **have got**.
   - they / big house Have they got a big house?
   - 1 they / big garden
   - 2 Beth / good job
   - 3 Tom / big car
   - 4 they / plane
   - 5 they / any horses

**Past forms** with **got** (I had got etc) are **unusual**. We **don't use** **got** in the **future**.

She had a fast car. (MORE NATURAL THAN She had got a fast car.) I will have. (NOT I will have got.)

---

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
be and have: more practice

1 **Contractions. Rewrite these sentences with contractions.**
   - John is tired. **John's tired.**
   - They were not ready. **They weren't ready.**
   - We are all here. **We are all here.**
   - I am not a student. **I'm not a student.**
   - Where is your house? **Where is your house?**

2 **Contractions. Rewrite these sentences without contractions.**
   - I wasn't ready. **I was not ready.**
   - Tom's late. **Tom's late.**
   - Anna's hungry. **Anna's hungry.**
   - He doesn't have a car. **He doesn't have a car.**

3 **Be. Make questions and negatives. Use negative contractions.**
   - It's summer. (hot) **Is it hot? No, it's not hot.**
   - He's Chinese. (from Beijing) **Is he from Beijing? No, he's not from Beijing.**
   - He was ill. (in bed) **Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed.**
   - We'll be late. (very late) **Will we be late? Yes, we will be late.**
   - Her room's cheap. (very big) **Is her room cheap? No, it's not cheap.**
   - They were students. (at university) **Were they at university? Yes, they were at university.**
   - She was in the building. (in her office) **Was she in her office? Yes, she was in her office.**
   - They'll have something to drink. (coffee) **Will they have coffee? Yes, they will have coffee.**
   - They're rich. (happy) **Are they happy? Yes, they're happy.**

4 **Have: questions and negatives. Complete the sentences with do or does.**
   - I do not have much free time. **Do you have much free time?**
   - Does Carol have a boyfriend? **Does Carol have a boyfriend?**
   - Dogs do not have wings. **What do dogs have?**
   - England have any high mountains? **Does England have any high mountains?**
   - Ann doesn't have a job just now. **What doesn't Ann have?**

5 **There is. Put in expressions from the box.**
   - There's somebody at the door.
   - I think there will be an election next year.
   - I'm hungry. I'm not eating anything to eat.
   - There was a fascinating programme on TV last night.
   - How many people are in your family?
   - I wanted to buy shoes, but any nice ones in the shops.
   - How many people were at the meeting yesterday?
   - Two policemen at the door. They want to talk to you.
   - I'm not going to the party. Any interesting people there.
   - A phone call for me while I was out?
   - Anybody in the office tomorrow?
6 Grammar in a text. Read the text, and then write about yourself.

His name's Noureddin. He's from Rabat, in Morocco. He's a student. He's 21. He isn't married. He's got four brothers and two sisters. He's interested in music and politics. He isn't interested in sport.

My name's ..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................

7 Grammar in a text. Put in affirmative (+) or negative (−) forms of be or have.

Helen ▷ is ............ fourteen. She 1 ............... at a very nice school; she 2 ............... interested in the lessons — there 3 ............... only two teachers that she doesn't like — and she 4 ............... got lots of friends. (Two years ago she 5 ............... at a different school; the lessons 6 ............... very good, and she 7 ............... many friends, so she 8 ............... very unhappy.) The school 9 ............... a long way from Helen's house, so she gets up early. She 10 ............... a quick wash, and then she 11 ............... breakfast — cereal and fruit juice if she 12 ............... hungry. There 13 ............... a school bus, but if it 14 ............... very cold her mother takes her by car. In the evenings she 15 ............... school work; she 16 ............... much difficulty with this, so she usually finishes quickly. Then she 17 ............... supper. At ten o'clock she 18 ............... very tired, so she 19 ............... a bath and goes to bed. On Saturdays and Sundays she gets up at 12.00, 20 ............... a quick lunch and goes straight to her computer games.

8 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: relations. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the family tree and write 'true' or 'false' against the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>son</th>
<th>daughter</th>
<th>uncle</th>
<th>aunt</th>
<th>nephew</th>
<th>niece</th>
<th>grandchild</th>
<th>grandfather</th>
<th>grandmother</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

▷ Eric and Sue have four grandchildren. True
▷ Ruby is Bill's grandmother. False
1 Toby is Bill's son. ...............  
2 Bill is Paul's uncle. ...............  
3 Rosemary is Toby's mother. ...............  
4 Lily is Bill's niece. ...............  
5 Ben is Toby's nephew. ...............  
6 Ruby is Lily's cousin. ...............  
7 Alice is Bill's aunt. ...............  
8 Rosemary is Lily's uncle. ...............  
9 Toby is Ruby's nephew. ...............  
10 Ruby is Paul's niece. ...............  

9 Internet exercise. Can you find these on the internet?

1 The name of a song with the words “there is a house” ..........................................................  
2 The name of a song with the words “once I had” ..........................................................  
3 The name of a song with the words “have a party” ..........................................................
be and have: revision test

1 Circle the correct form.
   - (is) / Are your brother at home?
   - Where / Who / How is the station?
   - I / We was in London yesterday.
   - Are / Have you thirsty?
   - Alice is / has three brothers.
   - My sister is / has 25 today.
   - ‘I am / have cold.’ ‘Put on a sweater.’
   - I want / won’t be here next week.
   - I am / are tired.
   - Emma is / has very happy today.
   - There is / are a new secretary in the company.

2 Correct (/) or not (\)?
   - I don’t have breakfast today. \.
   - I’m not ...... I amn’t ......
   - he’s not ...... he isn’t ......
   - Do you get a bicycle? ......
   - Had you a good journey? ......
   - Jane is having a shower. ......

3 Change the sentences to questions or negatives.
   - It’s Tuesday. \ It isn’t Tuesday \ OR \ It’s not Tuesday \.
   - There’s a taxi outside. ?
   - Chris has got a headache. ?
   - Joe has a car. ?
   - Ann had a meeting yesterday. ?
   - I had coffee for breakfast. ?
   - There will be an English lesson tomorrow. ?
   - I’m hungry. ?
   - Petra’s got a new car. ?
   - She had a nice time at the party. ?
   - The house has got a big garden. ?

4 Make present (PR), past (PA) or future (F) questions.
   - Peter / Irish (PR)  Is Peter Irish?
   - Jane / have breakfast this morning (PA)  Did Jane have breakfast this morning?
   - Rosemary / from London (PR)
   - we / early (F)
   - Sarah / at home (PA)
   - Karim / have a cold (PR)
   - your car / fast (PR)
   - the manager / in America (F)
   - Tim and Anna / students (PA)
   - What time / you have lunch today (F)
   - you / here tomorrow (F)
   - those people / American (PA)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 2 present tenses

grammar summary

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work, she works, he doesn't work etc
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I am working, she is working, he isn't working etc

English has two 'present' tenses.

- We use the **simple present** mostly to talk about things that are always true, and things that happen repeatedly.
  
  *Dogs eat meat.*  
  *My grandmother lives in Brighton.*  
  *I work every Saturday.*

- We use the **present progressive** (or 'present continuous') to talk about things that are happening just around the time when we speak.
  
  *Look! The dog's eating your shoe.*  
  *I'm working hard these days.*

- We can also use the **present progressive** to talk about the future (see page 38).
  
  *I'm seeing Lucy tomorrow.*

Some old songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I like myself</th>
<th>She loves me</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I believe in love</td>
<td>She loves you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's leaving home</td>
<td>I'm crying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am I asking too much?</td>
<td>I'm flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is she really going out with him?</td>
<td>Why do I love you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are you going?</td>
<td>Why do fools fall in love?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke gets in your eyes</td>
<td>Why do lovers break each other's hearts?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love Paris in the springtime</td>
<td>I don't want to do it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
simple present* affirmative  I work; you work; she works

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I work</th>
<th>you work</th>
<th>he/she/it works</th>
<th>we work</th>
<th>they work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I live</td>
<td>you live</td>
<td>he/she/it lives</td>
<td>we live</td>
<td>they live</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I stop</td>
<td>you stop</td>
<td>he/she/it stops</td>
<td>we stop</td>
<td>they stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I work in a bank. He works in a restaurant.
You live near my brother. She lives in Liverpool.
We stop the lessons at 5.00. The train stops at York.

HOW TO MAKE HE/SHE/IT FORMS

- most verbs: + -s work → works know → knows rain → rains
- -s, -sh, -ch, -x: + -es pass → passes wash → washes teach → teaches mix → mixes
- exceptions: go → goes do → does have → has

1 Write the he/she/it forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>catch</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>fetch</th>
<th>fix</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>miss</th>
<th>push</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s:</td>
<td>comes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -es:</td>
<td>catches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VERBS ENDING IN -Y

- vowel + y -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: + -s say → says
- consonant + y -dy, -ly, -py, -ry, etc: -y → -ies fly → flies

2 Write the he/she/it forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>carry</th>
<th>copy</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>fry</th>
<th>marry</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>study</th>
<th>try</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s:</td>
<td>buys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y → -IES:</td>
<td>carries</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Put the words in the correct order.

eats dog too your much
Your dog eats too much.

1 live I that house in
2 bank Kim in a works
3 badly violin plays the very Claire
4 Scotland those from children come
5 young very look you

4 Circle the correct answers.

- We / My friend always wear old clothes.
- You / (John) always wears nice clothes.
1 We all / The boss thinks you're wonderful.
2 I / Catherine want a new job.
3 Bread / Books costs a lot.
4 Andy / Andy and Pete sings very well.
5 Sophy / Sophy and lan sings very well.
6 You / She drive too fast.
7 Our cat / Our cats never catches mice.
8 That child / Children makes a lot of noise.
9 That bus / All those buses go to the station.
10 My father / My mother and father teaches English.
simple present: use I work in a bank.

We use the simple present to talk about:
- things that are always true.
  - The sun rises in the east. My parents live near Dover.
- habits and things that happen repeatedly.
  - Joe plays golf on Saturdays.

We often use the simple present with words that tell you how often: for example always, never, often, sometimes, usually, once a day, twice a week, every year, all the time.

She always forgets my birthday. I often get headaches. You never listen to me. We play basketball twice a week. It rains all the time here.

1. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of verbs from the boxes.

   ask  get up ✓ go  make  play  speak

   - Peter always gets up late on Sundays.
   - 1 Ann and John sometimes go to music at weekends.
   - 2 My mother often makes French at home.
   - 3 Small children play questions all the time.
   - 4 Sarah speaks to Oxford to see her mother twice a week.
   - 5 I make more mistakes in English when I'm tired.

   forget  get  listen  live  watch

   - 6 I often listen people's names.
   - 7 We usually live to music in the car.
   - 8 My brother reads in Vancouver.
   - 9 I write a lot of films on TV.
   - 10 My parents watch all their food from supermarkets.

2. Choose suitable verbs in the correct forms to complete the sentences.

   - The sun sets in the west. (live, rise, set)
   - 1 That woman knows that she runs everything. (know, think, run, wash)
   - 2 Our son studies karate. (read, study, write)
   - 3 Alice tries to go skiing every year. (try, play, say)
   - 4 You always look very nice clothes. (look, start, wear)
   - 5 Andy always buys his car on Saturdays. (buy, sell, wash)
   - 6 Most people work for other people. (talk, work, teach)
   - 7 That child never says 'Thank you'. (like, say, sing)
   - 8 He likes in the same chair every evening. (know, like, sit, stand)
   - 9 My father listens to TV most evenings. (listen, think, watch)
   - 10 We always want what we can't have. (want, get, forget)

We do not use a present tense to talk about how long something has lasted (see page 65).

I have known her since 1990. (NOT I know her since 1990.)
simple present negatives  

I don't know. She doesn't ski.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I do not work</th>
<th>you do not work</th>
<th>he/she/it does not work</th>
<th>we/they do not work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contractions: don't, doesn't</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We make simple present negatives (✓) with do/does not + infinitive (without to).

STATEMENT ✓ | NEGATIVE ✗
--- | ---
I know | I do not know (NOT I know not)
You think | You do not think
He likes | He does not like
She remembers | She does not remember
It helps | It does not help
We want | We do not want
They understand | They do not understand

1 Make negative sentences. Use do not or does not.

- I play chess. (cards) I do not play cards.
  1 You speak very good Arabic. (Chinese) You do not speak very good Arabic.
  2 Bill plays the piano very well. (guitar) Bill does not play the piano very well.
  3 We agree about most things. (holidays) We do not agree about most things.
  4 Alan and John live near me. (George and Andrew) Alan and John do not live near me.
  5 My father writes novels. (poetry) My father does not write novels.
  6 Barbara works in London. (live) Barbara does not work in London.
  7 Henry likes old books. (parties) Henry does not like old books.

2 Make negative sentences. Use don't or doesn't.

- The train stops at Bristol. (Cardiff) It doesn't stop at Bristol.
  1 I like jazz. (pop music) I don't like jazz.
  2 Peter remembers names very well. (faces) Peter doesn't remember names very well.
  3 We know our Member of Parliament. (his wife) We don't know our Member of Parliament.
  4 Alice teaches engineering. (mathematics) Alice doesn't teach engineering.
  5 The children play football on Mondays. (hockey) The children don't play football on Mondays.
  6 The shops open on Sunday mornings. (afternoons) The shops don't open on Sunday mornings.

3 Complete the negative sentences, using words from the box.

You can use do not / does not or don't / doesn't, as you like.

- fish in Britain much petrol ✓ much tennis on Sundays Russian your phone number

- My car / use My car doesn't use much petrol.
  1 Our cat / like Our cat doesn't like.
  2 Melinda / speak Melinda doesn't speak.
  3 I / remember I don't remember.
  4 Oranges / grow Oranges don't grow.
  5 The postman / come The postman doesn't come.
  6 We / play We don't play.

18  PRESENT TENSES
4 Choose one verb to make each sentence negative.

- It doesn't snow very often in San Francisco. (snow, sing, play)
- I like football, but I don't like cricket at all. (think, like, remember)
- She lives in Japan, but she doesn't know a word of Japanese. (sing, work, speak)
- I'm sorry - I don't remember your name. (eat, remember, work)
- He works in New York, but he doesn't know what he does. (know, use, come)
- Mary's really tired, but she doesn't want to go to bed. (help, want, walk)
- We don't work a big flat - just one bedroom. (work, play, want)
- Phil doesn't work very hard, but he makes a lot of money. (work, stand, stop)
- Gemma's parents don't want I'm the right man for their daughter. (write, read, think)

5 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: games

Look at the table, and write five or more sentences like this:

Ann plays tennis, but she doesn't play cards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>tennis</th>
<th>football</th>
<th>rugby</th>
<th>basketball</th>
<th>baseball</th>
<th>chess</th>
<th>cards</th>
<th>hockey</th>
<th>badminton</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pete</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 What games do you play? And what games do you not play?

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115).

Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.)

She never phones me. (NOT She doesn't never phone me.)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
simple present questions  Do you remember me?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>STMT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know</td>
<td>Do I know?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You think</td>
<td>Do you think? (NOT Think you?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He likes</td>
<td>Does he like? (NOT Does he likes?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She remembers</td>
<td>Does she remember?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It helps</td>
<td>Does it help?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We want</td>
<td>Do we want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They understand</td>
<td>Do they understand?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Put in do or does.
   a. Do you know my friend Andy?
   b. Does this bus go to Cambridge?
   c. Ann want to come with us?
   d. your parents live near here?

2. Make questions.
   a. They smoke. Do they smoke?
   b. Ashley teaches French. Does Ashley teach French?
   c. The Oxford bus stops here.
   d. The teachers know her.
   e. You play the piano.
   f. John works in a restaurant.
   g. This train stops at York.
   h. We need more eggs.
   i. Fatima likes parties.
   j. Peter speaks Spanish well.

Do you know all these question words?
what when where who why how much how many what time

What do you think? (NOT What think you?) Where does Lucy live? (NOT Where lives Lucy?)
How much does this cost? (NOT How much this costs?)
What time does the train leave? (NOT What time the train leaves?)

3. Choose the correct subject.
   a. How much does the ticket cost? (the ticket / the tickets)
   b. Where do your daughter / your children live?
   c. What time does the lesson / the lessons start?
   d. What do you / the girl want?
   e. When does the holidays / the holiday finish?
   f. Why do that woman / those women talk so fast?
   g. What do you / she think of the new boss?

Choose the correct question word and put in do or does.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How</th>
<th>How many</th>
<th>How much</th>
<th>What</th>
<th>When</th>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Why</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. How much does the ticket cost?
2. How many your children live?
3. How many she want?
4. When the holidays start?
5. Where the teacher talk so fast?
6. Why languages he speak?
7. How you pronounce this word?

Make questions.

1. Where / she live? Where does she live?
2. What / you want? What does she want?
3. What / this word mean? What do you want?
4. What time / the film start? What time does the film start?
5. Why / she need money? Why does she need money?
6. How / this camera work? How much does it cost/
7. Where / you buy your meat? How much does it cost/do they cost?
8. Who / you want to see? Do you know Anna?

Do you know all these simple present questions? Study them, and then put the correct question into each conversation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How do you pronounce this word?</th>
<th>How do you spell that?</th>
<th>What does this word mean?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How much does it cost / do they cost?</td>
<td>Do you know Anna?</td>
<td>Where do you live/work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you do? (= 'What is your job?')</td>
<td>How do you do? (= 'I'm pleased to meet you.')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive?</td>
<td>What time does the film/concert/class start?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. 'With one c and double s.'
2. 'I'm a taxi driver.'
3. 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.'
4. 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the morning.'
5. '€500.'
6. 'No, but I know her sister.'
7. 'How do you do?'
8. 'I don't know. Look on the cinema programme.'

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
simple present: more practice

Circle the correct answers.
1. Where do / does your sister live?
2. My cat / My cats don't like fish.
3. This car don't / doesn't go very fast.
4. This train stop / stops at every station.
5. Why do English people / English people do drink so much tea?

Contractions: don't, doesn't

Make sentences.
1. Anu (live) in Birmingham. Do you speak Chinese?
2. Sarah (like) classical music. She doesn't like classical music.
3. I (like) getting up early.
4. You (want) something to drink.
5. Dan (play) football on Saturdays.
6. You (remember) her phone number.
7. That clock (work).
8. She often (fly) to Paris on business.
9. It (rain) much here in summer.
10. Elephants (eat) meat.
11. He (think) he can sing.
12. We (need) a new car.

Make sentences like the ones in Exercise 2. Write about yourself.
1. I like
2. I don't like
3. I want
4. I don't want
5. I need
6. I don't need
7. I often
8. I never
9. I always

The post office doesn't open / opens on Sundays.
When does your holiday start / start your holiday?
My parents both play / play golf.
That café / Those cafés stays open all night.
Her letters don't say / say very much.
present progressive*: forms  *I'm reading; I'm not working.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am working</th>
<th>you are working</th>
<th>he/she/it is working</th>
<th>we/they are working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am not working</td>
<td>you are not working</td>
<td>he/she/it is not working</td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Constructions: 'I'm, you're, he's etc (not) ing; you aren't, he isn't etc ...ing
What's he ...ing?, Where's she ...ing?, When's it ...ing? etc

We make present progressive verbs with *be* (I am, you are etc – see page 2) + ...ing.

John is studying Russian.  *I'm not working* today.

We use contractions (*I'm, John's, isn't* etc) in conversation and informal writing.

1 Make present progressive affirmative (+) and negative (-) sentences.

- John is working.
- John isn't working.
- *I am* working.
- *I am not* working.
- *He* is working.
- *He* isn't working.
- *We* are working.
- *We* aren't working.
- *They* are working.
- *They* aren't working.

Contractions: *I'm, you're, he's etc (not) ing; you aren't, he isn't etc ...ing

What's he ...ing?, Where's she ...ing?, When's it ...ing? etc

Contractions: *l'm, you're, he's etc (not)* ing;

Contractions: *l'm, you aren't, he isn't etc* ing

What's he ...ing?, Where's she ...ing?, When's it ...ing? etc

2 Write the -ing forms of these verbs.

break - breaking  clean - coming  come - coming  die - dying  enjoy - enjoying

go - going  live - living  make - making  play - playing  sing - singing

start - starting  wash - washing  write - writing

3 Write the -ing forms of these verbs.

get - getting  feel - feeling  put - putting  hit - hitting

jump - jumping  rain - raining  rob - robbing  shop - shopping

shout - shouting  sit - sitting  slim - slimming  dream - dreaming

stand - standing  talk - talking  turn - turning

*ANSwer* - answering  *OPen* - opening  *VISit* - visiting  *FORGET* - forgetting

*Also called 'present continuous'

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
present progressive: use *I'm working just now.*

We use the **present progressive** to say that things are happening *now* or *around now.*

- *I'm working* just now.
- *It's raining* again.
- *Jane's taking* driving lessons.

*I'm sorry, I can't come out. I'm working just now.* (Compare: *I work* every day. – see page 17.)

*Look – it's raining* again. (Compare: *It rains* every day here.)

*Jane's taking* driving lessons. (Compare: *A lot of people take* lessons with that driving school.)

*I'm enjoying* this party. (Compare: *I usually enjoy* parties.)

1. **Make present progressive sentences.**
   - Emma / read / the newspaper. *Emma's reading the newspaper.*
   - The baby / cry / again.
   - It / snow / hard.
   - You / look / very beautiful today.
   - Your coffee / get / cold.
   - I / play / a lot of football this year.
   - We / wait / for a phone call.
   - Chris and Helen / spend / a week in France.

2. **Look at the pictures and use the verbs in the box to say what Helen is doing.**

   - brush brush drink get up ✔ go listen open read read wash

   *She's getting up.*
   - 1 ........................................ her face.
   - 2 ........................................ her teeth.
   - 3 ........................................ to the radio.
   - 4 ........................................ coffee.
   - 5 ........................................ the newspaper.
   - 6 ........................................ her hair.
   - 7 ........................................ letters.
   - 8 ........................................ the door.
   - 9 ........................................ to work.
present progressive negatives  He's not listening to me.

I am not working  you are not working  he/she/it is not working  we/they are not working

Contractions: I'm not, you're not; he/she/it's not, we're not, they're not
Or: you/we/they aren't, he/she/it isn't

We make present progressive negatives with am/are/is not + ...ing.

I'm not working this week.

1 Choose the right verbs and make negative (■) present progressive sentences.
   ► I (write, play, ask) you for a lot of money. I'm not asking you for a lot of money...
   1 He (listen, stand, start) to me. .................................................................
   2 I (rain, work, get) today. ...........................................................................
   3 It (wear, rain, speak) now. ...........................................................................
   4 She (wear, look, wait) a coat. ......................................................................
   5 John's students (wait, like, learn) very much. .............................................
   6 We (enjoy, fly, read) this film. .....................................................................
   7 You (live, wait, eat) much these days. ..........................................................
   8 I (sleep, stand, expect) to pass the exam. .....................................................
   9 My computer (pay, work, write). ..................................................................
   10 I (stop, play, give) much tennis these days. ................................................

2 Write negative ends for the sentences.
   ► It's cold, but (■ snow) .................................................................
   I'm not seeing.
   ► I'm a teacher, but (■ work just now) ..........................................................
   I'm not working just now.
   1 He's a good footballer, but (■ play well today)
   2 They are in England now, but (■ live in London) ...........................................
   3 It's a new car, but (■ run well) .....................................................................
   4 Everybody says this is a good book, but (■ enjoy it) ........................................
   5 It's summer, but (the sun ■ shine) ................................................................
   6 I'm a student, but (■ study at university) .......................................................
   7 She sings when she's happy, but (■ sing just now) .......................................... 
   8 I don't have any problems, but (■ sleep well these days)
   9 We're on holiday, but (■ have a good time) ...................................................
   10 I'm crying, but (■ cry because of you) ...........................................................

3 Complete the sentences, using the verbs in the box.

not work  not listen  not rain  not move  not eat

1 The train ........................................................................................................
2 The children .................................................................................................
3 It .......................................................................................................................
4 The cat ...........................................................................................................
5 John ............................................................................................................... 

NOTE: We do not use a present tense to say how long something has lasted (see page 65).

I've been waiting since 9.00. (NOT I'm waiting since 9.00.)
**present progressive questions  Is it raining?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am I working?</th>
<th>are you working?</th>
<th>is he/she/it working?</th>
<th>are we/they working?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

We make present progressive questions with *am/are/is + subject + ing*

**STATEMENT:**
- It is raining.
- You are working.
- The children are making something.

**QUESTION:**
- Is it raining?
- Are you working?
- What are the children making?

---

1 **Make questions.**

- everybody / listen / to me?
- 1 you / wait / for somebody?
- 2 your boyfriend / enjoy / the concert?
- 3 those men / take / our car?
- 4 you / talk / to me?
- 5 it / snow?
- 6 we / go / too fast?
- 7 your computer / work?
- 8 you read / that newspaper?
- 9 the bus / come?
- 10 somebody / cook lunch?

2 **Complete the questions.**

- ‘Those people aren’t speaking English.’ ‘What language... are they speaking?’
- 1 ‘Bill’s writing something on the wall.’ ‘I can’t see – what...’
- 2 ‘The train’s stopping!’ ‘Why...’
- 3 ‘They’re studying now.’ ‘What...’
- 4 ‘They’re playing a game.’ ‘What game...’
- 5 ‘I’m going now. Goodbye.’ ‘Wait! Where...’
- 6 ‘Nadia’s telephoning somebody.’ ‘Who...’
- 7 ‘The baby’s eating something.’ ‘What...’
- 8 ‘Sue’s working as a secretary.’ ‘Where...’
- 9 ‘I’m cooking something good.’ ‘What...’
- 10 ‘I’m not living with my parents.’ ‘Where...’

3 **Put in question words and make present progressive questions. (More than one answer may be possible.)**

- you / do... what are you doing?
- 1 you / go now
- 2 Anne / cry
- 3 he / write
- 4 you / telephone
- 5 they / live
- 6 your brother / study English
- 7 you / cook
- 8 those people / look at me
- 9 the dog / eat
- 10 the children / do
present progressive: more practice

Put the words in the correct order. Use contractions (e.g. it's) where possible.

1. Are you talking to me?
   - me you talking are to?
   1. getting are you up?
   2. raining is again it.
   3. not you are listening.
   4. going where you are?
   5. talking fast I am?
   6. film enjoying not this am.
   7. laughing those people at are me why?
   8. am for you I cooking this not.
   9. you what drinking are?
   10. the baby eating the is newspaper.

Make present progressive sentences.

1. I / look for / the station + I'm looking for the station.
2. you / work / tonight? Are you working tonight?
3. it / rain + It's not raining.
4. Peter / try / to save money.
5. why / those children / cry?
6. your friends / play football / this afternoon?
7. I think she / make / a big mistake.
8. you / wear / your usual glasses?
9. 1 / start / to learn Spanish.
10. the 10.15 train / run / today?
11. David / live with his parents / any more?
12. what / you / do / in my room?

Complete the text with verbs from the boxes.

1–5: come ✔ look not wear snow walk wear

And Mrs Alexander is coming down the steps of the plane now. It is very cold and it
1. heavily, but she 2. very happy. She 3. a dark blue dress with a black coat and boots, but she 4. a hat. She really is a very beautiful woman. Her husband 5. down the steps with her.

6–11: kiss look return say stop try

Now Mrs Alexander and her husband 6. at the crowd and smiling. The photographers 7. to get nearer, but the police 8. them. What a day! At last, after twenty years, this wonderful woman 9. to her own country. Now the President 10. her hand. What 11. he to her, do you think?

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
the two present tenses: the difference

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work etc
- things that are always true
- things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc

The sun rises in the east.
She often wears red.
I play tennis.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I’m working etc
- things that are happening now
- things that are happening around now

The sun is not shining today.
She’s wearing a blue dress.
I’m playing a lot of tennis these days.

1 Put the expressions in the correct places.

```
SIMPLE PRESENT: I work etc
every day ✓ just now nearly always now ✓ on Fridays these days
this afternoon today very often when I’m tired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I’m working etc
now
```

2 Use the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

```
chase ✓ chase drive eat fly play play rain sell speak work write

Cats chase mice.
Cows eat grass.
Planes fly.  It often flies.

But this cat is not chasing mice.
But this cow eats grass.
But this plane flies.  But

Ann plays tennis.
John speaks English.
Bill drives a bus.

But

This shop books.
Carol plays the piano.
Simon writes poetry.
Dogs chase cats.

But

But she

But

But this
```
3 Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms.

1 'Do you smoke?' 'No, never.' (you / smoke)
2 'What ... are you eating?' 'A cheese sandwich.' (you / eat)
3 'Where ... these days?' 'In a garage.' (she / work)
4 'Bonjour.' 'Sorry, I ... French.' (not speak)
5 'Your English ... better.' 'Oh, thank you.' (get)
6 'Who ... to?' 'My boyfriend.' (you / write)
7 'Where's Suzanne?' 'Now.' (she / come)
8 'Here in summer?' 'Not very often!' (it / rain)
9 'Bonjour.' 'Sorry, I ... French!' (not speak)
10 'Your English ... better.' 'Oh, thank you!' (get)
11 'What ...? ' 'A very strange bird!' (you / look)
12 'What kind of music ...? ' 'All kinds!' (you / like)

4 Make true sentences about yourself.

- I often ... play tennis ... but I am not playing tennis now. (play)
- I often ... now. (play)
- I sometimes ... but I ... now. (wear)
- I often ... now. (speak)
- I often ... but I ... now. (listen)
- I sometimes ... but I ... now. (read)
- I often ... now. (watch)
- I sometimes ... but I ... now. (buy)
- I often ... now. (eat)
- I often ... but I ... now. (drink)
- I never ... and I ... now. (?)
non-progressive verbs  I don’t understand.

Some verbs are most often used in simple tenses, not progressive, even if we mean ‘just now’.

I like this weather. (NOT I’m liking this weather.)  What does he want? (NOT What is he wanting?)

THE MOST IMPORTANT NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS

believe, hate, hope, know, like, love, mean, need, prefer, remember, seem, think (= ‘have an opinion’), understand, want

I hate this music.  ‘We’re late.’ I know.  I love that colour.  Do you understand?
What does this mean?  I need some help.  ‘Tea?’ I prefer juice.’  Ayesha seems unhappy.

Note also the expressions it doesn’t matter (‘It’s not important’) and I see (= ‘I understand’).

I’m sorry I’m late.  It doesn’t matter.’  ‘There’s a problem.’  I see.’

Make sentences.

1. Ayesha / seem / unhappy today (+)  Ayesha seems unhappy today.
2. you / need / help ?  Do you need help?
3. you / know / her name ?  I don’t know her name.
4. Rob / want / to see the doctor ?
5. she / love / me !
6. Peter / seem / tired +
7. we / need / a new car +
8. you / know / that man ?
9. I / hate / this cold weather +
10. you / understand / this letter ?
11. you / like / this music ?
12. you / need / a new car ?
13. you / understand / this letter ?

Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hope</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>not matter</th>
<th>not understand</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>not remember</th>
<th>want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. What does Paul want... for his birthday?
2. ‘Przepraszam!’ ‘Sorry, I ........................................’
3. ‘Would you like some coffee?’ ‘No, thank you. I ........................................ tea, if that’s OK.’
4. ‘What do you think of this music?’ ‘I .............................. it.’
5. I’m going to the shops. .................................... anything?
6. ‘I’ve broken a cup.’ ‘It ........................................’
7. I ........................................ it doesn’t rain tomorrow.
8. .................................... what she told you?
9. I ........................................ her name or address.
10. .................................... it’s going to rain?
11. ‘We’ve got a problem.’ ‘I ..............................’
12. ‘You’re crazy!’ ‘What .................................... you ....................................?’
13. If you .................................... me, why can’t we get married?
14. My father likes most music, but he ........................................ rock.
SOME USEFUL EXPRESSIONS WITH NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS:

I hope so.  I hope not.  I think so.  I don't think so.  It depends.  I don't mind. (= 'It doesn't matter to me.')

'Will you pass your exam?'  'I hope so.'  'Is it going to rain?'  'I hope not.'
'Is that Maria over there?'  'Yes, I think so.'  'Are you free on Sunday?'  'I don't think so.'
'Can you help me?'  'It depends. What do you want me to do?'
'What would you like to drink?'  'I don't mind.'

Choose the best expressions to complete the conversations.

1. 'Is Ingrid enjoying her holiday?'  'I hope so.'  'I don't mind.'
   1 'Agresti, min ruggide flachsch?'  'I don't think so.'  'I don't understand.'
2. 'We're not happy with your work.'  'I hope so.'  'I see.'
3. 'Is Jeremy coming to dinner?'  'I see.'  'I hope not.'
4. 'Do you like this music?'  'I think so.'  'I don't remember.'
5. 'Is that Olivia getting into the taxi?'  'I know.'  'I don't think so.'
6. 'Who wrote 'War and Peace'?'  'It depends.'  'I don't know.'
7. 'It's Tuesday.'  'I think so.'  'I know.'
8. 'Can you lend me some money?'  'It depends.'  'It doesn't matter.'
9. 'We're too early.'  'I don't know.'  'It doesn't matter.'
10. 'What's Phil's address?'  'I don't remember.'  'It depends.'
11. 'Sorry, this coffee isn't very good.'  'I don't mind.'  'I hope so.'
12. 'Will you pass your exam?'  'I hope so.'  'I don't remember.'
13. 'Is Pete in his office?'  'I don't think so.'  'I see.'
14. 'Is it going to rain?'  'It depends.'  'I hope not.'
15. 'Can you help me?'  'I think so.'  'I don't remember.'

Write personal answers.

1. Will everybody in the world speak English one day?  I think so.  I don't think so.  I hope so.  I hope not.  I don't mind.  I don't know.......

1. Is your English getting better?  ...............................................................................................................
2. Will you be rich and famous one day?  ......................................................................................................
3. What were you doing at 8.00 in the morning on February 16th last year?
   ..........................................................................................................................................................
4. How many stars are there in the sky?  ...........................................................................................................
5. Will it rain tomorrow?  .......................................................................................................................................
6. Have you got a good government?  .....................................................................................................................
7. Will you live to be 100 years old?  ....................................................................................................................
8. Are there people on other planets?  ....................................................................................................................
9. Are you a nice person?  ......................................................................................................................................
10. Will you fall in love next week?  .......................................................................................................................  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WHAT YOU SAY</th>
<th>WHAT THEY SAY</th>
<th>WHAT THEY MEAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Do you mind if I sit here?'</td>
<td>'No, please do.'</td>
<td>'Go away.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'm sorry I spilled coffee on you.'</td>
<td>'It doesn't matter at all.'</td>
<td>'You clumsy fool.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Can you do something for me?'</td>
<td>'It depends. What is it?'</td>
<td>'Certainly not.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'What shall I sing?'</td>
<td>'I don't mind. Anything.'</td>
<td>'Don't sing.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Do you see what I mean?'</td>
<td>'Yes.'</td>
<td>'No.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Shall I wear the blue dress or the green one? Which do you prefer?'</td>
<td>'I don't mind. They're both beautiful.'</td>
<td>'A dress is a dress. What's the difference?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'You don't seem to like the food.'</td>
<td>'Oh, I do. It's delicious.'</td>
<td>'I hate it.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I need to be alone.'</td>
<td>'I see.'</td>
<td>'I don't see.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
present tenses: more practice

1 Question words. Choose words from the box to complete the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>how</th>
<th>how many</th>
<th>how much</th>
<th>what</th>
<th>what time</th>
<th>when</th>
<th>where</th>
<th>why</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ................. do you want for Christmas?</td>
<td>5 ................. do you usually get up?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ................. does the holiday start?</td>
<td>6 ................. rice do you want?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ................. does your sister live?</td>
<td>7 ................. do you need to learn English?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 ................. tickets do you need?</td>
<td>8 ................. do you make scrambled eggs?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Simple present. Choose the correct verbs to make simple present sentences.

- I / hamburgers (like, drink, play) I like hamburgers.
- Henry / French (make, speak, work) Does Henry speak French?
- the buses / on Sundays (make, play, run) The buses don't run on Sundays.
- 1 what language / Brazilians (run, work, speak)
- 2 Felix / fast cars (sing, catch, drive)
- 3 Annemarie / newspapers (make, read, clean)
- 4 my two brothers both / in London (play, speak, work)
- 5 dogs / vegetables (walk, eat, pass)
- 6 Maria / the piano (play, make, cool)
- 7 Peter / at weekends (work, wear, break)
- 8 my husband / very well (want, cook, stop)
- 9 Roger / to work with animals (want, play, read)
- 10 this bus / to Belfast (work, speak, go)

3 Present progressive. Write true sentences to say what is (not) happening now.

- I / work I'm working.
- 1 I / wear red socks I'm.
- 2 it / rain
- 3 I / listen to music
- 4 I / sit on the beach
- 5 I / sing
- 6 I / think about something beautiful
- 7 I / wait for a phone call
- 8 the sun / shine
- 9 the government / make everybody happy
- 10 my English / get better

4 Progressive and non-progressive verbs. Correct (√) or not (x)?

- Are you liking this weather? ..x.
- I'm working today. √
- You're driving too fast. ....
- What is this word meaning? ....
- I'm not wanting a drink just now. ....
- Where are you living now? ....
- 5 I'm thinking you're wrong. ....
- 6 That man is looking like your brother. ....
- 7 Sorry, I'm not understanding. ....
- 8 I'm seeing the doctor this morning. ....
- 9 'I can't pay you today.' 'I see.' ....
- 10 What are you thinking about? ....
5 Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

get up  go have like like live look after not like not want work work ✔

Anna works in a circus in the south of England. She 1 works the animals. Every day she 2 at 5.00, she 3 breakfast in her tent and then she 4 to work with the animals. She 5 her life very much, and she 6 the other people in the circus, but she 7 her boss. She also has problems with her boyfriend, James. He 8 500 miles away, in Scotland, where he 9 in a bank. He 10 her to stay with the circus.

cry do love not know not want not work read sit you think want

This morning Anna 11 . She 12 in her tent. She 13 a letter and she 14 . In the letter, James says ‘I 15 you to leave the circus and come to Scotland to be with me. I 16 to move to England to be with you, because I’m doing well in my job.’ Anna 17 what to do. She 18 James, but she 19 well in her job too. What 20 she should do?

6 Grammar and Vocabulary: clothes. Use the words in the box to say what the people are (not) wearing. Use a dictionary if necessary.

belt blouse boots cardigan coat dress glasses hat jacket raincoat shoes shirt skirt socks suit sweater trousers

John is wearing a white shirt, a blue sweater, a blue jacket, grey trousers with a blue belt, blue socks and black shoes. He is not wearing glasses.

Cathy is wearing

Sandra

David

7 Internet exercise. Use the internet to get information about a well-known person. Write some of the information (simple present sentences). Some of these words might be useful.

hate like live work play travel often always never
### present tenses: revision test

1. **Write the simple present he/she/it forms.**
   - go
   - catch
   - cost
   - do
   - enjoy
   - fly
   - have
   - hope
   - know
   - live
   - mix
   - pass
   - play
   - stand
   - teach
   - think
   - try
   - wash
   - wear
   - wish
   - work

2. **Write the -ing forms.**
   - calling
   - begin
   - cry
   - die
   - enjoy
   - fly
   - forget
   - get
   - happen
   - hold
   - hope
   - learn
   - look
   - make
   - open
   - play
   - send
   - sit
   - sleep
   - stop
   - take

3. **Put the words in order to make simple present sentences.**
   - Phil / dogs / like (+)
     - Phil likes dogs.
   - know / you / Anna (?)
     - Do you know Anna?
   - open on Sundays / the post office (?)
     - The post office doesn't open on Sundays.
   - 1 work / you / London (?)
   - 2 pop music / like / I (?)
   - 3 where / live / James (?)
   - 4 coffee / some / want / you (?)
   - 5 rain / here / it / a lot (?)
   - 6 I / my / every week / wash / car (+)
   - 7 Spanish / Luke / speak (?)
   - 8 friends / football / play / all your (?)
   - 9 a suit / wear / to the office / I (?)
   - 10 make / spaghetti carbonara / how / you (?)

4. **Put the words in order to make present progressive sentences.**
   - 1 sister / my / in Spain / travel (+)
   - 2 happy / Alice / look / very (?)
   - 3 the baby / why / cry (?)
   - 4 for the bus / wait / you (?)
   - 5 much tennis / I / these days / play (?)
   - 6 nice / Tim / wear / a / very / raincoat (?)
   - 7 me / talk / you / about / I (?)
   - 8 walk / slowly / you / too (+)
   - 9 that / what / eat / child (?)
   - 10 this / I / enjoy / concert (?)

5. **Correct (√) or not (X)?**
   - 1 ‘Where’s Melissa?’ ‘She’s coming now.’ ......
   - 2 ‘Are you smoking?’ ‘No, never.’ ......
   - 3 John cooks dinner just now. ......
   - 4 I work late most Tuesdays. ......
   - 5 Why is she looking at me? ......
   - 6 I’m going skiing every winter. ......
   - 7 You’re driving too fast. ......
   - 8 What is this word meaning? ......
   - 9 I’m seeing the doctor this morning. ......
   - 10 ‘I can’t pay you today.’ ‘I see.’ ......
   - 11 Where are you living now? ......
   - 12 What do you think about? ......
   - 13 I think you’re wrong. ......
   - 14 That man is looking like your brother. ......
   - 15 ‘Your English gets better.’ ‘Oh, thank you.’ ......
grammar summary

There are three common ways to talk about the future in English:

- with the *going to* structure.
  
  *I’m really going to stop smoking.*

- with the *present progressive*.
  
  *I’m seeing John this evening.*

- with *will*.
  
  *Anna will be in the office from 10.00 till 2.00.*

We use *going to* or the *present progressive* especially when the future has some present reality:

for example to talk about plans that we have already made.

We can sometimes use the *simple present* to talk about the future.

*Her train arrives at 15.37.* *I’ll phone you when I get home.*

*I’ll see you tomorrow if I have time.*

---

**Your horoscope for next week**

**AQUARIUS**

(Jan 21 – Feb 18)

Wednesday will bring money, but the money will bring problems.

**PISCES**

(Feb 19 – March 20)

It will be a difficult week. Don’t travel by train.

**ARIES**

(Mar 21 – Apr 20)

Some very strange things will happen on Tuesday. Try to laugh about them.

**TAURUS**

(Apr 21 – May 21)

The week will be full of danger. Stay away from children and animals.

**GEMINI**

(May 22 – June 21)

Your family will cause problems on Monday. And on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, …

**CANCER**

(June 22 – July 22)

The week will bring love, excitement and adventure. But not to you.

**LEO**

(July 23 – Aug 23)

Stay in bed on Thursday. Don’t open the door. Don’t answer the phone.

**VIRGO**

(Aug 24 – Sept 23)

You will meet an exciting stranger. Don’t believe anything that he says.

**LIBRA**

(Sept 24 – Oct 23)

You will spend most of the week in hospital. Good luck.

**SCORPIO**

(Oct 24 – Nov 22)

The week will be bad in many ways. But not as bad as the following week.

**SAGITTARIUS**

(Nov 23 – Dec 21)

You will make an unexpected journey. It will end badly.

**CAPRICORN**

(Dec 22 – Jan 20)

Trouble will come from a horse and a washing machine.
going to  Look – it’s going to rain.

It’s going to rain.

We often use going to when we can see the future in the present – when a future situation is starting, or clearly on the way.

Look – it’s going to rain.

Rebecca’s going to have a baby next month.

Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use the words in the box.

She is going to post a letter.

1. The woman ........................................
2. He ........................................
3. She ........................................
4. The cars ........................................
5. He ........................................
6. The ball ........................................

We often use going to to talk about intentions – things that people have decided (not) to do.

What are you going to wear this evening?  I’m not going to take a holiday this year.

Make questions with going to.

you / cook supper  Are you going to cook supper?
when / your brothers / be here  When are your brothers going to be here?
1. Jane / change her school ........................................
2. where / you / put that picture ........................................
3. what / you / buy for Felix’s birthday ........................................
4. Ethan / play football / tomorrow ........................................
5. when / you / stop smoking ........................................
6. Alice / go to university ........................................
7. you / phone the police ........................................
8. your mother / come and stay with us ........................................
9. she / buy that coat ........................................
10. what / you / tell the boss ........................................
Lindsay is talking about her holiday next week. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do any work</th>
<th>drive to Italy</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>learn some Italian</th>
<th>read English newspapers</th>
<th>stay in a nice hotel</th>
<th>swim a lot</th>
<th>take photos</th>
<th>visit museums</th>
<th>write postcards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▶ No, I'm not going to fly.</td>
<td>▶ I'm going to drive to Italy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make sentences with going to.

▶ Andy / start school / next week ✔ Andy is going to start school next week.
▶ you / see the dentist ✔ Are you going to see the dentist?
▶ I / work this evening ✔ I'm not going to work this evening.
1 how / you / get to London ✔ 2 when / Monica / come and see us ✔ 3 it / snow ✔
4 I / cook fish / for lunch ✔ 5 when / you / see the doctor ✔
6 Angela / marry / her secretary ✔ 7 John / call / this evening ✔
8 I / stop / playing poker ✔ 9 everybody / watch the football match ✔
10 Sally / get the job ✔

Write some sentences about your intentions. Use I'm (not) going to ...

1 I'm ___________________________ this evening.
2 ___________________________ tomorrow.
3 ___________________________ next year.
4 ___________________________ when I'm old.
5 ___________________________ one day.

NOTE: In informal speech (and songs), we often say gonna for going to.
We can use the present progressive with a future meaning, especially when we talk about plans for a fixed time and/or place.

**What are you doing this evening?**  **I'm staying in.**  **Where are you going on holiday?**  **Joe's coming to the theatre with us tomorrow.**  **I'm starting a new job next week.**

1. **Make sentences with the present progressive.**
   - **when / you / come back**  **When are you coming back?**
   - **I / go / there again**  **I'm not going there again.
   - **1 I / play / baseball tomorrow**
   - **2 I / go / to Canada next year**
   - **3 we / stay / with Paul and Lucy next week**
   - **4 you / work / this evening**
   - **5 what time / your friends / arrive**
   - **6 my company / move / to Scotland next year**
   - **7 how / your mother / travel to France**
   - **8 I / see / the dentist on Thursday**
   - **9 I / go / to a concert tonight**
   - **10 Gary / marry Cathy / after all**

2. **Look at Harry's diary and correct the sentences.**
   - **He's staying in Berlin on Friday night.**  **No, he's coming back to England on Friday night.**
   - **1 He's seeing John Parker on Sunday afternoon.**
   - **2 He's going to the Birmingham office by car.**
   - **3 He's having dinner with Stewart on Tuesday.**
   - **4 He's going to the theatre on Thursday evening.**
   - **5 His new secretary is starting on Friday.**
   - **6 Phil and Monica are going to his wedding on Saturday.**

3. **A friend of yours is going on holiday soon. Write questions.**
   - **when / leave**  **When are you leaving?**
   - **take / your sister**  **Are you taking your sister?**
   - **1 where / go**
   - **2 why / go there**
   - **3 how long / stay**
   - **4 stay / in one place**
   - **5 stay / with friends**
   - **6 how / travel**
   - **7 take / the dog**
   - **8 who / go with you**
   - **9 when / come back**

---

For contractions (I'm, aren't etc), see pages 2 and 315.
**will: predicting**  I think it will rain tomorrow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / you / he / she / it / we / they will work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will / you / he etc work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / you / he etc will not work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Constructions:** I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)

---

**We use will + infinitive to predict** – to say things that we think, guess or know about the future.

I think it will snow tomorrow. Be quick, or you'll miss your train.

Bella won't be here this evening. When will you know your exam results?

---

**Put the words in the correct order to make affirmative (✓) sentences.**

1. here George be will George will be here tomorrow.
2. speak everybody English perhaps will Perhaps everybody will speak English in the year 2100.
3. begin class will the begin class will the at 9.30.
4. be they'll home be they'll home soon.
5. examination will the difficult be examination will the difficult be
6. walk we'll party the to walk we'll party the to
7. you her John answer questions will you her John answer questions will
8. Sunday ten years old will Emily be on Sunday ten years old will Emily be on

---

**Make questions with will.**

1. what time / tomorrow evening's concert / start ?
2. when / you and the family / get back / from Paris ?
3. you / be / here tomorrow ?
4. you and your mother / be / here tomorrow ?
5. where / you / be / this evening ?
6. the children / have enough money / for the journey ?
7. how soon / you know / the answer ?

---

**Make negatives with won't and questions.**

1. I won't finish this work today. When will you finish it? (finish)
2. John won't be here tomorrow. Will he be here on Tuesday? (be)
3. Annie will be here at ten. When will you be here? (be)
4. I will be time for lunch. What time will you have a sandwich? (have)
5. You will find a pen in there. Where will you find one? (find)
6. The children will go to school in Ely. Where will they go? (go)
7. Dylan will get much money if he sells that car. How much will he get? (get)
8. Your car will be ready today. When will your car be ready? (be)
9. I will know the exam result today. When will you know the exam result? (know)

---

**NOTE:** After I and we, some people say **shall** instead of **will.** The meaning is the same; **will** is more common in modern English.

---

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**will: deciding, refusing, promising** *I’ll answer it.*

We can use *will* when we decide or agree to do things, and when we talk about refusing (saying ‘no’) and promising. We don’t use the simple present in these cases.

*OK, I really will stop smoking.*  
*She won’t speak to me.*  
*I’ll phone you.* (NOT I phone you.)

Things can ‘refuse’:

*The car won’t start.*  
*This pen won’t write.*

We often use *will* at the moment when we decide something.

*‘There’s someone at the door.’*  
*‘I’ll go.’* (NOT I go.)  
*‘That’s the phone.’*  
*I’ll answer it.*

1 **Put in words from the box with ‘I’ll or won’t’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>go shopping</th>
<th>go to bed</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>wash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m tired. I think I will go to bed.</td>
<td>I don’t know what he wants. He won’t tell us.</td>
<td>I …………………… the cups; can you dry them?</td>
<td>‘Can somebody post my letters?’ I …………………… it.</td>
<td>‘My motorbike …………………… ‘No petrol?’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **It’s time to change your life. Look at the ideas in the box and write six promises with will or won’t – the most important first.**

always think before I speak  
be nice to everybody  
drive too fast  
fal in love every week  
go for a walk every day  
go to bed early  
learn another language / a musical instrument  
read more  
relax  
smile at everybody  
smoke  
study English every day  
talk more slowly  
talk to strangers  
think about myself too much  
work harder (your own promise).

- *I’ll talk more slowly.*
- *I won’t drive too fast.*
- I ……………………  
- I ……………………  
- I ……………………  
- I ……………………

3 **Look at the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then circle the best answers.**

*I’ll think about it.  I’ll see. ( = I’ll think about it.)  (I’ll) see you tomorrow/ later.  
(I’ll) see you.  I’ll give you a ring/call. ( = I’ll phone you.)  I’ll tell you tomorrow/ later.

1 ‘Mum, can I have an ice cream?’ A I’ll see.  B I’ll see you.
2 ‘When do you want to play tennis?’ A I’ll see you tomorrow.  B I’ll tell you tomorrow.
3 ‘I’ve got to go now.’ A I’ll see you.  B I’ll think about it.
4 ‘Would you like to come dancing with me?’ A I’ll think about it.  B I’ll see you later.
5 ‘Can we talk about it some more?’ A I’ll see you.  B I’ll give you a ring.
6 ‘Goodbye now.’ A ‘See you tomorrow.’  B I’ll see.
7 ‘What do you want for your birthday?’ A ‘See you.’  B I’ll tell you later.
8 ‘Would you like to go to Scotland with me?’ A I’ll see you.  B I’ll see.’
simple present for future  Our train leaves at 8.10.

We can use the simple present to talk about timetables, cinema/theatre programmes and dates. Our train leaves at 8.10. What time does your flight arrive? The film starts at 7.30.

1 Put the words in order to make sentences.

1. leave / the flight / at 9.30
   The flight leaves at 9.30.

2. the film / what time / start
   What time does the film start?

3. at Mill Road / this bus / stop
   This bus doesn’t stop at Mill Road.

4. this term / on March 12th / end

5. 8.00 / start / the play

6. what time / arrive / you / in Rome

7. the banks / at 3.00 tomorrow / close

8. at every station / stop / the next train

9. when / start / the school holidays

2 We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when, as soon as and if.

We’ll see you before we go. (NOT ... before we will go.) We’ll have a drink after I finish work.

You can use my bike while I’m away. He’ll phone you when he arrives. (NOT ... when he will arrive.)

We’ll wait until Justin gets here. I’ll tell you if I need money. I’ll write as soon as I get home.

3 Put in the correct verb forms: simple present or will-future.

1. rains, we’ll have

2. if it rains, we’ll have the party inside. (rain; have)

3. John says he’ll work as a taxi-driver if he needs money. (work; need)

4. I’ll be free tomorrow evening, but I’ll see you on Friday. (not be; see)

5. Mary will study Chinese next year after she stops work. (study; stop)

6. I’ll drive you to the station as soon as I find my car keys. (drive; find)

7. When he marries her, his life changes a lot. (marry; change)

8. you’ll stop smoking if the doctor tells you that you must? (stop; tell)

9. if we talk to the boss very politely, he’ll listen to us? (talk; listen)

10. I’ll phone you after I get back from work. (phone; get)

For more practice on this point, see pages 236 and 245.
future: more practice

1 **Going to.** Look at the pictures. What is *going to* happen? Use *going to* with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crash</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drink a glass of water</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get on a bus</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go skiing</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go swimming</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have dinner</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make coffee</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play the violin</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start running</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He's *going to make coffee.*

1 He's ........................................ 6 ........................................
2 She's ........................................ 7 ........................................
3 They ........................................ 8 ........................................
4 The car ..................................... 9 ........................................
5 .............................................. 10 ........................................

2 **Present progressive.** A problem. (Use a dictionary if necessary.) Jane is seeing five people next week, one each day: her bank manager, her solicitor, her accountant, her dentist and her doctor. Who is she seeing when? Read the text in the box, fill in the table and complete the sentences.

- She's seeing her bank manager before her doctor.
- She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
- She's seeing her dentist two days after her bank manager.
- She's seeing her accountant two days after her doctor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>bank manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>dentist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>accountant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 **Will.** These are sentences from real conversations. Put in forms of *will* with expressions from the box. (C: the speaker used a contraction: 'll or won't.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Not snow</th>
<th>Start</th>
<th>Tell</th>
<th>Go to sleep</th>
<th>Soon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>It</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>And</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Put the words in order, and make statements (G), questions (W) or negative sentences (P) with going to (G), the present progressive (PP), will (W) or the simple present (SP).

- (G) start work / Robert / tomorrow + Robert is going to start work tomorrow.
- (PP) again / invite / her / I + I'm not inviting her again.
- (W) be / in the office tomorrow / Anna ? Will Anna be in the office tomorrow?
- (SP) leave / our train / at midday + Our train leaves at midday.

1. (G) stop / I / smoking .
2. (PP) I / Andrew / tonight / see .
3. (G) rain / it .
4. (G) marry / Peter / his boss .
5. (W) exams / his / pass / Oliver .
6. (W) like / this / you / film .
7. (SP) arrive / the bus from London / what time ?
8. (PP) I / tomorrow / the car / use .
9. (G) steak / I / cook / this evening .
10. (G) how / travel / to Ireland / you ?
11. (W, SP) I / phone you / when / get home / I .
12. (PP) you / on Saturday / work ?
13. (W) need / you / for the night / room / a .
14. (G) write / you / to your father ?
15. (W) we / enough / for a good holiday / money / have .
16. (W) key / find / the / I / where .
17. (W, SP) you / to university / after / leave school / you / go .
18. (PP) stay with us / next week / John and Sylvia .
19. (G) you / when / have a haircut ?
20. (G) get up / soon / you .

5 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: giving directions with will. Complete the letter. Put 'll with the verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

apple trees * bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time

Dear Pamela and Simon

To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ► the road for Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ► 'll pass an 1 on the left. Immediately after that, you (come to) 2 a bridge. Turn left after the 3 , and very soon you (come to) 4 a crossroads. Go left again, and you (see) 5 our 6 on the right in about 300m. You (recognise) 7 It because it's got a green 8 and four 9 . You (find) 10 the 11 under a mat outside the back door. Enjoy your holiday. I'm sure you (have) 12 a 13 .

Love

Susan

6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences that begin:

1 The government will .
2 The government will not .
3 The Prime Minister will .
4 The Prime Minister will not .
5 The President will .
6 The weather will .
future: revision test

1 Write the contracted forms.
   - I am going to  → I'm going to  
     1 I will  
     2 She will  
     3 It will not  
     4 They are going to  
     5 They will  
     6 They will not  
     7 She is not going to  
     OR  
     8 I am not going to  

2 Correct (√) or not (×)?
   - You eat with us this evening?  ×  
   - I'm taking a Spanish exam on Thursday.  ✓  
   1 'There's somebody at the door.' 'I go.'  
   2 Will Anna and John be here tomorrow?  
   3 I promise I write again soon.  
   4 I'll telling you everything soon.  
   5 The car won't start.  
   6 I'm working in London next week.  
   7 The concert starts at 8.00 this evening.  
   8 Emma's going to have a baby.  
   9 Do you play tennis with Peter this weekend?  
   10 Where will be the party?  

3 Correct the mistakes.
   - When you and Karen coming to see us?  When are you ...  
     1 The concert will tonight.  
     2 I will need a visa to go to China?  
     3 Our business will moves out of London next year.  
     4 Alan and Carol not are getting married after all.  
     5 I really going to stop smoking.  
     6 I won't be here tomorrow.  
     7 I phone you after I will get home.  
     8 The secretary will giving you all the information.  
     9 What you're doing at the weekend?  
     10 When will be the meeting?  

4 Make questions and negative sentences.
   - Tim will play the trumpet on Tuesday.  Fred / flute / Friday ✗  Serena / saxophone / Saturday ✗  
     Will Fred play the flute on Friday?  Serena won't play the saxophone on Saturday.  
     1 Susan's seeing Simon on Sunday.  Melanie / Martin / Monday ✗  Tessa / Tom / Tuesday ✗  
     2 Mr Smith is going to study Spanish in Seville.  Mr Andrews / Arabic / Algiers ✗  Mrs Roberts / Russian / Rome ✗  
     3 Charles will cook chicken for Charlotte.  Derek / duck / Dorothy ✗  Sally / spaghetti / Sam ✗  
     4 William is going to work in West Africa.  Harry / take a holiday / Hungary ✗  Steve / study / Siberia ✗  
     5 Angela is travelling to Amsterdam in August.  Oliver / Oslo / October ✗  Monica / Madagascar / May ✗  

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are cor...
SECTION 4  past tenses

grammar summary

**SIMPLE PAST:** I worked, she worked, he didn't work etc

**PAST PROGRESSIVE (OR 'PAST CONTINUOUS')**: I was working, she was working, he wasn't working etc

English has two 'past' tenses.

- We use the **simple past** for complete finished actions. We often use it in stories.
  
  *I wrote* ten letters yesterday.  
  *A man walked* into a police station and asked ...

- We use the **past progressive** to talk about actions which were **unfinished** at a past time.
  
  *What were you doing* at 10.00 last night? *I was writing* letters.

---

About 6,000 years ago, somebody painted this picture on a cave wall in Namibia, south-west Africa.

About 2,200 years ago, Shi Huangdi completed the Great Wall of China.

Stonehenge, in southern England, is about 4,800 years old. Who built it? Nobody knows.

About 1,200 years ago, Vikings from Scandinavia made this beautiful ship.

---

**THE CAVE OF CHAUVET-PONT-D'ARC**

About 33,000 years ago, in the Stone Age, a man or a woman drew this owl on the wall of a cave in southern France. We don't know anything about the artist, and we never will. We only know that somebody saw an owl, saw that it was beautiful, and recorded its beauty. (When Picasso first saw prehistoric cave art, he said 'We have learnt nothing.') Before the Bronze Age or the Iron Age, before the glaciers covered Europe and went away again, before all of recorded history, an unknown person left a message for us: 'I saw this creature, and I thought it was beautiful'. Thank you, Stone Age artist.
**REGULAR VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Irregular Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contractions**

- didn't

---

**HOW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS**

1. **most verbs:** + -ed
   - work → worked
   - help → helped
   - rain → rained

2. **after -e:** + -d
   - hope → hoped
   - like → liked

---

**Write the simple past.**

1. **Verbs ending in -y**
   - vowel (a, e, o) + y → -yed
     - play → played
     - enjoy → enjoyed
   - consonant (d, l, r etc) + y → -ied
     - try → tried
     - reply → replied

2. **Write the simple past.**
   - stay
   - study
   - cry
   - annoy
   - carry
   - hurry
   - pray

---

**Doubling (stopped, planned etc)**

- one vowel + one consonant → double consonant + -ed
  - stop → stopped
  - plan → planned
- two vowels: **don’t double**
  - seem → seemed
  - help → helped
- two consonants: **don’t double**
  - want → wanted
  - but wonder → wondered
- only double in **stressed** syllables
  - prefer → preferred

---

**Write the simple past.**

3. **shop**
   - rain
   - start
   - rob
   - slim

4. **jump**
   - shout
   - slip
   - fit
   - turn

5. **visit**
   - regret
   - develope
   - gallop

6. **Open**
   - Answer
   - refer

---

**With irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).**

- go → went
- see → saw
- buy → bought
- pay → paid

---

**Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don’t know.**

- become
- begin
- break
- bring
- catch
- come
- drink
- eat
- fall
- feel
- forget
- get
- give
- hear
- hold
- keep
- know
- learn
- leave
- let
- make
- pay
- put
- read
- say
- shut
- sit
- speak
- stand
- take
- tell
- think
- write
simple past: use *I left school in 1990.*

We often use the **simple past** to talk about **when** things happened.

- *I left school in 1990.*
- *I didn't see Ann yesterday.*
- *What time did you arrive?*

We use the **simple past**, not the present perfect (have seen etc) with **finished-time expressions**.

- *I saw that film last week.* (NOT I have seen that film last week.)
- *Did you pay William on Sunday?* (NOT Have you paid William on Sunday?)

1. **Put the beginnings and ends together, using the verbs in the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>die ✓ forget learn like read speak stop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Shakespeare died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 I ................................ my girlfriend's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 That's a really good book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 When we were children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I didn't ................................ my piano teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Where did you ...........................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   | A birthday on Monday. ...... |
   | B in 1616. ...... |
   | C so I ................................ my lessons last week. ...... |
   | D I ................................ it last year. ...... |
   | E we always ...................... French at home. ...... |
   | F to speak Spanish so well? ...... |

   **Note the word order with ago.**

   - *I started this job three years ago.* (NOT ... ago three years.) *It happened a long time ago.*

2. How long ago was your last birthday? Ten days ago? Five weeks ago? Eight months ago?

   Write the answer, and complete the other sentences.

   1. My last birthday was ..............................................
   2. Last Tuesday was ....................................................
   3. Last January ...........................................................
   4. My third birthday ...................................................

   We often use the **simple past** for things that happened **one after another**, for example in **stories**.

   *He parked his car, went into the station and bought a ticket. Then he had a cup of coffee and ...*

3. **Grammar in a text.** Put simple past verbs into the story.

   | 1–6: come hear open say not see stand |
   | 7–10: give hold not read take |
   | 11–15: run say not speak turn write |

   He ....................................... outside her door for a long time. Then he ....................................... her footsteps inside the house. She ....................................... the door and ....................................... out. At first she ....................................... him, but then she ....................................... , 'Oh, hello, Harold.' He ....................................... a paper out of his pocket and ....................................... it to her. She ....................................... it in one hand, but ....................................... it. 'Listen,' he ....................................... . She ....................................... you this letter because -- 'She ....................................... back into the house.

   He ....................................... and walked slowly down the street.

   **In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.**
simple past: negatives  \( I \) did not work.  \( I \) did not go.

We make simple past negatives (\( \square \)) with \( did \, not / didn't + \) infinitive (without to).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He cleaned the car.</td>
<td>He did not clean the car. (NOT He did not clean the car.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He started early.</td>
<td>He did not start early. (NOT He did not start early.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She saw you.</td>
<td>She didn't see you. (NOT She didn't see you.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John went to Rome.</td>
<td>John didn't go to Rome.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Circle the correct form.
   - I break / broke a cup yesterday.
   - Ann did not play / played tennis this morning.
   - Harry work / worked last Sunday.
   - I didn't know / knew where I was.
   - I didn't feel / felt well last night.

2. Make simple past negative sentences.
   - I played hockey last weekend. (football) \( I \) didn't play football. (football)
   - We spoke Spanish together. (Arabic) \( We \) didn't speak Spanish.
   - My uncle taught mathematics. (science) \( My \) uncle didn't teach mathematics.
   - Bill cooked the potatoes. (the fish) \( Bill \) didn't cook the potatoes.
   - I took my mother to the mountains. (my father) \( I \) didn't take my mother to the mountains.
   - We told our parents everything. (the police) \( We \) didn't tell our parents everything.
   - I wrote to my sister. (my brother) \( I \) didn't write to my sister.
   - I liked the party. (the music) \( I \) didn't like the party.
   - We knew her address. (phone number) \( We \) didn't know her address.

3. Complete the sentences with affirmative (\( \bigstar \)) or negative (\( \square \)) verbs.
   - I didn't break this window, but (the other one \( \bigstar \) ) I broke the other one.
   - I worked last week, but (the week before \( \square \) ) I didn't work the week before.
   - He didn't change his trousers, but (his shirt \( \bigstar \) )
   - She answered the first question, but (the others \( \square \) )
   - He phoned her, but (go to her house \( \square \) )
   - I didn't bring any flowers, but (some chocolates \( \bigstar \) )
   - She didn't buy a coat, but (a very nice dress \( \bigstar \) )
   - I ate the vegetables, but (the meat \( \square \) )
   - We kept the photos, but (the letters \( \square \) )
   - They didn't speak English, but (German \( \bigstar \) )
   - My grandfather shaved on weekdays, but (at weekends \( \square \) )

4. Write five things that you didn't do yesterday.
   - 1. .......................... ..........................
   - 2. .......................... ..........................
   - 3. .......................... ..........................
   - 4. .......................... ..........................
   - 5. .......................... ..........................
simple past questions  Did you pay?  What did she say?

1. did I work?  did you work?  did he/she/it work?  did we work?  did they work?

We make simple past questions (7) with did + subject + infinitive (without to).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He cleaned the car.</td>
<td>Did he clean the car? (NOT Did he cleaned the car?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The class went to Rome.</td>
<td>Where did the class go? (NOT Where did the class went?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Circle the correct form.

- I take / took my father to Spain last week.
- Did you hear / heard me?
- Did Theo bring / brought his wife with him?
- When did Gemma start / starts school?
- I see / saw Eric in the supermarket yesterday.
- The lesson begin / began very late.
- How did Oliver break / broke his leg?

Make simple past questions.

- James enjoyed the food, but (the music) did he enjoy the music?
- She listened to everything, but (remember it)
- You didn’t pay Ryan, but (the others)
- You liked the book, but (the film)
- He played football, but (well)
- You gave them some help, but (any money)
- She wrote to her sister, but (her mother)
- He learnt French, but (English)
- She got up early, but (early enough)
- You shut the back door, but (the front door)
- They took the children with them, but (the dog)
- She felt ill on Sunday, but (OK yesterday)
- He forgot the name of his hotel, but (the address as well)

Make simple past questions with what, who and where.

- Pete saw somebody. who did he see?
- John went somewhere.
- Bill bought something.
- Alice married somebody.
- Mary broke something.
- Mike stayed somewhere.
- Joe studied somewhere.
- Robert studied somewhere.
- Ann wrote something.
- Catherine heard somebody.
- George understood something.
- Helen forgot something.
- Sarah went on holiday somewhere.

For questions without did, like Who said that? or What happened?, see pages 108-109.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
simple past questions Did you pay? What did she say?

We make simple past questions (2) with did + subject + infinitive (without to).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He cleaned the car.</td>
<td>Did he clean the car? (NOT Did he cleaned the car?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The class went to Rome.</td>
<td>Where did the class go? (NOT Where did the class went?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Circle the correct form.

1. I take / took my father to Spain last week.
2. Did you hear/heard me?
3. Did Theo bring / brought his wife with him?
4. When did Gemma start / starts school?
5. I see / saw Eric in the supermarket yesterday.
6. The lesson began / began very late.
7. How did Oliver break / broke his leg?

Make simple past questions.

James enjoyed the food, but (the music)

1. She listened to everything, but (remember it)
2. You didn’t pay Ryan, but (the others)
3. You liked the book, but (the film)
4. He played football, but (well)
5. You gave them some help, but (any money)
6. She wrote to her sister, but (her mother)
7. He learnt French, but (English)
8. She got up early, but (early enough)
9. You shut the back door, but (the front door)
10. They took the children with them, but (the dog)
11. She felt ill on Sunday, but (OK yesterday)
12. He forgot the name of his hotel, but (the address as well)

Make simple past questions with what, who and where.

Pete saw somebody.

1. John went somewhere.
2. Bill bought something.
3. Alice married somebody.
4. Mary broke something.
5. Mike stayed somewhere.
6. Joe studied something.
7. Robert studied somewhere.
8. Ann wrote something.
9. Catherine heard somebody.
10. George understood something.
11. Helen forgot something.
12. Sarah went on holiday somewhere.

For questions without did, like Who said that? or What happened? see pages 108–109.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Complete the sentences with affirmative (+) verbs, questions (?) or negatives (−).

- She didn’t feel well last night, but (OK this morning +) she felt OK this morning.
- ‘I bought a new coat yesterday.’ (’shoes too ?) Did you buy shoes too?
- We saw the Eiffel Tower, but (see Notre Dame −) we didn’t see Notre Dame.

1. I didn’t learn much French at school, but (a lot of Latin +).
2. I remembered to buy the bread, but (the milk −).
3. I spoke to Alexia’s father, but (her mother −).
4. ‘Peter didn’t phone yesterday.’ (’this morning −).
5. I didn’t take the bus to London; (the train +).
6. I know you went to Singapore, but (Malaysia −).
7. The train stopped at Edinburgh, but (Glasgow −).
8. ‘Did the children see a film?’ (’two films +).
9. ‘I ate your cake.’ (’my chocolates too −).
10. I studied for the exam, but (enough −).

Make simple past questions.

- Sarah and her baby came out of hospital. (When) When did they come out?
- Ann and her brother went on holiday. (Where)
- Peter’s friends gave him a bicycle. (Why)
- The small woman said something. (What)
- The children bought something. (What)
- I invited somebody to lunch. (Who)
- Mary dropped something. (What)
- Oliver beat somebody at tennis. (Who)
- George wrote to the police. (Why)
- Rose asked somebody to marry her. (Who)
- Bruno lived in India. (When)

Look at the picture, and complete the sentence correctly.

‘That reminds me, dear – ………….. the sandwiches?’

A did you remember
B did you remembered
C do you remembered
D did you to remember
past progressive*  What were you doing at 8.00?

We make the past progressive with was/were + ...ing. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

At 8 o'clock I was waiting for a train. What were you doing?

We use the past progressive to say what was (not) happening around (before, at and perhaps after) a past time.

What were you doing at 8.00? Were you watching TV? (NOT What did you do ...) At 8.00? No, I wasn't watching TV. I was playing cards. (NOT I played ...)

What were the people doing yesterday evening?

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with words from the box.

Use past progressive verbs.

cook supper  dance  drive home
not watch TV  play cards

1. At 9.15 Sarah was playing cards.
2. At 10.30 Fred and Alice ..........................................................
3. At 8.20 Keith ..........................................................
4. At 7.50 Mary ..........................................................
5. At 11.00 Oliver ..........................................................

We make past progressive questions with was/were + subject + ...ing.

STATEMENT ➔ : It was raining. You were working. All the children were singing.

QUESTION ➔ : Was it raining? Were you working? What were all the children singing?

Write questions.

At 10.00 I was reading. (a newspaper) Were you reading a newspaper? .........................
When I saw Peter he was eating. (what) What was he eating? ........................................
1. When I went into Alesha's office, she was writing. (letters) ........................................
2. At lunchtime Richard was shopping. (where) ..........................................................
3. At 8.30 Anna was cooking. (what) ...........................................................................
4. When I arrived, all the children were crying. (why) ...................................................
5. At midnight, Liz and Jack were driving. (to Scotland) ...............................................

What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?

* Also called 'past continuous'

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
simple past or past progressive?  I walked / I was walking

We use the **simple past** to talk about complete actions (long or short).
We use the **past progressive** for actions which were not complete at a past time.

Joe **got up** at 7.00 and **worked** from 9.00 to 4.00.
At 8.00, when Joe came home, **I was reading**.

1 Simple past or past progressive?
- I **lived** / **was living** in France for eight years.
- Sue **lived** / **was living** in France when her uncle died.
  1 At 6.15, when you phoned, I **had** / **was having** a shower.
  2 We **watched** / **were watching** TV all evening.
  3 Matt **watched** / **was watching** TV when Anita came in.
  4 My father **worked** / **was working** hard all his life.
  5 They got married while they **studied** / **were studying** at London University.
  6 Yesterday we **drove** / **were driving** from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.
  7 It was a nice evening, so she **walked** / **was walking** home from work.
  8 I met Sylvie while I **worked** / **was working** in Japan.
  9 At university I **studied** / **was studying** physics.
  10 When I last saw him he **talked** / **was talking** to a policeman.

2 Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
- When I got home (the children watch TV)
- (you cycle) when you broke your leg
- When I saw Joan (she look) happy
  1 At seven o’clock on Friday (we play cards)
  2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk)
  3 When Mary got up (it snow)
  4 When I saw Alice, (she walk) very fast
  5 What (you do) at ten o’clock yesterday evening
  6 When you heard them, (they talk about me)
  7 How fast (you drive) when you had the accident
  8 The doorbell rang when I (expect) anybody
  9 I don’t know what I (do) at 10.00 on January 13th, 2005
  10 I had to drive to London because the trains (run) when I left home
Note the difference when we use the past progressive and the simple past together.

**Past progressive: longer** action or situation.
**Simple past: complete shorter** action that happened while the longer action was happening.

*While I was having a bath,*
*While I was talking to my brother,*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>NOW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the phone <strong>rang.</strong></td>
<td>Bill came in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Put simple past and past progressive verbs in the right places.

- While I **was walking** down the road, I **saw** Bill. *(walk; see)*
- While I **read** the newspaper, the cat **ran** to the table. *(read; jump)*
- Helen **walked up** while he **ran** in Morocco. *(meet; travel)*
- Harry **ran** her leg while she **jumped**. *(break; ski)*
- While I **ran**, somebody **ran** my car. *(shop; steal)*
- Ruth **rang** me eight times yesterday while I **called**. *(phone; work)*
- The police **ran** me while I **called** home. *(stop; drive)*
- I **ran** an interesting report on the radio while I **read** breakfast. *(hear; have)*
- Dad **ran** to sleep again while he **sat** TV. *(go; watch)*
- While I **sat** a glass, I **ran**. *(wash up; break)*
- When I **ran** my hand while I **ran** in the kitchen. *(cut; work)*
- When I **ran** the house I **ran** my coat because it **ran**. *(leave; snow)*
- When I **ran** the door they **ran** about me. *(open; talk)*
- When I **ran** the telephone **ran**. *(ring; cook)*
- Lunch. *(ring; cook)*
- When I last **ran** from Harry he **ran** in Portugal. *(hear; work)*

4 Correct (√) or not (x)?

1. This morning I listened to the news before I was going out. ......
2. I walked up to the policeman and asked him the way to the station. ......
3. When Ann arrived I was writing letters. ......
4. The cat was bringing in a mouse while I was having breakfast. ......
5. I didn't go out because I looked out of the window it rained. ......
6. When I went to sleep the teacher was talking about grammar. ......
7. The teacher was still talking about grammar when I woke up. ......
8. Jenny and Takashi got married while she worked in Tokyo. ......

5 Put in words from the box, in the simple past or past progressive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>drive</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>pull</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>shine ✓</th>
<th>sing</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>turn</th>
<th>turn</th>
<th>wait</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and birds **ran**. About five thousand people **stood** in front of the palace. At 10.00, the guards **ran** the Palace gates, and the President's car **ran** out and **ran** left into Democracy Street. The crowds **ran** to sing the National Anthem. The President's car **ran** right into Constitution Square. Then suddenly, just as it **ran** the Ritz Hotel, a man **ran** out in front of it and **ran** a gun from his pocket.
past tenses: more practice

1 Simple past. Make sentences.
- the train / stop / at every station
- when / my letter / arrive
- the doctor / remember / my name
1 all your brothers / send you / birthday cards
2 the baby / eat / some toothpaste this morning
3 the teacher / answer / my question
4 I / lose / my keys again yesterday
5 what / all those people / want
6 all your brothers / send you / birthday cards
7 the doctor / remember / my name
8 My friends and I / believe / the Prime Minister
9 Richard / give / me / a birthday present
10 What time / you / get up / today?

2 Past progressive. Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
- When I walked in (the children fight) the children were fighting.
- What (you do) in my office when I came in were you doing.
- When I had the accident (I drive) fast I wasn't driving.
1 At 9.00 on Sunday (we watch TV) we were watching TV.
2 When I saw him he was holding a paper, but (read)
3 When you heard them, (they speak English)
4 When you got home, what (the children do)
5 Anna arrived when I (expect) her
6 I don't know what I (do) at 6.00 on February 18th
7 When I looked out of the window it (snow) again
8 I had to drive to work because the trains (run)
9 How fast (you drive) when the police caught you
10 When I saw Peter, he (stand) and looking up at my window

3 Simple past and past progressive. Put in the correct verb forms.
- They (told) the police that they (were playing) cards at 10.00. (tell; play)
1 When I (go) out of the house I took my umbrella because it (rain)
2 This morning I (read) the newspaper before I went out.
3 (walk; talk) you (watch) the football match last night?
4 When I (swim) into the room they (talk) about clothes.
5 At 8 o'clock yesterday morning I (look; talk; listen) in the sea.
6 I walked up to the classroom window and (lie) in. The teacher (walk) but nobody .............. (look; talk; listen)
7 The telephone (ring) as usual, while I (lie) a bath.
8 This time last Friday I (lie) on the beach.
9 Why (go) you (meet; travel) home early yesterday?
10 When I first (meet) John he (travel) round the world.
4 **Grammar in a text.** Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Yesterday I (get up) ... at 7.00. When I (look) ... out of the window it (rain) ... exactly like every other day this week.

3 (wash) ... the cat his breakfast, and 6 (make) ... coffee.

7 I (not eat) ... anything, because I'm never hungry in the morning. Then I

8 (go) ... to the bus stop and 9 (wait) ... for the bus. It

While I 12 (walk) ... I decided once again that it was time to find another job - one with a car. When I 13 (arrive) ... nobody 14 (work) ...

15 everybody (talk) ... about the weather. The boss

16 (come in) ... and 17 (tell) ... everybody to start working, but this 18 (not make) ... much difference. I 19 (sit down) ... at my desk and 20 (start) ...

5 **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.** Make sure you know all the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then try to correct the mistakes. Find the answers on the internet if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>build</th>
<th>climb</th>
<th>compose</th>
<th>discover</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>invent</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Galileo wrote 'Hamlet.' Galileo discovered the moons of Jupiter.

Shakespeare discovered the moons of Jupiter. Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet.'

1 Mozart built the Eiffel Tower.

2 Leonardo da Vinci directed 'Ivan the Terrible.'

3 Shah Jehan invented dynamite.

4 Alfred Nobel wrote the song 'Help.'

5 Sergei Eisenstein built the Taj Mahal.

6 Gustave Eiffel wrote 'Pride and Prejudice.'

7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay composed 'The Marriage of Figaro.'

8 Marie Curie first climbed Mount Everest.

9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney discovered radium.

10 The novelist Jane Austen painted the 'Mona Lisa.'

6 **Internet exercise.** What did these people do? Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out the answers, if necessary.

1 Alexander Fleming

2 Giuseppe Verdi

3 Rembrandt van Rijn

4 Edmund Whymper

5 Mary Shelley

6 Stephanie Kwolek

7 Christopher Wren

8 Akira Kurosawa
past tenses: revision test

1 Write the simple past forms.

- arrive .................................. arrived
- become .................................. become
- begin ..................................... began
- break ...................................... broke
- bring ...................................... brought
- buy ......................................... bought
- change .................................... changed
- cry .......................................... cried
- develop .................................... developed
- feel ......................................... felt
- go ........................................... went
- hope ....................................... hoped
- leave ....................................... left
- like .......................................... liked
- pay ........................................... paid
- start ........................................ started
- stay .......................................... stayed
- stop .......................................... stopped
- watch ....................................... watched
- work ........................................ worked

2 Circle the correct forms.

- Why didn’t you ............................................................... phone / phones / phoned?
- In the afternoon the rain ................................................. stopped / stopped.
- You never ................................................................. visited / visited me in hospital.
- When I arrived she .......................................................... was making / making coffee.
- My mother didn’t ......................................................... feel / felt well yesterday.
- We usually ............................................................... speak / spoke French in my family when I was a child.
- Henry didn’t ................................................................. told / tell the police anything.
- Did you like / liked the film?
- I didn’t saw / seen / see the accident.
- John phoned / was phoning just when I went / was going out.
- I played / was playing football a lot when I was at school.

3 Put in simple past or past progressive verbs.

- He ................................................................... told his wife that he ...................... was playing chess at midnight. (tell; play)
- I ............................................................................. as a translator for two years. (work)
- Jenny ........................................................................ as a translator when she ...................... met Roger. (work; meet)
- Liz ............................................................................ her purse while she ...................... shop.
- We .............................................................................. John all evening. (listen to)
- While I ........................................................................ my car, Ellie ...................................... to talk to me. (clean; stop)
- I .............................................................................. my hand while I ...................... to talk to me. (burn; cook)
- Rick ........................................................................... when Emma ...................................... home. (read; come)
- My mother ................................................................ in Dublin all her life. (live)
- While she ..................................................................... in Chicago she ...................... ill. (study; get)
- The police .................................................................... him while he ...................... out of the bank. (catch; run)

4 Each sentence has one or two mistakes. Correct them.

- I looked out of the window, and I ...................................................... was seeing that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining
- I .............................................................................................. I was afraid that it was raining. ...................................................... saw was raining

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 5 perfect tenses

grammar summary

(SIMPLE) PRESENT PERFECT: I have worked, she has worked, he hasn’t worked etc
PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE: I have been working, he has been working etc
PAST PERFECT: I had worked, she had worked etc

We use the present perfect to talk about past actions with some importance now.
I've written to John, so he knows what's happening.

We use the present perfect progressive mostly to say how long things have been going on up to now.
I have been writing letters since breakfast time.

When we are already talking about the past, we use the past perfect to talk about an earlier time.
Yesterday I found some old letters that Kate had written to me from Germany.

ANN CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas.
For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.

ISABELLA LUCY BIRD (1831–1904) was a famous explorer. At a time when it was difficult for women to be independent, she travelled in the United States, Persia, Tibet, Kurdistan, China, Japan, Korea and Morocco. She wrote many books about her experiences, illustrated with her own remarkable photographs.

He's not here. He's gone to Paris.

I've made a cake. Would you like some?

I've already read it.

Look what I've found!

Have you ever been to Canada?

I've just had a brilliant idea.

Who's taken my coat?

She's been here since Monday.

Nobody was there. They had all gone home.

The Prime Minister has met workers' representatives. They discussed a number of questions.

I knew I'd seen her somewhere before.
present perfect: forms  I have paid. Has she forgotten?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR VERBS</th>
<th>AN IRREGULAR VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have worked</td>
<td>I have seen etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have worked</td>
<td>have I seen? etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has worked etc</td>
<td>I have not seen etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have not worked</td>
<td>have I worked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have not worked etc</td>
<td>have you worked?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For contractions (I've, he's, haven't), see page 301.

To make the present perfect, put have/has with the past participle (worked, seen etc).

Regular past participles end in -ed, like simple past tenses (for spelling rules, see page 46).

work → worked  hope → hoped  stop → stopped  try → tried

With irregular verbs, the past participle is often different from the simple past tense. You have to learn the forms one by one (see page 299).

see → seen  speak → spoken  go → gone  buy → bought

1 Write as many of the irregular past participles as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.

become  become  begin  begin  break  bring  bring  buy  

come  drink  eat  fall  forget  
give  hear  hold  keep  know  
learn  leave  let  make  pay  
put  read  say  shut  sit  
stand  take  tell  think  write  

2 Write affirmative (☑) or negative (☒) present perfect sentences.

I (speak ☑) to the boss  I have spoken to the boss.

They have not eaten anything.

1 she (forget ☒) my address
2 I (make ☑) a mistake
3 you (shut ☒) the door
4 Alan (work ☑) very hard
5 I (hear ☑) from Mary
6 John (learn ☑) anything
7 I (break ☑) a cup
8 we (buy ☑) a new car
9 the rain (stop ☒)
10 I (see ☑) a newspaper today

'Somewhere with no irregular verbs.'
We make present perfect questions with *have/has + subject + past participle.*

**STATEMENT:**
- You have paid.
- The rain has stopped.
- The children have gone to Dublin.

**QUESTION:**
- Have you paid?
- Has the rain stopped?
- Where have the children gone?

### 3 Make present perfect questions.

- John / leave?  
  Has John left?
- why / Fiona / go home?  
  Why has Fiona gone home?
- where / you / put the keys?  
  Where have you put the keys?
- 1 we / pay?  
- 2 Tim / phone?  
- 3 you / hear the news?  
- 4 the dogs / come back?  
- 5 what / Barbara tell the police?  
- 6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children?  
- 7 what / you / say to Mike?  
- 8 why / everybody / stop talking?  
- 9 you / see / Martin anywhere?  
- 10 who / take / my coat?  
- 11 what / happen?  
- 12 where / my brother / go?  
- 13 why / Peter / close the window?  
- 14 Judith / pass / her exam?  
- 15 the postman / come?  

### 4 Look at the pictures and put the words in the correct order.

**Picture 1:**
- Sawarret
- Lady
- You
- Without
- Seen
- Me
- Have
- A

**Picture 2:**
- Seen
- I
- Ball
- Sorry
- Your
- Haven't
- No

'No, ........................................'
finished actions: present perfect or simple past?

**PRESENT PERFECT: WE THINK ABOUT THE PAST AND THE PRESENT TOGETHER**

When we think about the past and present together, we normally use the present perfect.

I've written to John, so he knows what's happening now.
I've made a cake. Would you like some?
Look – I've bought a new dress.

**FINISHED ACTION**

letter (yesterday) —— I've written to John.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

cake (this morning) —— I've made a cake. Would you like some?

new dress (last Tuesday) —— Look – I've bought a new dress.

**PRESENT**

John knows now.
I'm offering you some now.
I'm showing you now.

**SIMPLE PAST: WE THINK ONLY ABOUT THE PAST, NOT THE PRESENT**

When we think only about the past, we most often use the simple past.

My grandfather wrote me a lot of letters.
(He's dead now; I'm not thinking about the present.)

I made a cake for the children, but they didn't like it.
(I'm not talking about the present.)

I bought a new dress last Tuesday, for the party.
(I'm thinking only about last Tuesday.)

**Read the sentences and the questions, and circle the correct answers.**

1. Ann has bought a new coat. Has she got the coat now?  
   **YES / PERHAPS**

2. Grandma came to stay with us. Is Grandma with us now?  
   **YES / PROBABLY NOT**

3. I made a cup of tea. Is there tea now?  
   **YES / PROBABLY NOT**

4. Eric has made a cake. Is there a cake now?  
   **YES / PROBABLY NOT**

5. Jane went to France. Is she there now?  
   **YES / DON'T KNOW**

6. Marlon has gone to Scotland. Is he there now?  
   **YES / DON'T KNOW**

7. Pat and Al started a business. Is the business still running?  
   **YES / DON'T KNOW**

8. Sue has started guitar lessons. Is she taking lessons now?  
   **YES / DON'T KNOW**

9. The cat has run away. Is the cat at home now?  
   **NO / DON'T KNOW**

10. The doctor sent Bill into hospital. Is he there now?  
    **YES / DON'T KNOW**

11. Pete lost his glasses. Has he got his glasses now?  
    **NO / DON'T KNOW**

12. Joanna has cut all her hair off. Has she got any hair now?  
    **NO / DON'T KNOW**

**Circle the correct verb forms.**

1. Shakespeare **never travelled / has never travelled** in Africa.
2. When I was at school I **studied / have studied** Latin.
3. Rob **lost / has lost** his job, and he can't find another one.
4. We **met / have met** some very interesting people on our last holiday.
5. Look – I **bought / ve bought** some new shoes.
6. My grandmother **left / has left** school at 14.
7. ‘Does your father know you’re back in England?’ ‘Yes, I **told / ve told** him.
8. I **made / ve made** mushroom soup. Would you like some?
9. ‘What’s Rosie’s phone number?’ ‘Sorry, I **forgot / ve forgotten**.
10. Who **built / has built** Edinburgh Castle?
3 What are the people saying? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect.

- break ✓ break buy cut eat find give pass sell send stop

> ‘Somebody has broken the window.’
   1 ‘John ................. us a postcard.’
   2 ‘I ................. a hat.’
   3 ‘I ................. my finger.’
   4 ‘The rain .................
   5 ‘Look what Peter ................. me.’
   6 ‘I ................. my car.’
   7 ‘I ................. too much.’
   8 ‘I ................. an earring.’
   9 ‘I ................. my exam!’
  10 ‘I ................. my arm.’

4 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in the present perfect verbs.

- break ✓ change close find forget go leave lend lose see

0 Joe has broken his leg.
1 Molly can't get into her house
2 ‘He's looking unhappy.’
3 ‘Who's that?’
4 ‘That's a good film. Shall we go?’
5 ‘Where's Louise?’
6 ‘Can I borrow your bicycle?’
7 Anton .......... a new job.
8 ‘Shall we have lunch at the Cantina?’
9 ‘Denise looks different.’

A ‘Sorry. I know him, but I ................. his name.’
B ‘Yes, his girlfriend ................. him.’
C because she ................. her keys.
D ‘No, I ................. it.’
E so he can't go skiing.
F ‘Yes, she ................. her hair-style.’
G ‘We can't. It .................’
H ‘I think she ................. to Ireland.’
I ‘Sorry, I ................. it to Maria.’
J ‘He's working in a bank now.’

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to) in present perfect sentences.

‘Where's John?’ ‘He's gone to Paris.’ (He's there now.) Mary's gone swimming. She'll be back at 6.00.
I've been to Italy lots of times (and come back), but I've never been to Spain.

5 Put in been or gone.

1 ‘Where's Zoe?’ ‘She's ................. shopping.’
2 ‘Gary's ................. shopping. The fridge is full.
3 ‘Have you ever ................. the United States?’
4 They're not here. They've all ................. out.
5 ‘I haven't ................. to the cinema for weeks.
6 Katie's ................. to live in Greece.

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.
I've seen Ann. OR I saw Ann yesterday. BUT NOT: I've seen Ann yesterday.

We use the simple past, not the present perfect, in stories (see page 47).

A man walked into a police station and said ... (NOT A man has walked ...)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
time words: present perfect or simple past?

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.

We've found oil in the garden. BUT NOT We've found oil in the garden yesterday.
A plane has crashed at Heathrow Airport. BUT NOT A plane has crashed at 3:15 this afternoon.

1 Circle the words for a finished time.
   a few days ago  always  this week  last week  never  now then  today  yesterday  when  in 1990

2 Correct (√) or not (x)?
   √ Andy has gone to Scotland last week.
   x My father has changed his job.
   √ Look what Peter has given me yesterday!
   √ I've seen a great programme last night.
   √ I think everybody has arrived now.
   x When have you talked to Ann?
   √ We've bought a new car in April.
   √ I've met my wife when we were students.
   x Look what Peter has given me!
   √ I've seen a great programme last night.
   √ I think everybody has arrived now.

3 Make present perfect sentences.
   √ Has Steven paid for his lessons?
   1 You / ever / write / a poem?
   2 I / never / climb / a mountain.
   3 Charles / speak / to you / today?
   4 Clara / not / tell / me / her new address.
   5 You / ever / lose / your memory?
   6 We / not / play / football / this year.
   7 Alex / not / tell / me.
   8 You / see Henry / this week?
   9 My father / never / drive a car.
   10 The cat / have / anything to eat / today?
   11 You / finish / those letters?
   12 I / not / pay / for the lessons / this month.
   13 Sally / have a baby.
   14 Lucy / not phone / today.
   15 Corinne / come back / from India?
   16 It / stop / raining.
   17 The postman / come / this morning?
   18 We / eat / everything in the house.

We can use the present perfect to ask if things have happened up to now, or to say that they haven't happened up to now. This often happens with words for an unfinished time (for example today, ever, never).

Has the boss phoned today? Have you ever broken your leg?
We haven't been to Scotland this year. Mary hasn't written to me this week.

Have you ever seen a ghost?

PAST NEVER √ NEVER √ EVER NEVER NOW PAST NEVER √ NEVER NEVER NEVER NOW

I've never seen one.
We can use the present perfect to say how often things have happened up to now.

That's a wonderful film. I've seen it three times. Sally has only been to Ireland once.

We've often wanted to come and see you.

Make present perfect sentences.

1. I / break / my arm / three times    I've broken my arm three times.
1. Joe / change / his job / twice this year
2. how often / she / ask / you for money?
3. I / often / try / to stop smoking
4. Tom / phone / me / six times this week
5. My father / meet / the Prime Minister / twice
6. The police / question / Annie / more than once
7. I / only / play / rugby / once in my life
8. My brother / often / help / me / in my work
9. Nobody / ever / understand / her
10. I / never / want / to go to the moon

Present perfect or simple past? Circle the correct answers.

1. Did you ever go / Have you ever been to Wales?
2. I never read / have never read any of his books.
3. Our team won / has won two matches this year.
4. Our team won / has won two matches last year.
5. Shakespeare never went / has never been to Athens.
6. I haven't bought any clothes this year / last year.
7. Julia stayed / has stayed with us last week.
8. I worked very hard today / yesterday.
9. I never saw / have never seen a ghost.
10. When did John phone / has John phoned?

Write five things that you didn't do yesterday, and five things that you have never done.

1. I didn't ................................................................. yesterday.
2. .................................................................
3. .................................................................
4. .................................................................
5. .................................................................
6. I have never .................................................................
7. .................................................................
8. .................................................................
9. .................................................................
10. .................................................................

For the present perfect with just, yet and already, see page 64.
already, yet and just

We often use the present perfect with *already* (= 'earlier than somebody expected'). Note the word order: *already* comes after *have*.

'Newspaper?' ‘No, thanks. I've already read it.’  ‘You’re late. We've already started.’

1 Complete the sentences with *already* and verbs from the box (present perfect).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cook</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>get up</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>pay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘Where’s Pete?’ ‘He’s <em>already gone</em> home.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Shall I pay?’ ‘No, I ...........................................’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘What time’s the train?’ ‘It ...........................................’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Can you wake Helen?’ ‘She ...........................................’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Let’s have fish.’ ‘I ........................................... chicken’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘When’s the film?’ ‘It ...........................................’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also often use the present perfect with *yet* (= 'up to now') in questions and negatives. Note the word order: *yet* usually comes at the end of a sentence.

‘Have you spoken to John yet?’ ‘No. He hasn’t come in yet.’

2 Make questions (?) and negatives (✓) with *yet*.

1 my sister / phone ✗ ............................................
2 the postman / come ✗ ............................................
3 Bill / find a job ✗ ............................................
4 you / finish that book ✗ ............................................
5 I / start work ✗ ............................................
6 you / have supper ✗ ............................................

And we often use the present perfect with *just* (= 'a short time ago'). *Just* comes after *have*.

*I've just come back from Spain.  The rain has just stopped.*

3 Do these things, and then write sentences to say what you have just done.

| (touch your ear) | I have just touched my ear. |
| (look at the floor) |
| (think about your home) |
| (move your feet) |
| (put your hand on your head) |

4 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say what Angela has (not) done.

Use present perfect verbs with *already*, *yet* and *just*.

| Have a cup of coffee 7.55 ✓ |
| Get dressed ✓ ✓ |
| Do a lot of work ✗ ✓ |
| Write letters ✓ |
| Telephone mother three |
| Clean kitchen ✗ |
| Read newspaper ✗ |
| Make toast 7.59 |
| Listen to the radio ✗ |

She has just had a cup of coffee.  She hasn’t got dressed yet.  She has already done a lot of work.  She ........................................... letters.  She ........................................... mother.  She ........................................... kitchen.  She ........................................... newspaper  ........................................... some toast.  She ........................................... radio.
since and for *since Tuesday; for ten years*

We use the present perfect, not the present, to say how long something has continued up to now.

I've been here *since Tuesday.* (NOT *I am here since Tuesday.*)
I've known John *for ten years.* (NOT *I know John for ten years.*)

We can say how long with *since or for.*
We use *since* when we give the beginning of the time (for example *since Tuesday*).
We use *for* when we give the length of the time (for example *for three days*).

I've been here *since Tuesday.*  I've been here *for three days.* (NOT ... since three days.)
I've known Mary *since 2005.*  I've known Mary *for a very long time.*
I've had this car *since April.*  I've had this car *for six months.*

1. Put in *since or for.*

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>six weeks</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ten years</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>July</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>a day</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. How long have you known people? Write sentences.

   I've known my English teacher *since September.*

   1. I've known ............................................ *for* ............................................
   2. I've ........................................................
   3. ............................................................
   4. ............................................................
   5. ............................................................

3. How long have you had things? Write sentences.

   I've had these shoes *for six months.*

   1. I've had my ............................................ *since* ............................................
   2. ........................................................
   3. ........................................................
   4. ........................................................
   5. ........................................................

4. Make present perfect questions with *How long ...?*

   1. *you / be / in this country*  *How long have you been in this country?*
   2. *Rachel / have / her job*  *How long has Rachel had her job?*

   1. *you / know / Mike* ....................................................
   2. *you / be / a student* ....................................................
   3. *your brother / be / a doctor* ...........................................
   4. *Andrew / have / that dog* ............................................
   5. *David and Elizabeth / be / together* ................................

   *Be, know and have* are non-progressive verbs (see pages 30–31). With most other verbs, we use the present perfect progressive (see next page) to say how long things have continued up to now.

   *How long have you been waiting?*

---

*In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.*
present perfect progressive*  It's been raining since Sunday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect Progressive with have/has been + ...ing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have been working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have I been working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have not been working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For contractions (I've, he's, haven't etc), see page 301.

We make the present perfect progressive with have/has been + ...ing.

We have been living here since April. John's been working in the bank for three months.

We use the present perfect progressive (with most verbs) to say how long things have been continuing up to now. (For be, have and know, see page 65.)

I've been learning English for four years. It's been raining all day.

Have you been waiting long?

We've been travelling for six hours.

Make present perfect progressive sentences. Use for or since (see page 65).

1. John started learning Chinese in February. Now it's July. (for)
   John has been learning Chinese for five months.
2. It started raining on Sunday. It's still raining. (since)
   It's been raining since Sunday.
3. Mary started painting the house on Monday. Now it's Friday. (for)
4. We started driving at six o'clock. Now it's ten o'clock. (for)
5. Anna started working at Smiths in January. (since)
6. Joseph started building boats when he was 20. Now he's 40. (for)
7. We started waiting for the bus at 8.30. (since)
8. Prices started going up last year. (since)
9. We started camping on July 20th. (since)
10. My father started teaching 40 years ago. (for)
11. It started snowing at midnight. Now it's midday. (for)
12. The team started training together in June. Now it's September. (for)

REMEMBER: we don't use present tenses to say how long things have been going on.

They've been living here since 1998. (NOT They are living here since 1998.)
I've been learning English for three years. (NOT I'm learning English for 3 years.)

* Also called 'present perfect continuous'
How long have you been learning English?

Correct (√) or not (x)?

1. I'm waiting for her since this morning. X.
2. I've been waiting for her for four hours. √.
3. I have been sitting in this office since 9.00. ....
4. She's working here since 1998. ....
5. We have been driving for about six hours. ....
6. How long are you learning English? ....
7. How long are Ann and Peter working here? ....
8. Sue has been talking on the phone all day. ....
9. My brother's living in Glasgow since March. ....
10. That man has been standing outside all day. ....

Look at the pictures and say what the people have been doing. Use the verbs in the box (present perfect progressive).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>play</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>teach</th>
<th>travel</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

8. She has been travelling.
9. .................................................. the piano.
10. .................................................. football.
11. ..................................................
12. .................................................. letters.
13. ..................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
past perfect  It had already begun when we arrived.

To make the past perfect, put had with the past participle (worked, seen, lost etc).

She didn't phone Alan because she'd lost his number.  It was a film that I hadn't seen before.

1 Make past perfect sentences.
   ▶ I couldn't get in because I had forgotten my keys. (forget)
   ▶ Anna was't at home. Where had she gone? (go)
   ▶ The telephone wasn't working because we hadn't paid the bill. (pay)
   1 The woman told me that she had worked in China a few years before. (work)
   2 Everything in the garden was brown because it had rained. (rain)
   3 The bathroom was full of water. What had happened? (happen)
   4 I knew that man somewhere before. (see)
   5 We were surprised to see Mark, because we hadn't received his letter. (get)
   6 After three days the dogs came back home. Where had they been? (be)
   7 They gave me some money back because I had spent too much. (do)
   8 There was nothing in the fridge. I could see that Peter had done the shopping. (do)

2 Circle the correct answers.
   ▶ I didn't recognise / hadn't recognised Helen, because she cut / had cut her hair very short.
   1 No one understood / had understood how the cat got / had got into the car.
   2 Joe didn't play / hadn't played in the game on Saturday because he hurt / had hurt his arm.
   3 When I looked / had looked in all my pockets for my keys, I started / had started to get very worried.
   4 Liz never travelled / had never travelled by train before she went / had gone to Europe.
   5 I arrived / had arrived at the shop at 5.30, but it already closed / had already closed.
   6 I didn't have / hadn't had much money after I paid / had paid all my bills last week.
3 Put in the simple past or the past perfect.

- Bill didn't tell anybody how he had got into the house. (not tell; get)
- Emma went to France last week. Before that, she had never been outside Ireland. (go; be)

1 When their mother got home, the children ate all the sweets. (get; eat)
2 Yesterday I met a man who had been at school with my grandmother. (meet; be)
3 It started to rain, and I remembered that I had closed my window. (start; remember; not close)
4 I found a letter on my desk that I had not opened. (find; not open)
5 I told Bob I couldn’t go to the theatre, but he had already bought the tickets. (already tell; buy)

We use the past perfect after when to show that something was completely finished.

When I had watered all the flowers, I sat down and had a cool drink.
When Susan had done her shopping, she went to visit her sister.

4 Make sentences using the past perfect after when.

- Jan finished her dinner. Then she sat down to watch TV.
  When Jan had finished her dinner, she sat down to watch TV.
- David phoned his girlfriend. Before that he did his piano practice.
  David phoned his girlfriend when he had done his piano practice.

1 George ate all the chocolate biscuits. Then he started eating the lemon ones.

2 I turned off the lights in the office. Then I locked the door and left.

3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper. Before that she read it.

4 Mark had a long hot shower. Before that he did his exercises.

5 Barry phoned his mother with the good news. Then he went to bed.

Nothing had changed

When I went back to my old school nothing had changed.

Well, OK, the place had closed down.

Doors stood wide, windows had lost their glass, ceilings had fallen.

Travellers had camped in the dining-room, and left their names on the walls.

Wind blew through the rooms where I had sat for so long and learnt so little.
Rubbish piled up in the corners.

But nothing important had changed.

→ For the past perfect in indirect speech, see page 265.
perfect tenses: more practice

Verb forms. Make questions or negative sentences.

- She has finished the book. 
- The rain has stopped.
- All those people have gone home.
- Peter has told us everything.
- The postman has been.
- Pat has spoken to Robert.
- Tim and Angela have bought a house.
- Emma’s boyfriend has forgotten her birthday.
- Monica has been working in London all this week.
- I’ve phoned Joseph.
- Robert and Sally have moved to Ireland.
- We’ve been working all day.
- Somebody has just said these sentences.

Choose the best answers.

1. ‘Harry has found a new girlfriend.’ Has he still got this girlfriend? YES / PERHAPS
2. ‘Then a cat came into the house.’ Is the cat in the house now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
3. ‘I’ve made coffee.’ Is there coffee now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
4. ‘So Ross made soup.’ Is there soup now? YES / WE DON’T KNOW
5. ‘And Tom has started Japanese lessons.’ Is he taking lessons now? YES / WE DON’T KNOW
6. ‘… because Pete lost his glasses.’ Has he got his glasses now? NO / WE DON’T KNOW
7. ‘We had a good time in Bulgaria.’ Are they there now? YES / NO
8. ‘July has been a good month for business.’ Is it still July? YES / NO
9. ‘Tony and Maria went to China.’ Are they there now? YES / WE DON’T KNOW
10. ‘Polly has just bought a new coat.’ Has she got the coat now? YES / PERHAPS

Question formation. Make questions (simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive).

1. The letter arrived. (when) When did the letter arrive?
2. Somebody has told her. (who) Who has told her?
3. Everybody has already gone home. (why) Why has everybody already gone home?
4. Anna’s been learning Chinese. (how long) How long has Anna been learning Chinese?
5. George closed the door. (why) Why did George close the door?
6. Sue and Jeanne have gone on holiday. (where) Where have Sue and Jeanne gone on holiday?
7. The President visited Russia. (when) When did the President visit Russia?
8. Jan’s father has been travelling in Wales. (how long) How long has Jan’s father been travelling in Wales?
9. Something has happened. (what) What has happened?
10. Joe has been working in Spain. (how long) How long has Joe been working in Spain?
11. Mary studied medicine. (where) Where did Mary study medicine?
12. Somebody has taken my bicycle. (who) Who has taken my bicycle?
4 **Simple past or past perfect? Complete the sentences.**

1. When I .................................. him, I ...................... that I ...................... him before. (see; know; meet)
2. He ...................................... enough money for food because he ...................... so many clothes. (not have; buy)
3. The meeting .................................. when I ...................... .................................. (already start; arrive)
4. The car .................................. down because I .................................. to put oil in. (break; forget)
5. I ...................................... Mary for the first time thirty years ago. (meet)
6. After our conversation I ...................... everything that she ...................... (forget; say)
7. The house was empty. Everybody ...................... out. (go)
8. When he .................................. work he .................................. out for a walk. (finish; go)
9. When I looked in the fridge, I ...................... some cheese that I ...................... six weeks before. (find; buy)
10. He ...................................... the door, and then realised that he ...................... his keys in the house. (close; leave)

5 **Grammar in a text. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not be</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>lose</th>
<th>not pass</th>
<th>spend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Last year .................................. a good year for Pete and Sonia. Pete .................................. a car accident and .................................. a month in hospital, Sonia .................................. her job, the children .................................. their school exams, and a lot of other bad things ..................................

| be | buy | change | open | pass |

This year .................................. much better. Pete .................................. his job, and is making much more money. They .................................. a new house. Sonia .................................. a small restaurant, and it's going very well. And the children .................................. all their exams this time.

6 **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: housework. Put simple past verbs into the story.**

Use a dictionary if necessary.

Once upon a time there was a beautiful girl called Cinderella. Her two sisters made her do all the housework. Every day she .................................. up early, she .................................. the floors, she .................................. the beds, she .................................. the furniture, she .................................. and .................................. the clothes, she .................................. all the dishes and .................................. them away. She .................................. all the rooms, and she .................................. hundreds of other jobs.

**Now put present perfect verbs into the conversation.**

**SISTERS:** Well, Cinderella, have you done everything?

10 .................................. the floors? 11 .................................. the beds?
12 .................................. the furniture? 13 .................................. the clothes? And 14 .................................. them? 15 ..................................

17 .................................. all the rooms?

**CINDERELLA:** No, I .................................. anything. I'm going to marry the Prince. Goodbye!

7 **Internet exercise.** Read the two texts on page 57. Then use the internet to find out information about two other people (one living, one dead), and write a few sentences about their lives. Be careful to use the simple past or the present perfect correctly.
perfect tenses: revision test

1 Put in the past participles.
   - go  
   - break  
   - bring  
   - come  
   - drink  
   - eat  
   - forget  
   - give  
   - leave  
   - make  
   - stand  
   - stay  
   - stop  
   - take  
   - think  
   - try

2 Complete the sentences with simple past verbs or past participles.
   - I  wrote  to my brother yesterday.  (write)
   - I haven't  written  to my sister for a long time.  (write)
   - The lessons  began  last week.  (begin)
   - You've  taken  three cups today.  (break)
   - Why have you  come  home early?  (come)
   - We  sent  what they wanted.  (know)
   - Who has  drunk  my coffee?  (drink)
   - We  ate  too much last night.  (eat)
   - John  lost  off his bicycle yesterday.  (fall)
   - I'm sorry, I've  forgotten  your name.  (forget)
   - I've  given  my address to the police.  (give)
   - Somebody has  sent  my coffee.  (take)

3 Circle the correct forms.
   - Jenny  slept  / has slept  very badly last night.
   - We  know / We've known / We've been knowing John and Andy for / since years.
   - I  work / I'm working / I've been working here since last summer.
   - 'Mary  went / has gone  to London.'  'When did she leave? / has she left?'
   - Our football team  already has lost / has already lost ten games this year.  It lost / has lost all its games last year too.
   - Did you ever  drive / Have you ever driven  a bus?
   - My brother speaks good English, but he  has never had / never had lessons.
   - Did you see / Have you seen Paul yet?
   - I  started / have started this job for eight weeks / eight weeks ago / ago eight weeks.
   - I'm / I've been in this school for / since five years.
   - How long do you know / have you known Rebecca?

4 Complete the sentences with the simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive.
   - I  have bought  tickets for the match. Do you want to come with me?  (buy)
   - My grandfather  went  to school in Ireland.  (go)
   - How long  have  you been standing  there?  (stand)
   - When  has Mike  lost  his new watch?  (lose)
   - That child  eats  chocolate all day.  (eat)
   - Andrew isn't here today – he  has been in an accident.  (just have)
   - It  has been snowing  non-stop since Sunday.  (snow)
   - I  have studied  mathematics from 1996 to 1998.  (study)
   - 'You're looking happy.'  'Yes, I  have passed  my exam.'  (just pass)
   - How long  has Emma  known  you?  (know)
   - You ever  written  a poem?  (write)
   - The company  lost  a lot of money last year.  (lose)
   - Do you like the book I gave you?  'I  haven't started it yet.'  (not start)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 6 modal verbs

grammar summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODAL VERBS: can, could</th>
<th>may, might</th>
<th>shall, should</th>
<th>will, would</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>ought to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAST AND FUTURE OF MODALS: be able to</td>
<td>have to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. We use them before other verbs to express certain meanings – for example permission, ability, possibility, certainty.

Modals have different grammar from other verbs. For example, they have no -s on the third person singular: we say he can, NOT he-cans.

Have to, be able to and used to are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section.

For will, see pages 39–40.

Letters to a magazine

Should I give up smoking?
Should I marry Bob?
Should I move to Woking?
Should I change my job?
Should I dye my hair green?
Should I tell his wife?
Should I ask a magazine
How to live my life?

(Adapted from advertisement for Centre for Alternative Technology, Machynlleth, Wales.)

I love mankind, it's people I can't stand.
( Charles M Schulz)

If you can't live without me, why aren't you dead yet?
(Unknown)

There are three kinds of people: those who can count, and those who can't.
(George Carlin)

Money can't buy you love.
(Traditional)
modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc

- The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. They are different from most other verbs in four ways.

+ INFINITIVES WITHOUT TO

After modals (except ought), we use infinitives without to. (After other verbs, infinitives have to.)

- Can I use your phone? (NOT Can I to use ...)
- Joe can't swim. I may be out tonight.

BUT I want to use her phone. I'd like to go home. Joe seems to have a cold.

Circle the correct answers.

- Can you play/to play the guitar?
- I don't want to play/to play football today.
- Ann seems to be/to be very tired.
- Peter hasn't phoned. He must be/to be away.

1. Can you play/to play the guitar?
2. I don't want to play/to play football today.
3. Ann seems to be/to be very tired.
4. Peter hasn't phoned. He must be/to be away.

NO -S

Modal verbs have no -s on the third person singular (he/she/it form). (Other verbs have -s.)

- John can speak Korean. (NOT John can speak ...)
- Barbara may be late. This must be your coat.

BUT Josh knows my father. Ann seems to be ill. The cat wants to go out.

2. Add -s or nothing (-).

- Tim can... swim. 1 Our cat like... fish. 2 It may... rain.
- She must... pay now. 4 Harry work... in London. 5 Kim should... phone her mother.
- The train seem... to be late. 7 Nick might... come and see us. 8 Tom want... to go home.

NO DO

We make modal questions (2) and negatives (2) without do. (Other verbs have do.)

- Can you help me? (NOT Do you can help me?)
- You must not tell Philip. (NOT You don't must...)

BUT Do you know my friend Jeremy? Sally doesn't cook very well.

3. Make questions (2) or negatives (2).

(Negatives in this exercise: cannot/can't; must not/mustn't; may not)

- Claire can't speak Russian. (Chinese [2]) Can she speak Chinese?
- Katy must wash her clothes. (do it now [2]) She mustn't do it now.
- 1 Mike can't swim. (ski [2])
- 2 John can play football. (poker [2])
- 3 Maria must play the piano. (sing [2])
- 4 Robert may go to Italy. (go this week [2])
- 5 Emma can visit us on Saturday. (Sunday [2])

NO INFINITIVES OR PARTICIPLES

Modal verbs have no infinitives or participles: to can, maying, musted.

Instead, we use other verbs: can → be able to (see page 81); must → have to (see page 78).
must  You must be home by eleven. Must you go?

1 I must go  you must go  he/she/it must go etc (NOT I must to go, NOT he/she/it musts go)
2 must I go?  must you go?  must he/she/it go etc (NOT Do I must go?)

In affirmative (✓) sentences, we use must when we mean 'This is necessary'.
I must get up early tomorrow. You must fill in this form. (NOT You must to fill ...)
You must visit us while we're in Paris. Pat and Jan are so nice - we must see them again.

1 Complete the sentences with must and verbs from the boxes.

be ✓ go hurry pay speak stop study write

FATHER: You ................. home by eleven. 4 TAX OFFICE: You ....................... the tax now.
1 TEACHER: You ...................... in ink. 5 TEACHER: Your daughter ....................... harder.
2 FRIEND: We ...................... - we're late. 6 BOSS: You ....................... politely on the phone.
3 DOCTOR: You ................. smoking. 7 MOTHER: That child ....................... to bed now.

2 Put the beginnings and ends together. Add must and verbs from the box.

get up give go go have phone read ✓ see

0 Smith's latest book is her best, I think.
1 I haven't heard from Annie for ages.
2 I've left my handbag in the restaurant.
3 This cake is delicious.
4 'Velocity' is a wonderful film.
5 I've got a lot of work to do tomorrow.
6 I'd like to see you again.
7 The woods are full of flowers.

A I ...................... her tonight. ....
B You ..................... it. Shall I lend it to you? ...O
C My mother made it; you ..................... a piece. ....
D You ..................... it. It's a cinema classic. ....
E We ...................... for a walk this weekend. ....
F You ..................... me your phone number. ....
G I ...................... back and get it. ....
H I must ...................... early. ....

In questions (?), we use must when we mean: 'Is this really necessary?'
To make questions with must, we put must before the subject.
Must we tell the police when we change addresses?  Must you talk so loud?  Must you go?

3 A new student is asking some questions about next week's exam. Complete the questions.
Use Must I ...? and verbs from the box.

answer bring ✓ come pay sit stay work write

Must I bring ................. writing paper? 4 ......................... in my usual place?
1 ......................... any money? 5 ......................... every question?
2 ......................... to this room? 6 ......................... without a dictionary?
3 ......................... in ink? 7 ......................... if I finish early?

Have to (see pages 76–77) means the same as must.
Must has no past (musted) or infinitive (to-must). Instead, we use had to and (to) have to (see page 77).

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**Have to** is not a modal verb, but we use it very like *must.*

We use *have to* when we want to say ‘This is necessary’ / ‘Is this necessary?’ (like *must*).

You **have to** drive on the left in Britain.  I **have to** go to New York for a meeting every month.

My sister **has to** work on Saturdays.  Do your children **have to** take lunches to school?

---

**1.** Complete the sentences with *have to* or *has to* and expressions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be ✓</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>carry ✓</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>practise</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>wear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- An accountant **has to be** good with numbers.
- Builders **have to carry** heavy things.
- A soldier **has to wear** a uniform.
- A schoolteacher **has to teach** small children.
- Cooks **have to do** very clean hands.
- A politician **has to be** good at speaking.
- A gardener **has to be** good at speaking.
- A secretary **has to be** good at speaking.
- Footballers **have to do** a lot of training.
- A musician **has to be** good at speaking.
- A gardener **has to be** good at speaking.
- A schoolteacher **has to be** good at speaking.
- Students **have to do** a lot of books.
- A gardener **has to be** good at speaking.
- A secretary **has to do** a lot of books.

**2.** Put the beginnings and ends together. Add *Do/Does ... have to.*

0. ‘Mary’s a swimming teacher.’
1. ‘Here is some work for you and Ian.’
2. ‘I want you to go to your aunt’s party.’
3. ‘Jo and Alec work for a Mexican firm.’
4. ‘When would you like your holiday?’
5. ‘Dad and I are going out tonight.’
6. ‘That will be 250 Euros.’
7. ‘Peter works in marketing.’

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘...................... finish it today?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... speak Spanish?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... tell you now?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... stay until the end?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... teach small children’ …?</td>
<td>‘...................... pay it all now?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... travel a lot?’ …..</td>
<td>‘...................... babysit’ …..</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.** Write five things that you have to do every day, or most days.

1. I **have to** take the train to work.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

**4.** Write five things that you never have to do.

1. I **never have to** speak Chinese.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

For negatives (*do not / don’t have to*) see page 77.
mustn’t and don’t have to  We mustn’t wake the baby.

- I must not go  you must not go  he/she/it must not go etc
- I do not have to go  you do not have to go  he/she/it does not have to go etc

Contractions: mustn’t; don’t have to

Must has two negatives (\(\neg\neg\)): we use mustn’t or must not when we mean ‘Don’t do this’.
we use don’t / do not have to when we mean ‘This isn’t necessary’.

You mustn’t smoke here.  You mustn’t take pictures here.  We mustn’t wake the baby.
You don’t have to pay now; you can pay when the work is finished.

1 Complete the sentences with mustn’t and the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>let</th>
<th>light ✓</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>smoke</th>
<th>wash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

At a campsite:
- You mustn’t light fires.
- You …………………… dishes in the showers.
- You …………………… loud music.
- 3 …………………… animals run around.
- 4 …………………… in the toilets.
- 5 …………………… football.
- 6 …………………… noise after 10 pm.

2 Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don’t have to and verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>drive</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>post</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>wake ✓</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 You …don’t have to wake me up;
1 You …………………… breakfast for me;
2 You …………………… lunch for me;
3 You …………………… me to the station;
4 You …………………… me your newspaper;
5 You …………………… those letters;
6 You …………………… French;

3 Mustn’t or don’t have to?

- You …mustn’t …pay John – he hasn’t done any work
- You …don’t have to …pay John – I’ve already paid him.
- 1 You …………………… stay up late tonight – you’ve got school tomorrow morning.
- 2 You …………………… stay up late to wash the dishes – I’ll wash them in the morning.
- 3 We …………………… leave the door open – the rain will come in.
- 4 We …………………… leave the door open – Peter has got a key.
- 5 You …………………… write to Deepak about this – I’ve already written to him.
- 6 You …………………… write to Deepak about this – if you do, he’ll tell everybody.
- 7 You …………………… drive so fast – the police will stop you.
- 8 You …………………… drive so fast – we’ve got a lot of time.
- 9 I …………………… look in the cupboard again – I’ve looked in there twice.
- 10 I …………………… look in the cupboard – Holly has put my birthday present in there.
- 11 You …………………… phone Maxine now – she’s probably asleep.
- 12 You …………………… phone Maxine now – tomorrow will be fine.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
had to, will have to I didn’t have to pay.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST: HAD TO</th>
<th>FUTURE: WILL HAVE TO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/you/he etc had to go</td>
<td>I/you/he etc will have to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did I/you/he etc have to go?</td>
<td>will I/you/he etc have to go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/you/he etc did not have to go</td>
<td>I/you/he etc will not have to go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Must has no past or future: must've; will've.
We use had to for the past and will have to for the future of both must and have to.

My mum had to leave school at sixteen. Did you have to tell Jo? I didn’t have to pay. Alice will have to start school next September. Alen won’t have to come.

1 Write about the things that John had to do (1), and didn’t have to do (2), at school.
   - (learn French) He had to learn French.
   - (learn music) He didn’t have to play the piano.
   - (play tennis) He didn’t have to play tennis.
   - (learn Russian) He didn’t have to study Russian.

2 Make questions with Did ... have to ...?
   - you / learn French at school Did you have to learn French at school?
   - Annie / work last Saturday Did Annie have to work last Saturday?
   - Adam / pay for his lessons Did Adam have to pay for his lessons?
   - Tina / take an exam last year Did Tina have to take an exam last year?
   - Joe and Sue / wait a long time for a train Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train?
   - you / show your passport at the airport Did you have to show your passport at the airport?
   - the children / walk home Did the children have to walk home?
   - Peter / cook supper Did Peter have to cook supper?

3 Complete the sentences. Use ’ll have to ... , will ... have to ...? or won’t have to ... with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>study</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cara wants to be a doctor. She ’ll have to study hard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Lucy needs a new passport. She get a form from the post office.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Edward’s got a new car, so he get to work by bus.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I’ve got a job with a Swiss company. ’ll you French?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Jack wants to be a pianist. ’He play the piano for hours every day.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ‘Can I go home early?’ ‘I don’t know. You work the boss.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I’m working next Sunday, but I ... on Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ‘Liz wants to go to the US.’ she a visa?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I don’t know the answer now. I ………… you tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**should**  What should I tell John?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Should</th>
<th>you should</th>
<th>he/she/it should</th>
<th>(NOT I should to go)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I should go</td>
<td>you should go</td>
<td>he/she/it should go</td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I should go?</td>
<td>you should go?</td>
<td>should he/she/it go?</td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I should not go</td>
<td>you should not go</td>
<td>he/she/it should not go</td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contractions: shouldn’t

*Should* is like *must*, but not so strong. We use *should* for suggestions, opinions and advice.

*Ought to* is like *should*, but less common.

You *should* / ought to be more careful.  People *shouldn’t* drive fast in the rain.  *Should* I wear a tie?

1 Choose the best verbs, and complete the sentences with *should* and *shouldn’t*.

- In a big city, you *should* be careful with your money. *(be, make, stand)*
- In an airport, you *should* put your baggage with you. *(keep, run, stop)*
- I think everybody *should* know a foreign language. *(work, learn, teach)*
- You *should* write everything in the newspapers. *(write, play, believe)*
- You *should* eat some fruit or vegetables every day. *(drink, eat, sell)*
- Doctors say you *should* work. *(work, smoke, get up)*
- Advertisements *should* tell the truth. *(tell, sell, break)*
- Small children *shouldn’t* play with knives. *(think, play, write)*
- Parents *should* read their children's letters. *(read, cook, lie)*
- People *shouldn’t* drive fast in towns. *(drive, run, walk)*
- You *ought* to be more careful. *(be, make, stand)*

2 Make questions with *should I*, the question words and verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION WORDS:</th>
<th>What</th>
<th>What</th>
<th>What time</th>
<th>What time</th>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERBS:</td>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>wake</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *What should I tell John?*  ‘Tell him I left early.’
- *What should I tell first?*  ‘Mr Andrews.’
- *What should I tell your blue dress?*  ‘Your blue dress.’
- *What should I tell at the end of the table?*  ‘At the end of the table.’
- *What should I tell this box?*  ‘On the shelf.’
- *What should I tell you up?*  ‘Not too early, please.’

We use *must* to talk about what's *necessary*, and we use *should* to talk about what's *good*.

I *must* get a new passport: I’m travelling next month.  I *should* eat more fruit, but I don’t like fruit.

3 Put in *should* or *must*.

- ‘Do I look OK?’  ‘You *should* get a haircut.’
- I can’t go; I *must* finish this work.
- I *must* take more exercise.
- You *must* smoke near babies.
- The sign says we *mustn’t* smoke.
- What *must* I do to get a visa?
- You *must* be over 16 to buy cigarettes.
- ‘What music *should* I play?’  ‘Mozart.’

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I’m, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
can He can play the piano.

- I can go you can go he/she/it can go etc (NOT I can to go, NOT he can go)
- I can go? can you go? can he/she/it go etc (NOT do I can go?)
- I cannot go you cannot go he/she/it cannot go etc (NOT I can not go)

Contraction: can't

I can speak Italian. I can read Spanish, but I can't speak it. Can you sing?

1. Write sentences with but about what David can and can't do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deutsch</th>
<th>Richard</th>
<th>Dan</th>
<th>Sarah</th>
<th>Peter</th>
<th>Tom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(speak)</td>
<td>He can speak German, but he can't speak Hindi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (play)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (play)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (remember)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (eat)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To make questions (__) with can, we put can before the subject.

Can Bill swim? Can Alice speak Chinese? When can I pay?

2. Make questions with can.

   - 'Little Liliya is ten months old now.' (walk) Can she walk?
   - 'John is starting the violin.' (what / play) What can he play?
   1 'My brother wants to work in a restaurant.' (cook) ........................................
   2 'My daughter's going to Spain.' (speak Spanish) ........................................
   3 'Bill and Lisa want to buy a house.' (how much / pay) ...................................
   4 'Can I help in any way?' (drive a bus) .........................................................
   5 'Some colours look bad on me.' (wear red) ....................................................
   6 'Jessica and I have got a lovely hotel room.' (see the sea) ................................
   7 'I want to learn the piano.' (read music) ......................................................
   8 'My brother is looking for a job.' (what / do) ............................................... 
   9 'I can't eat cheese.' (eat butter) .................................................................
   10 'My sister is one year old today.' (talk) .......................................................

3. Write three things that you can do, and three things that you can't do.

   1 I can ........................................
   2 I can ........................................
   3 I can ........................................
   4 I can't ........................................
   5 I can't ........................................
   6 I can't ........................................

80 MODAL VERBS
could; be able to  She couldn’t write. I’ll be able to drive soon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I could go</td>
<td>I / you etc will be able to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could I go?</td>
<td>will I / you etc be able to go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I could not go</td>
<td>I / you etc will not be able to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction: couldn’t</td>
<td>Contraction: I’ll, you’ll etc; won’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To talk about the past, we use could.
I could talk when I was thirteen months old. I could walk when I was ten months old. How could you say that to me?

Choose the best verbs, and use them with could to complete the story.
My brother’s baby was unusual. At three months old she (say / speak) could say .............. 15 words. At a year old she (name / count) ......................... all the colours, and she (2 speak / count) ......................... to 100. At three she (read / learn) ......................... easy books. She (not think / not write) ......................... but she (play / tell) ......................... wonderful stories, and she (remember / believe) ......................... every story that she heard. She (not walk / not cry) ......................... until she was nearly two, though.

What could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn’t.

climb trees dance fight play chess play the piano read run fast sing write

Can does not have an infinitive (to-can). Instead, we use (to) be able to.
I want to be able to speak German. (NOT ... to-can speak German.) I’ll be able to drive soon.

Make sentences with will be able to.
1 / swim / soon  I’ll be able to swim soon.
1 Little Tim / talk / soon ..................................................
2 I / pay you / next week ..................................................
3 I hope that / go to America / one day ..................................
4 The doctor / see you / tomorrow ....................................
5 We / buy a car / next year ..........................................

Write about yourself, using be able to.
1 I’ll ......................................................... soon.
2 I’ll ......................................................... next year.
3 I’ll ......................................................... one day.
4 I’ll always ..................................................
5 I’ll never ..................................................
We use *may* to say that things are possible – perhaps they are (not) true, or perhaps they will (not) happen. ‘What’s that animal?’ ‘I’m not sure. It *may* be a rabbit.’ ‘I *may* go to Wales at the weekend.’

We do not use *may* in this way in questions.

*It may snow.* BUT NOT *May it snow?*

1. **Rewrite the sentences with may.**
   - Perhaps Sarah’s ill. **Sarah may be ill.**
   - Perhaps we won’t go out. **We may not go out.**
   - Perhaps it won’t rain. ..........................................................
   - Perhaps we’ll buy a car. ......................................................
   - Perhaps Joe is not at home. ....................................................
   - Perhaps Anna needs help. .....................................................
   - Perhaps the baby’s hungry. ...................................................
   - Perhaps I won’t change my job. ..............................................
   - Perhaps she’s married. .........................................................
   - Perhaps he doesn’t want to talk to you. ..................................
   - Perhaps you’re not right. .......................................................
   - Perhaps I won’t be here tomorrow. ........................................

2. **Put the beginnings and ends together; put in may with words from the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not be</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>go not have snow stay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
   0 ‘What are your plans for next year?’                                                                 |
   1 ‘Are you going to buy that coat?’                                                                 |
   2 ‘Where are your parents going on holiday?’                                                             |
   3 ‘Shall we phone Pete now?’                                                                 |
   4 ‘It’s getting very cold.’                                                                            |
   5 ‘What are you doing this evening?’                                                                  |
   6 ‘Are you going to study medicine?’                                                                 |
   7 ‘What are you giving Oliver for his birthday?’                                                        |
   A ‘I’m not sure. I *may go* to America.’ 
   B ‘Not sure. They *may* be here at home.’  
   C ‘No. I *may* go to study physics.’  
   D ‘Yes. I think it *may* be safe.’  
   E ‘Perhaps; I *may* have enough money.’  
   F ‘I don’t know. I *may not have* a new coat.’  
   G ‘It’s early; he *may* be out of bed yet.’  
   H ‘We *may* be round to Sophie’s place.’

We may live without poetry, music and art; 
We may live without conscience, and live without heart; 
We may live without friends, we may live without books; 
But civilised man cannot live without cooks. 

*(Owen Meredith)*

Science fiction is the literature of *might be.* 

*(C J Cherryh)*
Note the difference between *may not* and *can’t.*

She *may not be* at home – I’ll phone and find out. (= ‘Perhaps she’s not at home …’)  
She *can’t be* at home: she went to Spain this morning. (= ‘She’s certainly not at home …’)

We can use *can’t* to express great surprise or disbelief.

‘Karen’s going to marry Des.’ ‘It *can’t be* true. She hates him!’

3 **Put in *may not* or *can’t.***

1. We can try that restaurant, but they ………………. have a table free.
2. There are no lights in the house, and they’re not answering the doorbell. They ………………. be at home.
3. He says he’s got lots of money, but it ………………. be true.
4. ‘You’ve won 1 million Euros in the lottery.’ ‘No, it ………………. be true!’
5. She says her dog talks to her, but dogs ………………. talk.
6. I’ll ask that policeman, but he ………………. speak English.
7. ‘Can you come tomorrow?’ ‘I’ll see. I ………………. have time.’
8. I ………………. pass the exam, but I’m hoping for the best.
9. ‘They’ve found elephants in Antarctica.’ ‘That ………………. be right.’
10. I’m going to see my old primary school teacher tomorrow, but she ………………. remember me.’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+</th>
<th>I might go</th>
<th>you might go</th>
<th>he/she/it might go etc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>might I go?</td>
<td>might you go?</td>
<td>might he/she/it go etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>I might not go</td>
<td>you might not go</td>
<td>he/she/it might not go etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contraction: *mightn’t*

We can use *might* in the same way as *may* – especially if we are *not so sure* about things.

‘Are you ill?’ ‘Not sure. I *might* have a cold. Or perhaps not.’ I *might not be* here tomorrow.

*Might* is unusual in questions.

4 **John has no money. He is thinking about things that might happen. Put in verbs from the box with *might.***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>fall</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

I ………………. a lot of money in the lottery. Or I ………………. some money in the street.  
Or Uncle Max ………………. me $1,000. Or a rich woman ………………. in love with me.  
Or the bank ………………. a mistake. Or somebody ………………. my old car.

5 **Might or might not? Circle the correct answers.**

Kate had a big lunch, so she *might want / might not want* to eat this evening.

1. It’s getting late. I *might finish / might not finish* this work on time.
2. If the traffic gets very bad we *might miss / might not miss* the train.
3. If he’s had a good day, your dad *might give / might not give* you money for the cinema.
4. Andrew’s story is so good that his teacher *might believe / might not believe* he wrote it.
5. Helen’s not feeling well today – I’m afraid she *might pass / might not pass* her exam.
6. Alan wasn’t at the last meeting. He *might know / might not know* the new members.
7. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He *might be / might not be* in the kitchen.’
8. I’ve got toothache. I *might have to / might not have to* go to the dentist tomorrow.
9. I’ll do my best, but I *might have / might not have* time to help you.
10. I hope we can take the car, but it *might / might not start.*
can, could and may: permission  Can I use the phone?

We use can ...? or can we ...? to ask if it is OK to do things: to ask permission.

*Can I use the phone, please?*  *Mum, can I leave the table now?*  *Can we wait here?*

We often use *Can I have ...? and Can we have ...?* to ask for things.

*Can I have your address, please?  Can we have some water?*

1 **Make questions with Can I ...?**

**DON'T SAY THIS!**

- Lend me your pen.
  1 I want a glass of water.
  2 I'm going to use your pencil.
  3 I want some more coffee.
  4 I'll put my coat here.
  5 Give me some bread.
  6 Show me those photos.

**SAY THIS** (to your sister, a friend, a waiter, your secretary)

- (borrow)  *Can I borrow your pen (please)?*
- (have)  *
- (use)  *
- (have)  *
- (put)  *
- (have)  *
- (look at)  *

**Could ...?** is more formal and polite than *can ...?*, so we use it, for example, with strangers, older people, teachers and bosses. **Could I possibly ...?** is very polite.

*Could we leave our luggage here until this afternoon?  Could I possibly borrow your paper for a moment?*

2 **Make polite questions with Could I ...?**

**DON'T SAY THIS!**

- Lend me your pen.
  1 I need to use your calculator.
  2 I'm leaving early today.
  3 I want to take your photo.
  4 Lend me your newspaper.
  5 I'm going to turn on the TV.
  6 I want to open a window.

**SAY THIS** (to a stranger, a teacher, a boss, an older person)

- (borrow)  *Could I borrow your pen, please?*
- (use)  *
- (leave)  *
- (take)  *
- (borrow)  *
- (turn on)  *
- (open)  *

We use *can/can’t*, but not could/couldn’t, to say that it is or isn't OK to do things.

*(You can't is like you mustn't – see page 77.)*

You can leave your books here if you want. (NOT You could leave your books ...)

You can't use the gym between 1.00 and 2.00.

3 **Put the beginnings and ends together. Add can and verbs from the box.**

| 0 If you don't have a torch, A ......................... in this car park. .....
| 1 The children B they ......................... the cake in the kitchen. .....
| 2 Tell the boys that C you ......................... mine. .....
| 3 If you're cold, D you ......................... the heating. .....
| 4 If you're bored, E ......................... in the garden. .....
| 5 Only teachers F you ......................... television. .....

---

**borrow ✓ eat park play turn on watch**
4 What do the signs tell you? Use *You can’t ... here* with words and expressions from the box.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cycle</td>
<td>park ✓</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>take photos</td>
<td>use mobile phones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ![Sign with an X] **You can’t park here.**
2. ![Sign with a bicycle] **You can’t cycle here.**
3. ![Sign with a no-smoking symbol] **You can’t smoke here.**
4. ![Sign with a camera symbol] **You can’t take photos here.**

We use *Can I/we ...?* to offer help.

- *Can I help you?*
- *Can we book the tickets for you?*
- *Can I carry those for you?*

5 Use *Can I ...?* to offer help in these situations.

- Your friend has just come home from hospital. Offer to do some shopping for her.
  **Can I do some shopping for you?**

  1. You’re going to make a cup of tea for yourself. Offer to make one for your sister. **Can I make one for you?**
  2. You work in a shop. A customer walks in. Offer to help her. **Can I help you?**
  3. Offer to drive your brother to the station. **Can I drive you?**
  4. Your friend has got a headache. Offer to get some aspirins for her. **Can I get you some aspirins?**

In formal situations, and when we need to be very polite, we often use *May I ...?* to ask if something is OK, or *You may (not)* to say that something is/isn’t OK.

- *May I have your name, please, sir?*  **May I use the toilet please, Mrs Roberts?**
- *You may open your books now.*  **You may ask questions after the Prince has finished speaking.**
- *This is a tourist visa: you may not take a paid job.*  **You may not leave until the bell rings.**

6 A teacher is telling her class what to do. Complete the text with *may* and verbs from the box.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>not leave</td>
<td>take ✓</td>
<td>not talk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please work in groups. You **may** talk in your group, but please talk quietly.

You 1. ... to another group, and you 2. ... the room.

You 3. ... your dictionaries. If you want to use other books, you 4. ... them from the shelf; but only one person 5. ... the group at a time. Each group 6. ... the computer for twenty minutes; I will tell you when it is your turn. If you finish before the time is up, you 7. ... other work, but please work quietly.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
can/could you?: requests  Can you lend me a stamp?

We can ask people to do things (make requests) with can you ...? This is informal; we often use it when we are talking to friends; and also, for example, in shops and restaurants.

Joe, can you lend me a stamp?  Can you bring me some more butter?

Could you ...? is more formal and polite; we often use it, for example, when we are talking to strangers, older people, teachers or bosses. Could you possibly ...? is very polite.

Excuse me, Mr Andrews, could you lend me a stamp? I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you possibly watch my luggage while I get a coffee?

1 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

babysit  clean  drive  give  hold  lend  pass  put  speak  tell  wait

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can you give me a receipt?</th>
<th>5 Can you tell me this bag?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Could you tell me your name?</td>
<td>6 Could you possibly give me tonight?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Could you give me the rice?</td>
<td>7 Could you possibly tell me a pen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Can you give me my suit?</td>
<td>8 Can you give me these papers away?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Can you give me the time?</td>
<td>9 Could you give me more slowly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Could you give me to the station?</td>
<td>10 Could you give me here for a few minutes?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Find better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very polite).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Open the window. (I)</th>
<th>Can you open the window?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lend me a pen. (P)</td>
<td>Could you lend me a pen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help me. (PP)</td>
<td>Could you possibly help me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Open the door. (I)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Give me an envelope. (P)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Pass me the sugar. (I)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Tell me the time. (P)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Wait outside. (I)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Come back tomorrow. (I)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Say it in English. (P)</td>
<td>..................................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Put the words of the caption in the right order.

Miss Ellis  here  my  and  come  could  pass  you  coffee  me  in  you

'Miss Ellis, ..................................................?'
shall in questions  What shall we do?

We often use shall I ...? or shall we ...? when we are asking or suggesting what to do.

Shall I put the lights on?  Where shall we meet tomorrow?  Shall we go and see Bill?

1 Make sentences with shall I ...
   - put / the meat / in the fridge?  Shall I put the meat in the fridge?
   - what / tell / the police?  Shall I tell the police?
   - what / buy / for Sandra's birthday?  Shall I buy Sandra's birthday present?
   - when / phone you?  Shall I phone you?
   - pay / now?  Shall I pay now?
   - clean / the bathroom?  Shall I clean the bathroom?
   - how many tickets / buy?  Shall I buy how many tickets?
   - where / leave the car?  Shall I leave the car?
   - what time / come this evening?  Shall I come this evening?
   - shut / the windows?  Shall I shut the windows?
   - when / go shopping?  Shall I go shopping?
   - get / your coat?  Shall I get your coat?

2 Make sentences with shall we ...
   - what time / leave?  What time shall we leave?
   - watch / a film tonight?  Shall we watch a film tonight?
   - go out / this evening?  Shall we go out tonight?
   - have / a game of cards?  Shall we play a game of cards?
   - how / travel to London?  Shall we travel to London how?
   - what / do at the weekend?  Shall we do what at the weekend?
   - where / go on holiday?  Shall we go on holiday where?
   - look for / a hotel?  Shall we look for a hotel?
   - what time / meet Peter?  Shall we meet Peter what time?
   - how much bread / buy?  Shall we buy how much bread?
   - have / a party?  Shall we have a party?
   - when / have the next meeting?  Shall we have the next meeting when?

We can use Shall I ...? to offer politely to do things for people.

Shall I take your coat?  Shall I make you some coffee?

3 Make sentences offering to:
   - carry somebody's bag  Shall I carry your bag?
   - post somebody's letters  Shall I post your letters?
   - do somebody's shopping  Shall I do your shopping?
   - make somebody's bed  Shall I make your bed?
   - read to somebody  Shall I read to you?
   - drive somebody to the station  Shall I drive you to the station?
   - make somebody a cup of tea  Shall I make you a cup of tea?
   - clean somebody's car  Shall I clean your car?
   - phone somebody's secretary  Shall I phone your secretary?
   - cut somebody's hair  Shall I cut your hair?
   - bring somebody an aspirin  Shall I bring you an aspirin?

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
would  Would you like a drink? I’d like to be taller.

We often use *would* in the expression *I’d like* (= ‘I would like’), to ask for things. It is more polite than *I want.*

*I’d like* a return ticket, please.  *I’d like* a seat by the window.

We can *offer* things with *would you like* ...

*Would you like* a drink?  How many eggs *would you like*?

**1 Make sentences with *I’d like* ..., please or *Would you like* ...?**

- two tickets
  - I’d like two tickets, please.
- coffee
  - *Would you like* coffee?
- 1 a black T-shirt
- 2 an aspirin
- 3 the newspaper
- 4 an ice cream
- 5 some more toast
- 6 a receipt

We can use *would like* to talk about things that people want to do.

*I’d like* to learn Chinese.  *What would you like* to do on Sunday?  *Would you like* to have lots of brothers and sisters?  *I wouldn’t like* to be an astronaut.

**2 Which of these things would you like to be or do? Write sentences beginning *I’d like* to ... or *I wouldn’t like* to ...**

- be shorter  *I’d like* to be shorter  OR  *I wouldn’t like* to be shorter
- 1 be taller
- 2 be younger
- 3 be older
- 4 go to the moon
- 5 live in a different country
- 6 have a lot of dogs
- 7 write a book
- 8 (your sentence)

We often use *Would you like* to ...? in invitations.

*Would you like* to come to Scotland with us?

Don’t confuse *would like* (= ‘want’) and *like* (= ‘enjoy’). Compare:

*I’d like* some coffee, please. (NOT *I like* some coffee, please.)  *I like* coffee but *I don’t like* tea.

*Would you like* to go skating today? (NOT *Do you like* to go ...?)  *Do you like* skating?

**3 Circle the correct forms.**

1 *Do / Would* you like to come to dinner?
2 ‘*Would you like* coffee?’ *Yes, I do.* / *Yes, please.*
3 *I like / would like* mountains.
4 *Do / Would* you like to go out tonight?
5 *I like / ’d like* to go home now.
6 *Do* you like dancing? *Yes, I do.* / *Yes, please.*
7 *I like / would like* to get up late tomorrow.
8 *I don’t / wouldn’t* like old music.
9 *I don’t / wouldn’t like* to be an animal.
10 ‘*An apple?’ *Yes, I like / ’d like one.*
used to  I used to play the piano.

used to 

to play you used to play he/she/it used to play etc

did I use to play? did you use to play? did he/she/it use to play? etc

I did not use to play you did not use to play he/she/it did not use to play etc

I used to play the piano. I don't play now.

We use used to + infinitive for finished habits and situations: things that were true, but are not now. (Used to is not really a modal: we make questions and negatives with did.)

I used to play the piano, but I stopped. Pat used to have long fair hair.
Where did you use to live before you came here? I didn't use to like fish, but now I do.

1 Make sentences about people hundreds of years ago. Begin (Most) people used to ... or (Most) people didn't use to ... or A lot of people used to ...

- be farmers  Most people used to be farmers.
- have cars  People didn't use to have cars.
  1 travel on foot or on horses  
  2 go to school  
  3 learn to read  
  4 cook on wood fires  
  5 live very long  
  6 work very long hours  

To talk about present habits and situations, we use the simple present. NOT use to.

I play a lot of tennis. (NOT I use to play a lot of tennis.)

2 Make sentences about past and present habits and situations.

- John / rugby / tennis  John used to play rugby. Now he plays tennis  
  1 Emily / study German / French  
  2 Paul / live London / Glasgow  
  3 Grace / read a lot / TV  
  4 Dan / driver / hairdresser  
  5 Alice / coffee / tea  
  6 Peter / lots of girlfriends / married  

3 Make questions about a very old person's past.

- where / go to school  Where did you use to go to school?  
  1 have dark hair  Did  
  2 play football  
  3 where / work  
  4 enjoy your work  
  5 go to a lot of parties  

4 Write a sentence about your past.

I used to  

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
modal verbs: more practice

1. **Forms of modal verbs. Make questions or negatives.**
   - Carol can't speak German. (Spanish) **Can she speak Spanish?**
   - Emma may phone you. (do it today) **She may not do it today.**
   1. Carol can't speak German. (swim)
   2. Lucy must go to the police. (go immediately)
   3. Tom may go to Washington, (but ... go this week)
   4. Olivia has to work on Wednesday evening. (Thursday evening)
   5. Paul can play rugby. (hockey)
   6. Sarah should see the secretary. (today)
   7. Jenny could read when she was five. (three)
   8. The boss would like some coffee. (now)
   9. We may go away next weekend, (but ... might take the children)
   10. I must stay awake during the opera. (go to sleep)

2. **Past and future. Change the times of these sentences.**
   - Helen can ski. **Helen could ski** when she was three years old.
   1. I can speak French now. .......................... on holiday next year.
   2. Everybody must fill in a big form. .......................... last year.
   3. Everybody must fill in a big form. .......................... next year.
   4. Can you play the guitar? ........................... at the next school concert?
   5. Must you wear a tie to work? ................................. in your last job?
   6. John can't read very well. .............................. when he was younger.
   7. We can't buy a car. ................................. before next year.
   8. I must see the doctor. .......................... last week.
   9. Everybody can say what they think. .......................... in the year 3000.
   10. You can't sing now. You ................................ last year.
       And you ................................ next year, either.

3. **Advice with should. Put the beginnings and ends together.**

| A | You should give her a saucer of milk. ...... |
| B | You should buy some new clothes. ...... |
| C | You should buy a new one. ...... |
| D | You should make her a cup of tea. ...... |
| E | You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets. ...... |
| F | You should take more exercise. ...... |
| G | You should practise your service. ...... |
| H | You should study grammar. ...... |
| I | You shouldn't go to bed so late. ...... |
| J | You shouldn't tell her. ...... |
| K | You should change your shampoo. ...... |
| L | You should tell her you love her. ...... |

| 1 | Aunt Mary's thirsty. |
| 2 | I'm getting fat. |
| 3 | My girlfriend's angry with me. |
| 4 | The cat needs a drink. |
| 5 | My hair's falling out. |
| 6 | I'm tired. |
| 7 | I don't like Anna's new hairstyle. |
| 8 | I never have any money. |
| 9 | I don't play tennis very well. |
| 10 | The car won't go. |
| 11 | My clothes are all out of fashion. |
| 12 | My English teacher says I make too many mistakes. |
Permission and requests. Make these sentences more polite. (Different answers are possible.)

1. Give me some water. Can/Could/May I have some water?
2. I want a cup of coffee. ...............................................
3. Can I take a photograph of you? ...............................................
4. I need you to help me. ...............................................
5. Give me that newspaper. ...............................................
6. Will you clean my bicycle, please? ...............................................
7. Can I borrow some money from you? ...............................................
8. Let me use your phone. ...............................................
9. Hold this. ...............................................
10. Wash all my clothes before tomorrow. ...............................................

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: eight useful things. Complete the sentences with you can and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

With a cooker ...............................................
With a scanner ...............................................
With a freezer .............................................
With a washing machine ...............................................
With a fridge .............................................
With a mobile phone ...............................................
With a dishwasher ...............................................
With a camera .............................................

cook food ✔ keep food cool keep food very cold make copies
make phone calls take photos wash clothes wash plates, cups etc

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jobs. Complete the sentences with might be and words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Little Henry likes animals. When he grows up .............................................
Little Angela loves aeroplanes. She might .............................................
Little Amrita likes money. She has a very loud voice. .............................................
Little Peter likes singing and he has a very loud voice. .............................................
Little Alice likes arguing. .............................................
Little John likes cooking. .............................................
Little Ruby likes flowers. .............................................

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find three short simple sentences with "will be able to" and three with "will have to".

1. ............................................. 4 .............................................
2. ............................................. 5 .............................................
3. ............................................. 6 .............................................
modal verbs: revision test

1 Correct (✓) or not (x)?
   1 John can swim. ❌
   2 I must go now. ✓
   3 I don't must see Andrew today. ❌
   4 Anna can't to speak English. ❌
   5 Last year I must sell my car. ...
   6 Would you like to have some coffee? ...

2 Circle the correct verbs.
   1 Can / Might / Mustn't I help you?
   2 If you travel to Morania you can / should / must have a visa.
   3 You shouldn't / don't have to / couldn't laugh at old people.
   4 I think you should / must / may eat less and take more exercise.
   5 You may / have to drive on the left in Britain.
   6 We don't have to / mustn't pay now, but we can if we want to.
   7 I may not / could not be here this evening.
   8 She isn't answering the phone. She shouldn't / can't be at home just now.
   9 People should / have to smile more often.

3 Choose the correct verbs to rewrite the sentences with the same meaning.
   1 I know how to swim. (can/may) I can swim.
   2 It is necessary for you to phone Martin. (must/might)
   3 It is possible that Ann will be here this evening. (can/might)
   4 It's not good for people to watch TV all the time. (mustn't/shouldn't)
   5 Do you want me to open a window? (shall/will)
   6 It is important for people to cooperate. (may/should)
   7 John smoked when he was younger. (used to/would)
   8 It is possible that it will rain. (can/may)
   9 Alan knows how to speak Spanish. (can/could)
   10 I would like you to help me. (Can/Should)

4 Grammar in a text. Choose the best modal verbs to complete the quotations.
   1 Those who can / can't / shall, do. Those who can / can't / shall, teach. (Traditional)
   2 We may / can / must love one another or die. (W H Auden)
   3 It is not enough to succeed. Others can / may / must fail. (Gore Vidal)
   4 You shall / could / may fool all the people some of the time; you must / can / shall even fool some of the people all the time; but you can't / couldn't / wouldn't fool all of the people all the time. (Abraham Lincoln)
SECTION 7 passives

grammar summary

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

- We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.
  
  Mrs Harris cooks our meals.  Andrew broke the window.

- We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.
  
  Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris.  The window was broken by Andrew.

We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, broken etc).

Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs.

For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

'I'm afraid, Mr Klesmerod, that your blood type has been discontinued.'

Do you know?  (Answers at the bottom of the page)

1  Which of these is used to boil water?
   A  a fridge   B  a sink   C  a kettle   D  a hot water bottle

2  Which US President was killed in a theatre?
   A  Lincoln   B  Kennedy   C  Eisenhower   D  Nixon

3  Which game is played with a racket?
   A  golf   B  cricket   C  football   D  tennis

4  If you are being served, where are you?
   A  in a shop   B  in a church   C  in the sea   D  in hospital

5  The Olympic Games have never been held in:
   A  Melbourne   B  Tokyo   C  London   D  Chicago

6  Which of these metals was discovered by Marie Curie?
   A  uranium   B  radium   C  gold   D  platinum

7  Which of these was not written by Shakespeare?
   A  Hamlet   B  The Sound of Music   C  Othello   D  Julius Caesar

8  Which country was governed by the Pharaohs?
   A  Sweden   B  China   C  Egypt   D  Japan
passives: introduction  English is spoken in Australia.

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.

We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.

We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, seen etc).

ACTIVE

Mrs Harris cooks our meals.
Andrew broke the window.
Somebody saw her in Belfast.
The government will close the hospital next year.

PASSIVE

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris.
The window was broken by Andrew.
She was seen in Belfast.
The hospital will be closed next year.

Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs.

For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

Note the use of by in passives, to say who or what does the action.

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. (NOT ...from Mrs Harris.)

1 Which picture goes with which sentence?

1 The policeman helped the old lady. ....
2 The policeman was helped by the old lady. ....
3 The car hit a tree. ....
4 The car was hit by a tree. ....
5 Annie loves all dogs. ....
6 Annie is loved by all dogs. ....
7 The Queen photographed the tourists. ....
8 The Queen was photographed by the tourists. ....

A  B  C  D  E  F  G  H

2 Circle the correct answer.

1 English speaks / spoken / is spoken in Australia.
2 I studied / was studied French for three years at school.
3 We spent / was spent too much money on holiday.
4 This window broke / was broken by your little boy.
5 Her clothes made / are made in Paris.
6 This book written / was written by my brother.
7 The new university will open / will be opened by the Prime Minister.
8 Ann was driving / was driven much too fast, and she stopped / was stopped by the police.
9 This house built / was built in 1800.
10 Everybody had / was had / was have a good time at the party.
simple present passive  We are woken by the birds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am woken</th>
<th>you are woken</th>
<th>he/she/it is woken  etc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am I woken?</td>
<td>are you woken?</td>
<td>is he/she/it woken?  etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am not woken</td>
<td>you are not woken</td>
<td>he/she/it is not woken  etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2, 301.

We use the simple present passive like the simple present active, for things that are always true, and things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc (see page 17).

I am paid every two weeks.  Is Jeremy liked by the other children?  Stamps aren't sold here.

For spelling rules for adding -ed to verbs, see page 46; for irregular past participles, see page 299.

1 Complete the sentences with am/are/is.
   A lot of paper is made from wood.
   1 What is this called in English?
   2 Jane is paid on the first of every month.
   3 I am often sent to the Singapore office.
   4 Are any classes taught on Wednesdays?
   5 More chocolate is eaten in the US than in any other country.
   6 Not very much is known about Shakespeare's childhood.
   7 We are woken by the birds every morning.
   8 You are seen by the same doctor every week?

2 Put simple present passive verbs into these sentences.
   A lot of olive oil is used in Greek cooking. (use)
   1 Arabic is written from right to left. (write)
   2 Those programmes are watched by millions of people every week. (watch)
   3 Stamps are sold in most newsagents in Britain. (sell)
   4 The police say that nothing is known about the child's family. (know)
   5 In English, 'ough' is pronounced in a lot of different ways. (pronounce)
   6 Spanish is spoken in Peru. (speak)
   7 Cricket is played by two teams of eleven players. (play)
   8 Our windows are cleaned once a month. (clean)

3 Make simple present negatives and questions.
   'Those computers are not made in America.' (not make)
   Where are they made? 'In China.'
   1 'My name is not spelled with a Y.' (not spell)
   How is it spelled? 'L, E, S, L, I, E.'
   2 'That kind of bird is not seen around here, usually.' (not see)
   Where is it seen? 'In warmer countries.'
   3 'Where are those diamonds?' (not find)
   'Like were.'
   4 'Diamonds are not found in Scotland.'
   'Like wear.'
   5 'My sister is not paid very well.' (pay)
   'How much is she paid?' 'I don't remember.'
future passive  *Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.*

1. Make future passive sentences with the verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clean</th>
<th>close</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>speak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- The motorway **will be closed** for three days.
- The museum ................................................ by the Queen.
- One day English ................................................ everywhere.
- This job ................................................ in a few days.
- Your room ................................................ while you're out.
- Your tickets ................................................ to you next week.

2. Make future passive negatives and questions.

- 'The football match **won't be played**' (play)
  - 'When **will it be played**? **On Sunday**.' 'On Sunday.'
- 'The visitors ................................................ to the hotel by bus;' (take)
  - 'How ................................................ there?' 'By taxi.'
- 'The new library ................................................ in the Central Square;' (build)
  - 'Where ................................................ 'Behind the Police Station.'
- 'English ................................................ at the conference.' (speak)
  - 'What language ................................................ 'Chinese.'

3. Make five future passive sentences from the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Next year</th>
<th>Tomorrow</th>
<th>Next week</th>
<th>Tonight</th>
<th>One day</th>
<th>In 20 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>by</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed / bicycle / food / clothes / dinner / glasses / house / room / work</td>
<td>send to Canada / steal / wash / take away</td>
<td>a small man in a raincoat / a black cat / two old ladies / a beautiful woman / people from another world / the President / a big dog / your old friend Peter / a machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We use the simple past passive like the simple past active, for complete finished actions and events (see page 47).

This table was made by my grandfather. Was the letter signed? We weren’t met at the door.

1 Complete the sentences with was/were.
   1. The fire was seen in Renton, a kilometre away.
   2. Most of the matches were won by Indian teams.
   3. These keys were found in the changing room yesterday – are they yours?
   4. We couldn’t find the station, but we were helped by a very kind woman.
   5. I was stopped by a policeman in Green Road this morning.
   6. Yesterday a man was caught trying to burn down the Town Hall.

2 Put simple past passive verbs into these sentences.
   1. Our passports were given by a tall woman in a uniform. (take)
   2. These books were left in the classroom on Monday. (leave)
   3. I don’t think this room was cleaned yesterday. (clean)
   4. We were met at the airport by a driver from the university. (meet)
   5. Nobody was told what was happening. (tell)
   6. He was sent away to school when he was twelve. (send)

3 Make simple past passive negatives and questions.
   ‘We weren’t paid when we finished the work.’ (not pay)
   ‘When were you paid?’
   1. ‘My father was educated in England.’ (not educate)
   ‘Where was he educated?’ ‘In Germany.’
   2. ‘The letters were posted on Tuesday.’ (not post)
   ‘When were they posted?’ ‘On Thursday.’
   3. ‘This was cooked in butter.’ (not cook)
   ‘How was it cooked?’ ‘In margarine.’
   4. ‘My suit was made in Hong Kong.’ (not make)
   ‘Where was it made?’ ‘In Hong Kong.’
   5. ‘The restaurant bill was paid in cash.’ (not pay)
   ‘How was it paid?’ ‘With a credit card.’

4 Write a sentence about your date and place of birth.
   I was born in 1964. (NOT I born in 1964. NOT I am born in 1964.) My sisters were born in Egypt.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
present progressive passive  It's being cleaned.

I am being watched  you are being watched  he/she/it is being watched  etc
am I being watched?  are you being watched?  is he/she/it being watched?  etc
I am not being watched  you are not being watched  he/she/it is not being watched  etc

For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2 and 301.

We use the present progressive passive like the present progressive active, for things that are happening now (see page 24), or for things that are planned for the future (see page 38).

'Where's the carpet?' 'It's being cleaned.' When are you being seen by the doctor?

1 Questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete answers to the questions. Use the present progressive passive.

the grass / cut  he / watch  I / send  it / clean  it / paint  it / rebuild  my hair / cut
she / interview  the engine / repair  my watch / repair  we / follow

> 'Can we play on the football pitch?' 'No, the grass is being cut."
1 'Can't you wear your blue suit tonight?' 'No, ..............................................................'
2 'Did Alice get that new job?' 'Not yet – .............................................................. today.'
3 'What time is it?' 'Sorry, I don't know: ..............................................................'
4 'Why the big smile?' '.............................................................. to Hawaii for a week.'
5 I usually read a magazine while ..............................................................
6 I think .............................................................. by a police car.
7 'Where's your car?' 'At the garage. ..............................................................'
8 The school is closed this year. ..............................................................
9 George doesn't know that .............................................................. by the police.
10 I can't use my office this week because ..............................................................

2 Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done.

> (beds / make)  Beds are being made.
1 (bills / pay) ..............................................................
2 (coffee / make) ..............................................................
3 (drinks / serve) ..............................................................
4 (food / prepare) ..............................................................
5 (baggage / bring down) ..............................................................
6 (money / change) ..............................................................
7 (new guests / welcome) ..............................................................
8 (reservations / take) ..............................................................
9 (phones / answer) ..............................................................
10 (rooms / clean) ..............................................................
present perfect passive  The house has been sold.

| have been seen | you have been seen | he/she/it has been seen | etc  
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|------
| have I been seen? | have you been seen? | has he/she/it been seen? | etc  
| have not been seen | you have not been seen | he/she/it has not been seen | etc  

For contractions (I've etc), see page 301.

We use the present perfect passive like the present perfect active (see pages 60-65), to talk about past actions and events which are important now – for example, when we give people news.

The house on the corner has been sold.  We haven't been invited to Anna's party.

1 News: put the verbs into the present perfect passive.
   - A new university has been opened in Kew today by the Prince of Wales. (open)
   - Lord Retlaw................................., for drunk driving. (arrest)
   - An old painting from a school in Wales................................. for $250,000 by an American museum. (buy)
   - An 18-year-old soldier................................. in an accident in Devon. (kill)
   - The two lost children................................. alive and well in a London park. (find)
   - An unknown actor................................. to star in the new film of 'Macbeth'. (choose)
   - The old hospital in the town centre................................. (close)
   - 'What's the problem?' 'My bicycle..................................' (steal)
   - I................................. to write something for the local newspaper. (ask)
   - All the papers for next week's meeting................................. to Stacey's party. (invite)

2 'It's never been done.' Make a sentence for each picture.

1 ...........................................
2 ...........................................
3 ...........................................
4 ...........................................
5 ...........................................
passives: more practice

1 Tenses. Put in simple present, simple past or future passive verbs.

- 'Frankenstein' was written by Mary Shelley. (write)
- The repairs will be finished before next Tuesday. (finish)
- Butter is made from milk. (make)
- Last night two men were killed in a fight in a nightclub. (kill)
- One day all our work will be done by machines. (do)
- English is spoken as a second language by millions of people. (speak)
- This computer is used in Japan. (make)
- All the footballers were examined by a doctor before the match last Sunday. (examine)
- This room is cleaned every day. (clean)
- You will be informed of the test results as soon as possible. (inform)
- The new road is going to be opened in July next year. (open)
- Diamonds are being found in several countries in Africa. (find)

2 Present progressive passive. Imagine that you are in a busy hotel at one o'clock. All the hotel staff are on strike (they have stopped work) because they want more money. Write sentences about six things that are not being done. Some useful words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>baggage</th>
<th>bills</th>
<th>coffee</th>
<th>drinks</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>money</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new guests</td>
<td>reservations</td>
<td>rooms</td>
<td>telephones</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Beds are not being made.

3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: travelling by air. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then imagine you are in an airport, and write six or more sentences about what is being done.

SUBJECTS: arriving passengers baggage boarding passes cars
| departures | passports | reservations | tickets |

VERBS: announce check make meet park print sell x-ray

Baggage is being x-rayed.
Tenses. Put in present perfect passive or present progressive passive verbs.

1. 'Is the Army Museum still in Green Street?' 'No, it has been closed.' (close)
2. 'Hello, police? I'd like to report a theft. My handbag was stolen.' (steal)
3. 'Why did you take the bus?' 'My car is being repaired.' (repair)
4. 'There's nobody here.' 'No, all the students have been sent home.' (send)
5. 'When do you ......... you ............... ' (follow)
6. 'Tomorrow morning:' (interview)
7. A group of suspected terrorists are arrested by the police. (arrest)
8. Another group of suspected terrorists is not arrested, but they are watched. (not arrest, watch)
9. The hospital will be closed for two years, while it is being rebuilt. (rebuild)
10. James is asked to join the local football team. (ask)

Grammar in a text. Put in simple present active or passive verbs.

Gorillas are found in several countries in Central Africa. They are about 1.6 metres tall, and they cover with black or brown hair. Gorillas' lives are spent in groups. Each group has five to ten gorillas in it. The gorillas in a group walk about 0.5 to 1.0 km per day, looking for food. They do not eat all the leaves in one part of the forest before moving on; some leaves leave on the trees and plants. At night gorillas sleep in nests; these nests are made of branches and leaves. The number of gorillas living in Africa today is not known, but it is certain that this number is getting smaller. Why? Because in the countries where the gorillas live more and more trees are cut down every year.

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find short simple sentences with the following verbs. Write the sentences.

"are made" .................................................................
"is spoken" .................................................................
"will be spent" .................................................................
"are being built" .................................................................
"have been seen" .................................................................
"were given" .................................................................
"were sent" .................................................................
"was arrested" .................................................................
passives: revision test

1. Circle the correct passive or active verb form.
   ▶ This book written / was written by my uncle.
   1. Derek posted / was posted his letter to the university today.
   2. We did a lot of work for the school, but we didn't pay / weren't paid.
   3. My friend Douglas speaks / is spoken seven languages.
   4. The letter H doesn't pronounce / isn't pronounced in French.
   5. A new hospital will build / will be built in the town centre.
   6. You can't come in here – the room is cleaning / is being cleaned.
   7. We have invited / have been invited to John's party tonight.
   8. This sauce makes / is made with oil and vinegar.
   9. French speaks / is spoken in Belgium.
   10. John broke / is broken his leg last week.

2. Correct (√) or not (x)?
   ▶ English is spoken in New Zealand. √
   ▶ I am born in Manchester. x
   1. I was studied German for three years. ......
   2. Emma invited to a party by her boss. ......
   3. How is written your name? ......
   4. ‘Where’s your coat?’ It’s being cleaned.’ ......
   5. Our car has been stolen. ......
   6. When is that window broken? ......
   7. This book was written from my father. ......
   8. I was taken to the opera by a friend of mine. ......
   9. The new road will finished in July. ......
   10. Our house was built in 1850. ......

3. Put in the correct passive tenses.
   ▶ ‘The Birds’ was directed by Alfred Hitchcock. (direct)
   ▶ You ... will be paid ... next week. (pay)
   1. ‘Is the library still downstairs?’ ‘No, it ...’ (move)
   2. A new hospital ... here next April. (open)
   3. Somebody has been in my handbag. Some money ... (take)
   4. ‘Where’s your black sweater?’ It ... (wash)
   5. You ... your examination results before the weekend. (tell)
   6. ‘My car ...’ ‘Well, tell the police.’ (steal)
   7. This phone ... in China. (make)
   8. Spanish ... in most of South America. (speak)
   9. The windows ... nearly every week. (clean)
   10. I ... to help you. What can I do? (ask)
   11. There was a fight at the football match on Saturday, and one man ... (kill)
   12. Do you think all translation ... by computers one day? (do)
   13. ‘When ... the match ...?’ ‘Tomorrow.’ (play)
   14. Three computers ... from the school since Christmas. (steal)
   15. The factory closed suddenly last week, and all the workers ... away. (send)
   16. This kind of cheese ... from goats’ milk. (make)
   17. Alice ... by a car the other day, and her leg ... (hit; break)
   18. Your letter ... now – it will be ready in five minutes. (translate)
   19. It says in today’s paper that gold ... in Scotland. (find)
   20. ‘Have you done those letters?’ ‘Not yet. They ... by five o’clock.’ (finish)
SECTION 8 questions and negatives

grammar summary

To make questions, we normally put an auxiliary verb (be, have, can etc) before the subject.

John has gone.  →  Has John gone?  She’s leaving.  →  When is she leaving?

To make negatives, we put not or n’t after an auxiliary verb.

John is working.  →  John is not working.  I could swim  →  I couldn’t swim.

If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do.

I live in Manchester.  →  Where do you live?  He said ‘Hello’.  →  What did he say?
She likes cold weather.  →  She doesn’t like cold weather.

We do not use do when a question word is the subject.

What happened?  (NOT What did happen?)

Who are you?

Who were you talking to when I came in just now and you put down the phone?
Who were you thinking about when I asked you and asked you again and you answered ‘Why, no one’?
Who were you with last night when you came home late and said you’d been walking alone?

What was I hoping for that first day when I knocked on your door?
What was I thinking about when I first asked you out?
Who was I looking at when I first sat looking at you?

Who are you?

I didn’t do the housework

I didn’t feed the goldfish,
I didn’t make the bed,
I didn’t study algebra.
I watched a film instead.

I didn’t practise on the flute,
I didn’t write to Jean,
I didn’t visit Aunty May.
I read a magazine.

I didn’t do the housework.
I started. Then I quit, and wrote a poem just to say I love you. This is it.
yes/no questions  Is the taxi here?  Do I need a visa?

AM I?  HAVE YOU?  CAN SHE?  DO YOU?  DOES HE?

All yes/no questions begin with a verb.
To make questions: put an auxiliary verb before the subject.
(Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are, etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)

STATEMENT: The taxi is coming.  Ann has arrived.  The train will be late.  You can pay.
QUESTION: Is the taxi coming?  Has Ann arrived?  Will the train be late?  Can you pay?

Put the words in the right order to make questions.
- you ready are  Are you ready?
- telephoned she has Mary  Has she telephoned Mary?
- swim your brother can  Can your brother swim?
- tired are you  Are you tired?
- he at is home  Is he at home?
- go must now you  Must you go now?
- Spanish they speak can  Can they speak Spanish?
- tomorrow Derek be here will  Will Derek be here tomorrow?
- Aunt Ruth will arrive by train  Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
- forgotten her keys she has  Has she forgotten her keys?
- your sister is playing tennis  Is your sister playing tennis?
- coffee some like you would  Would you like some coffee?
- your home secretary gone has  Has your home secretary gone?

If there is no auxiliary verb: put do/does/did before the subject and use the infinitive (without to).

STATEMENT: I need a visa.
QUESTION: Do I need a visa? (NOT Need I a visa?, NOT Do I to need a visa?)

STATEMENT: John wants to go home.
QUESTION: Does John want to go home? (NOT Does John wants to go home?)

STATEMENT: She knew Naomi.
QUESTION: Did she know Naomi? (NOT Did she knew Naomi?)

Make questions with you.
You want to know if somebody:
- understands  Do you understand?
- called you  Did you call me?
- drinks coffee at bedtime  Do you drink coffee at bedtime?
- likes classical music  Do you like classical music?
- knows your friend Andrew  Do you know your friend Andrew?
- went skiing last winter  Did you go skiing last winter?
- works in London  Do you work in London?
- lives in a flat or a house  Do you live in a flat or a house?
- watches a lot of TV  Do you watch a lot of TV?
- remembered to buy bread  Did you remember to buy bread?
- saw Barbara last weekend  Did you see Barbara last weekend?
- plays tennis  Do you play tennis?
Make questions with she.

You want to know if somebody:

1. plays football
2. knows Mr Peters
3. works at home
4. lived in Birmingham
5. went home last week
6. plays the piano
7. rides horses
8. likes working with children
9. travelled a lot last year
10. drives to work

We don't put do with other auxiliary verbs.

Can you swim? (NOT Do you can swim?)

Choose the correct question.

A) Will you be ready soon?  B) Do you will be ready soon?


1. A) Do you are tired?  B) Do you tired?  C) Are you tired?
2. A) Do you must go now?  B) Must you go now?
4. A) Do you have been to New York?  B) Have you been to New York?
5. A) Were you go to work by car?  B) Did you go to work by car?  C) Went you to work by car?
6. A) Can she sing?  B) Does she can sing?
8. A) You said something?  B) Did you said something?  C) Did you say something?

Only put one verb before the subject.

Is her father working today? (NOT Is working her-father today?)

Has your brother got children? (NOT Has got your brother children?)

Did those people telephone again? (NOT Did telephone those people again?)

Put the verbs in the right place to make questions.

A) Are / your parents / to dinner (coming)  Are your parents coming to dinner?

1. Did / the police / the drug dealers (catch) .................................
2. Have / Lucy and Felicia / from their holiday (come back) ................
3. When do / English children / school (start) .................................
4. What is / that man / in the garden (doing) .................................
5. Are / the buses / next week (running) .................................
6. Has / the film (started) .................................
7. Has / John's letter / yet (arrived) .................................
8. Is / Alicia / today (working) .................................
9. Does / Paul / your girlfriend (know) .................................
10. Why is / Kate (cry) .................................

→ For more practice with present questions, past questions etc, see Sections 2–5.
→ For question tags like It's late, isn't it?, see pages 288–289.
question words  Where will you see her?

WHERE IS ...?  WHEN CAN ...?  WHY DOES ...?

Questions with where, when, why etc normally have the same word order as yes/no questions (pages 104–105). We put am/are/is/was/were or another auxiliary verb (have, will, can etc) before the subject.

Example:

Statement: Anna is in Russia.
Question: Where is Anna?

If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + infinitive (without to).

Example:

Statement: He likes his job.
Question: How does he like his job?

Make questions with the words in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>how</th>
<th>when ✓</th>
<th>when ✓</th>
<th>where ✓</th>
<th>when ✓</th>
<th>why</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(you staying?)</td>
<td>‘Where are you staying?’</td>
<td>… ‘At the Park Hotel.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you arrive?)</td>
<td>‘When did you arrive?’</td>
<td>… ‘Last night.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you here?)</td>
<td>…</td>
<td>… ‘To see Scotland.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you been today?)</td>
<td>…</td>
<td>… ‘To Edinburgh.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you going to Glasgow?)</td>
<td>…</td>
<td>… ‘Next weekend.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you like Scotland?)</td>
<td>…</td>
<td>… ‘It’s great!’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often ask questions with how + adjective/adverb.

How old is your sister?  How tall are you?  How fast can you run?

Here are some common expressions with how. Use them to complete the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How old ...? ✓</th>
<th>How far ...?</th>
<th>How long ...?</th>
<th>How tall ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How big ...?</td>
<td>How fast ...?</td>
<td>How often ...?</td>
<td>How well ...?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>How old are you?</th>
<th>… ‘37 next birthday.’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>‘… your house from here?’</td>
<td>‘About 5 km.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>‘… John?’</td>
<td>‘Very tall – nearly two metres.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>‘… she driving?’</td>
<td>‘The police say she was doing 160 km/h.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>‘… you see your parents?’</td>
<td>‘Every week.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>‘… Petra’s flat?’</td>
<td>‘Very small – just one room and a bathroom.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>‘… you stay in China?’</td>
<td>‘I was there for six months.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>‘… you speak Spanish?’</td>
<td>‘Not very well.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some questions begin with what + noun.

**What time is the film?**
**What time** does the train leave? (NOT **At what time**....?)

**What colour are her eyes?** (NOT **What colour** have....?)
**What colour** is your car?

**What size are you?** (buying clothes)
**What size** would you like?

**What sort of books do you read?**
**What sort of** films do you like? (OR **What kind of** ...?)

To ask for descriptions, we often use **What is/are/was/were** ... **like?**

'Where have you been?' ‘In Ireland.
‘**What was** the weather like?’ ‘OK.’

‘**What’s** your new boyfriend like?’ ‘He’s very nice.’

‘My brother writes detective stories.’ ‘Yes? **What are they like?**’ ‘Not very good, really.’

= Make questions with **What ... like?**, using expressions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>your new girlfriend</th>
<th>your new house</th>
<th>your new car</th>
<th>your new job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>your new boss ✔</td>
<td>your new school</td>
<td>your new neighbours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What’s your new boss like?**

0 ‘.................. does her plane arrive?’
1 ‘.................. is the baby’s hair?’
2 ‘.................. music do you play?’
3 ‘I’d like a packet of rice, please.’
4 ‘Can I borrow one of your sweaters?’
5 ‘.................. holidays do you prefer?’
6 ‘.................. did you get home?’
7 ‘I need a sweater.’ ‘.................. are you?’

A ‘Eight o’clock, if it’s not late.’...
B ‘.................., small or large?’...
C ‘She hasn’t got any.’......
D ‘Pop, mostly.’......
E ‘I don’t remember – it was very late.’......
F ‘Sure. .................. would you like? Blue? Green?’......
G ‘Extra large.’......
H ‘We usually go to the mountains.’......

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some more useful questions**

Where are you from? Where do you come from? (NOT From where....? – see page 111)

How long have you been here? How long are you here for? (= ‘Until when ...?’)

How long does it take to get to London? How long does it take to learn English?

How do you spell that word? How do you pronounce this word?

For questions with who, what and which, see page 108.

I keep six honest serving-men
(They taught me all I knew):
Their names are What and Why and When
And How and Where and Who.

(Rudyard Kipling)
question-word subjects  Who phoned?  What happened?

When who and what are subjects, we make questions without do/does/did. Compare:

'Who\SUBJ phoned?' 'Mike\SUBJ phoned.' (NOT 'Who did phone?')
'Who\OBJ did you see?' 'I saw Mike\OBJ.'
'What\SUBJ happened?' 'Something\SUBJ terrible happened.' (NOT 'What did happen?')
'What\OBJ did he say?' 'He said something\OBJ terrible.'

The same thing happens when subjects begin with which, what, or how much/many.

Which team won? (NOT Which team did win?)  What country won the World Cup in 1966?
How many people work here? (COMPARE How many people\OBJ did you\SUBJ see?)

1  Circle the correct form.
   ▶ Who lives/ does live in that house?  3  Who married she? / did she marry?
   ▶ What happened/ did happen to Joe?  4  What means this word? / does this word mean?
   1  Who plays / does play the piano?  5  What said you? / did you say?
   2  What made / did make that noise?  6  Who told / did tell you?

2  Make present (PR) or past (PA) questions.
   ▶ car / belong / to Mary (which – PR)  Which car belongs to Mary?
   ▶ you / buy / glasses (how many – PA)  How many glasses did you buy?
   1  people / come / to her party (how many – PA) ..............................................................
   2  Peter / catch / train (which – PA) ..............................................................
   3  bus / go / to the station (which – PR) ..............................................................
   4  Douglas / speak / languages (how many – PR) ..............................................................
   5  Alice / like / music (what sort – PR) ..............................................................
   6  music / keep / the baby quiet (what sort – PR) ..............................................................

3  Look at the picture and complete the sentences.
   ▶ Who loves Fred?  Alice and Mary
   1  Who does Fred love?  Ann?
   2  ......................... love?  Joe.
   3  .......................... love?  Joe.
   4  .......................... love?  Mary.
   5  ......................... love?  Mary.
   6  .......................... love?  Ann.
   7  .......................... Nobody.

4  Can you write four more questions and answers about the picture?
   1  ..............................................................
   2  ..............................................................
   3  ..............................................................
   4  ..............................................................
5 Make questions. Ask about the words in italics.

- (a) John broke the window. (b) John broke the window.
- (a) What did John break? (b) Who broke the window?

1 (a) Melissa bought a coat. (b) Melissa bought a coat.

2 (a) The bus hit that tree. (b) The bus hit that tree.

3 (a) Rose lost the office keys. (b) Rose lost the office keys.

4 (a) Paul teaches Arabic. (b) Paul teaches Arabic.

5 (a) Mike hates computers. (b) Mike hates computers.

6 Write questions about the pictures, using the words in the box. Do you know the answers? (They are at the bottom of the page.)

Who built the Eiffel Tower?

1
2
3
4

- build ✔ build paint first reach write

7 Write questions about books, plays or songs. Ask some people.

Who wrote

- For the difference between which and what, see page 322. For whom, see page 322.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
questions with long subjects  Are Ann and her mother and father coming?

Be careful when questions have long subjects. The word order does not change.

Is Ann coming tomorrow?
Are Ann and her mother coming tomorrow?
Are Ann and her mother and father and Uncle George coming tomorrow? (NOT Are coming tomorrow Ann ...?)

What time will the bus for the dinner and dance leave? (NOT What time the bus will leave?)
Have Bill and Jenny and their children arrived? (NOT Have arrived Bill and Jenny ...)?
Where did the President and his wife stay? (NOT Where stayed...? OR Where did stay...?)
Is the food for the children’s party ready? (NOT Is ready...?)

1 Make yes/no questions.

- The boss’s secretary travels a lot. Does the boss’s secretary travel a lot?
- 1 Your sister Caroline is talking to the police. .................................................................
- 2 All the people here understand Spanish. .................................................................
- 3 Most of the football team played well. .................................................................
- 4 The man at the table in the corner is asleep. .................................................................

2 Make questions with question words.

- The President and her husband live in Madrid. Where do the President and her husband live?
- 1 A ticket for Saturday’s concert costs €15. How much .................................................................
- 2 The film about skiing in New Zealand starts at 8.00. What time .................................................................
- 3 The second word in the first sentence means ‘kind’. What .................................................................
- 4 The man in the flat downstairs wants to change his job. Why .................................................................

3 Put the words in the correct order.

1 laughing / why / all those people / are / ? .................................................................
2 is / eating / that big black dog / what / ? .................................................................
3 going / everybody in your family / to Scotland / for Christmas / is / ? .................................................................
4 what game / those children / playing / are / ? .................................................................
5 Lola and her friends / studying / are / where / ? .................................................................
6 those people over there / French / are / speaking / ? .................................................................
prepositions in questions  

We often put a preposition (with, at, for etc) at the end of a question with Who ...? or What ...?, especially in spoken English.

**Who did you go with?** (More natural than With whom did you go?)  
**What are you looking at?**  
**What’s she talking about?**

We also ask questions with Where ... from? and Where ... to?

'Where do you come from?' (Or 'Where are you from?') 'Malaysia.'  
**Where shall I send the letter to?**

1 Put in prepositions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>about</th>
<th>about</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>from</th>
<th>from</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>with</th>
<th>with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What are you looking for?</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Who did Ann send the money to?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Where is your wife from?</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What’s your book about?</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>What are you thinking about?</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>What subjects are you interested in?</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Where does Franz come from?</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Who are you in love now?</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>What are you all waiting for?</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Who are you writing to?</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who are you going on holiday to?</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Who shall I send the letter to?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Write questions beginning Who/What and ending with prepositions.

- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I bought my car from Henry.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I'm thinking about life.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  Alice works for my aunt.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  We were talking about you.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I'm interested in most things.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  We're looking at that aeroplane.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I stayed with Eric.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I work with Sylvia.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  I spent the money on travel.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  The film was about Russia.'
- Who did you buy your car from?  
  You can get tickets from my office.'

In conversation, we often ask short questions with Who/What/Where + preposition.

'I'm going camping.'  
Who with?  
William wants to talk to you.'  
What about?

3 Complete the questions with one word.

1 'I'm thinking.' about?
2 'I've got a letter.' from?
3 'She hit him.' with?
4 'She's getting married.' to?
5 'I'm going to America.' with?
6 'Jamie's writing a book.' about?
7 'I'm writing postcards.' Who?
8 'I've bought a present.' Who?
9 'Jane has arrived.' from?
10 'I've got a question.' about?
11 'Send this box.' Where?
12 'I'm making a cake.' Who?
Dogs can’t fly. I don’t know why.

**AM NOT**  **HAVE NOT**  **WILL NOT**  **CANNOT**  **DO NOT**

To make negative sentences: put *not* after an auxiliary verb.
(Auxiliary verbs are: be (am etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might, must.)

It *is not* raining. I *have not* seen Bill. She *cannot* understand me.

In conversation we usually use contractions (see page 301):
aren’t *isn’t* wasn’t weren’t hasn’t hadn’t won’t (= ‘will not’) wouldn’t
can’t *can’t* couldn’t shan’t shouldn’t mightn’t mustn’t

We say I’m not, NOT I amn’t. We can also say you’re not (= ‘you aren’t’), he’s not, she’s not etc.

It *isn’t* / *it’s not* raining. We *weren’t* at home. I *haven’t* seen Ben.
She *can’t* understand me. You *mustn’t* tell anybody. I *’m not* ready.

**1 Make negative sentences. Use contractions.**

- Dogs can swim. (fly)  **Dogs can’t fly.**
- Milk is white. (red)  ..........................................................
- The children are at school. (at home)  ..........................................................
- Max has been to Japan. (Egypt)  ..........................................................
- You must give this letter to Erica. (her mother)  ..........................................................
- I’ll be here tomorrow. (in the office)  ..........................................................
- I could talk when I was two years old. (swim)  ..........................................................
- We were in London yesterday. (Birmingham)  ..........................................................
- I’m Scottish. (English)  ..........................................................

**2 Write five things that you can’t do. Here are some suggestions.**

- dance  draw  drive  play chess/bridge etc  play the piano/guitar etc
- remember faces  remember names  ride a horse  sing
- speak French/Chinese etc  understand maths

> I can’t speak German.

- 1 ..........................................................
- 2 ..........................................................
- 3 ..........................................................
- 4 ..........................................................
- 5 ..........................................................

There are three things that I can’t remember: names, faces, and I’ve forgotten the other.

**3 Write five things that you probably won’t do next week. Here are some suggestions.**

- go to New York  get married  get rich  play football  become President
- write a poem  buy a car  make a cake  read Shakespeare  climb Mount Everest

> I probably won’t go to Paris next week.

- 1 ..........................................................
- 2 ..........................................................
- 3 ..........................................................
- 4 ..........................................................
- 5 ..........................................................
If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + not/n't + infinitive (without to).

I like → I don't like
She knows → She doesn't know (NOT She doesn't knows)
He arrived → He did not arrive (NOT He did not arrived)
It rained → It didn't rain

4 Make negative sentences.
- Cats eat meat. (potatoes) Cats don't eat potatoes.
- Cervantes wrote 'Don Quixote.' (Mozart) Mozart didn't write 'Don Quixote.'

5 Use expressions from the two boxes, and write eight things that you don't do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy socks</th>
<th>dance</th>
<th>go to sleep</th>
<th>play football</th>
<th>play the violin</th>
<th>ride a bicycle</th>
<th>speak English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>study mathematics</td>
<td>write poetry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after breakfast</td>
<td>at Christmas</td>
<td>at school</td>
<td>in London</td>
<td>in the bath</td>
<td>in the middle of the night</td>
<td>in the middle of the road</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I don't buy books in London.
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

6 Complete these negative sentences. Use aren't, haven't, doesn't etc.

1 'What's the time?' 'I .................. know.'
2 'What was the film like? 'It .................. very good.'
3 'Would Stella like some coffee?' 'No, she .................. drink coffee.'
4 I .................. seen William for weeks. Is he OK?
5 Pat and Jim .................. very happy with their new car.
6 'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'I .................. be here. How about Tuesday?'
7 'Was the lesson any good?' 'I .................. understand a word.'
8 She .................. buy the coat; it was too expensive.
9 The baby .................. got much hair.
10 'Can we go?' 'In a minute. I .................. ready.'

For more practice with present negatives, past negatives etc, see Sections 2-5.

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115).

Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.)
She never phones me. (NOT She does never phone me.)
not and no

We use **not** to make a word, expression or clause negative.

*Not surprisingly*, we missed the train. (NOT No surprisingly ...)
The students went on strike, but **not** the teachers. (NOT ... no the teachers.)
I can see you tomorrow, but **not** on Thursday.
I have **not** received his answer.

We use **no** with a noun or -ing form to mean ‘not any’ or ‘not a/an’ (see page 115).

**No teachers** went on strike. (= There weren’t any teachers on strike.)
I’ve got **no** Thursdays free this term. (= ... not any Thursdays ...)
I telephoned, but there was **no** answer. (= ... not an answer.)

**NO SMOKING**

1. **Put in not or no.**
   1. I work hard, but ............... at weekends.
   2. She was ................. able to understand him.
   3. They had ................. butter left in the shop.
   4. They repaired my watch, but ................. properly.
   5. We’ve got ................. time to talk now.
   6. I can come round, but ................. tonight.
   7. They did ................. want to help.
   8. ‘Do you smoke?’ ................. usually.’
   9. She’s a woman with ................. sense of humour.
   10. ‘Shall I put some music on?’ ‘OK, but ................. too loud.’

2. **Change not any/a to no.**
   ▶️ I haven’t got any money. ...................... I’ve got no money ......................
   1. There aren’t any newspapers. ..............................................
   2. There isn’t any time. ..............................................
   3. There weren’t any letters. ..............................................
   4. I didn’t see a light. ..............................................
   5. He didn’t give an answer. ..............................................

We **don’t usually put not** with the subject. Instead, we use a structure with *it*.

*It wasn’t Bill who phoned, it was Pete.* (NOT Not-Bill phoned ...)

**NO-MAN’S LAND**
We can make negative sentences with nobody, nothing, nowhere, never, no, hardly (= 'almost not') and similar words. With these words, we do not use not or do/does/did.

Nobody loves me. (NOT Nobody doesn’t love me.)
He said nothing. (NOT He didn’t say nothing.)
She never writes to me. (NOT She doesn’t never write to me.)
I’ve got no money. (NOT I haven’t got no money.)
I can hardly understand him. (NOT I can’t hardly understand him.)

1 Put the words in order to make sentences.
   - up father early my gets never My father never gets up early.
   - lives house nobody that in
   - my understand I’ll dog never
   - children me the nothing told
   - money I no have
   - the could road I see hardly

2 Change the sentences.
   - She didn’t say anything. (nothing) She said nothing.
   - I didn’t see anybody. (nobody)
   - We didn’t have any trouble. (no)
   - My parents don’t go out. (never)
   - I looked for the dog, but it wasn’t anywhere in the house. (nowhere)
   - I didn’t eat anything yesterday. (nothing)
   - It didn’t rain for three months. (hardly)
   - John didn’t speak, Mary didn’t speak, Bill didn’t speak. (nobody)

3 Make the sentences negative.
   - I drink coffee. (not) I don’t drink coffee.
   - I drink coffee. (never) I never drink coffee.
   - Somebody telephoned. (nobody) Nobody telephoned.
   - My grandmother drives fast. (never)
   - Andrew plays the guitar. (not)
   - When she talked, I understood. (nothing)
   - I like Ann’s new shoes. (not)
   - Something happened this morning. (nothing)
   - There’s somewhere to sit down in the station. (nowhere)
   - I watch TV. (hardly)
   - Somebody wants to play tennis. (nobody)

I never hated a man enough to give him diamonds back.
   - (Zsa Zsa Gabor)
I have nothing to say, and I am saying it, and that is poetry.
   - (John Cage)
Sometime they’ll give a war and nobody will come.
   - (Carl Sandburg)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
questions and negatives: more practice

1 Questions with and without *do/did*. Ask about the words in *italics*.

- She said something. Who said something?
- She said something. What did she say?

1 Julia cooked dinner. ..............................................................
2 Julia cooked eggs. ..............................................................
3 The ball hit Joe. ..............................................................
4 The ball hit Joe. ..............................................................
5 Sarah plays the guitar. ..............................................................
6 Sarah plays the guitar. ..............................................................
7 Beth speaks *eight languages*. ..............................................................
8 Beth speaks *eight languages*. ..............................................................
9 Dad ate Mum’s breakfast. ..............................................................
10 Dad ate Mum’s breakfast. ..............................................................

2 Prepositions in questions. Write questions for these answers.

- I was thinking about you. Who were you thinking about?

1 I went with Henry. ..............................................................
2 I’m writing to Margaret. ..............................................................
3 I bought it for my mother. ..............................................................
4 The letter’s from my uncle. ..............................................................
5 We were talking about life. ..............................................................
6 I carried it in a paper bag. ..............................................................
7 I sold my car for €1000. ..............................................................
8 She hit him with her umbrella. ..............................................................
9 I sent the flowers to Caroline. ..............................................................
10 She comes from Denmark. ..............................................................

3 Long subjects. Put in auxiliary verbs to make questions.

- why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year?

1 why / all those people / looking at me ..............................................................
2 Anna and Oscar / have lunch together / yesterday ..............................................................
3 that man in the dark coat / work / for the government ..............................................................
4 the football team / playing / in Scotland / next Saturday ..............................................................
5 what / those children / doing / in the garden ..............................................................
6 what / the first word in this sentence / mean ..............................................................
7 Tom and his sister / staying / at your house / this week ..............................................................
8 when / Emma’s teacher and her class / going / to Paris ..............................................................
9 what / that strange woman / say to you ..............................................................
10 when / Mary and Phil / get married ..............................................................
4 Not, nobody, never etc. Make negative sentences.

- I read newspapers. (not) I don't read newspapers.
- I read newspapers. (never) I never read newspapers.
- Somebody spoke. (nobody) Nobody spoke.

1 My father eats meat. (never) My father doesn't eat meat.
2 Peter likes jazz. (not) Peter doesn't like jazz.
3 There's something to do in this town. (nothing) There's nothing to do in this town.
4 I understood everything. (nothing) I didn't understand everything.
5 Sally plays the piano. (not) Sally doesn't play the piano.
6 I go to the cinema. (hardly) I hardly ever go to the cinema.
7 Something happened. (nothing) Nothing happened.
8 Somebody wants to talk to you. (nobody) Nobody wants to talk to you.
9 I've got some money. (no) I haven't got any money.
10 I've got enough money. (not) I haven't got enough money.

5 Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself.

Just you wait and see
I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't speak German
or climb mountains.
I can see
I'm not going to be a ballet dancer
or an opera singer.
I will never discover a new planet
or run a two-hour marathon
or write the novel of the century.
But I'll do something good.
Just you wait and see.

Your poem
I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't
or
I can see
I'm not going to
or
I'll never
or
But I'll
Just you wait and see.

6 Grammar and vocabulary. Make sure you know the words in the box, Use a dictionary if necessary. Then read statements 1–6 and correct the five that are wrong.

cat dinosaur elephant grizzly bear hunt insect penguin spider tiger

- Penguins can fly. Penguins can't fly.

1 Adult grizzly bears can climb trees.
2 Elephants live for 50–70 years.
3 Tigers live in Africa.
4 The first people hunted dinosaurs.
5 Spiders are insects.
6 Cats can see when there is no light.

7 Internet exercise. Get information from the internet (in English) about some of the animals in Exercise 6, or about some other animals. Then write some negative information about the animals, using can't, don't, aren't etc.
Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

1. Does your brother living with you? ..............................................
2. Are coming to the party all your friends? ..............................................
3. Did you see Tom yesterday? ..............................................
4. Play you football? ..............................................
5. Why you are tired? ..............................................
6. What time does the lesson start? ..............................................
7. What is your boss like? ..............................................
8. Where I can pay? ..............................................
9. Who did tell you that? ..............................................
10. Did Sarah phoned yesterday? ..............................................
11. Not speak English. ..............................................
12. I couldn't find my glasses nowhere. ..............................................
13. I'm no ready yet. ..............................................
14. I had no money. ..............................................
15. At what are you looking? ..............................................
16. I never work at weekends. ..............................................
17. She didn't say nothing. ..............................................
18. This sentence is no right. ..............................................
19. Nobody didn't help me. ..............................................
20. She works in China, but no in Beijing. ..............................................

Complete the questions.

1. 'What time' is the film? 'Eight o'clock.' ..............................................
2. '......................' did you go home? 'I was tired.' ..............................................
3. '......................' were you born? 'In Scotland.' ..............................................
4. '......................' is Roger? '27 next birthday.' ..............................................
5. '......................' is her hair? 'Black.' ..............................................
6. '......................' are you? '1 metre 84.' ..............................................
7. '......................' music do you like? 'Pop.' ..............................................
8. '......................' can you sprint? 'I can do 100m in 12.4 seconds.' ..............................................
9. '......................' are your shoes? '42.' ..............................................
10. '......................' is John's new girlfriend ...............? 'She's very nice.' ..............................................

Make negative sentences.

1. I can speak French. (Spanish) I can't speak Spanish. ..............................................
2. Kelly is at home. (at work) ..............................................
3. I've forgotten your name. (your face) ..............................................
4. Peter drives buses. (taxis) ..............................................
5. We went to Spain. (Portugal) ..............................................
6. You must use this phone. (that one) ..............................................
7. Henry eats fish. (meat) ..............................................
8. These people play rugby. (soccer) ..............................................
9. Luke broke his arm. (his leg) ..............................................
10. I'll be at home in the morning. (the afternoon) ..............................................
11. Elisabeth reads magazines. (books) ..............................................
12. I haven't been to America. ..............................................
13. I haven't been to America. ..............................................
14. I've been to America. ..............................................
15. I can swim? ..............................................
16. I can swim? ..............................................
17. I can't swim. ..............................................
18. I can drive? ..............................................
19. I can drive? ..............................................
20. I can't drive. ..............................................
21. I've been to America. ..............................................
22. I haven't been to America. ..............................................
23. I can swim? ..............................................
24. I can swim? ..............................................
25. I can't swim. ..............................................
26. I can drive? ..............................................
27. I can drive? ..............................................
28. I can't drive. ..............................................
29. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
30. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
31. She's very nice. ..............................................
32. She's very nice. ..............................................
33. I'm very nice. ..............................................
34. I'm very nice. ..............................................
35. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
36. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
37. I'm very nice. ..............................................
38. I'm very nice. ..............................................
39. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
40. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
41. I'm very nice. ..............................................
42. I'm very nice. ..............................................
43. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
44. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
45. I'm very nice. ..............................................
46. I'm very nice. ..............................................
47. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
48. I'm 27 next birthday. ..............................................
49. I'm very nice. ..............................................
50. I'm very nice. ..............................................

Make questions with she and her sisters.

1. Do she and her sisters live in England? ..............................................
2. Have you been to America? ..............................................
3. Can she drive? ..............................................
4. Can she swim? ..............................................
5. Can she sing? ..............................................
6. Can she paint? ..............................................
7. Can she dance? ..............................................
8. Can she cook? ..............................................
9. Has she got a car? ..............................................
10. Has she got a bicycle? ..............................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms

grammar summary

INFINITIVES: (to) go, (to) break, (to) see etc
-ING FORMS (ALSO CALLED 'GERUNDS'): going, breaking, seeing etc

We can use both -ing forms and infinitives as subjects (but -ing forms are more common).

Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)

We can use infinitives to say why we do things.

I expect to pass my exams. (NOT I expect passing ...)

We can use infinitives after some verbs and nouns.

She's ready to leave. I'm glad to see you. I've got work to do.

After some verbs we use infinitives; after others we use -ing forms.

I expect to pass my exams. (NOT I expect passing ...)

We can use infinitives after some adjectives and nouns.

She's ready to leave. I'm glad to see you. I've got work to do.

After prepositions we use -ing forms, not infinitives.

You can't live without eating. (NOT ... without to eat.)

I usually watch TV before going to bed. (NOT ... before to go to bed.)

Infinitives often have to before them; but not always.

I want to go home, but I can't go now.

How I stopped smoking

I started smoking when I was 16. I didn't really want to smoke, but at that age it's important to imitate your friends. Once I had started, of course, it was hard to stop. And smoking gave me something to do with my hands. Whenever I met strangers, I couldn't help reaching for a cigarette to give me confidence, to make me look (I thought) cool and sophisticated.

Soon I couldn't get through a day without smoking twenty or thirty cigarettes. But smoking made me feel ill and smell bad, and I was tired of feeling ill and smelling bad. And I realised that it was stupid to spend so much money on a ridiculous habit. So I tried to stop. Hundreds of times. I kept on giving up. I became an expert on giving up smoking. Nothing worked: I always started again.

At last I had a piece of luck. I got terrible bronchitis - so bad that I simply couldn't smoke. It lasted for months. And when I finally recovered, I realised that I had broken the habit. I didn't have to start smoking again.

And I never did. 😄
infinitives: using to

I want to go home. (NOT I want go home.) It's important to get enough sleep. I telephoned my sister to say sorry.

But we use infinitives without to after do/does/did in questions and negatives (see pages 104 and 113).

Does John speak Russian? (NOT Does John to speak ...) I didn't understand.

We also use infinitives without to after modal verbs (can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must – see Section 6).

I can't swim. (NOT I can't to swim.) Must you go now? We should find a hotel.

1 Put in to or nothing (-).
   ► I don't want to stay at school.
   ► What time does the train leave?
   1 Do you play golf?
   2 It's nice be at home again.
   3 Sorry – I can't help you.

2 Put in words from the box, with or without to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>stop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I'm writing to ask for your help.
- Can you lend me some money?
- Maria went to America English.
- Can you me with the cooking?
- I'd like you for a moment.

4 It may snow this weekend.
5 I must remember phone Andy.
6 Do we have buy petrol?
7 Jane seems be tired today.
8 I hope see you again soon.

3 Put in not to with infinitives from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>go to sleep</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>laugh</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>talk</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>wake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Please try not to laugh when David sings.
- It's nice a headache any more.
- Be careful those glasses.
- Please try in the lessons.
- Tell the children so much noise.
- I'd like so much work.
- Hannah must learn about herself all the time.
- Remember me up tomorrow morning.
- It's important Sheila about Peter and Sandra.
- We'll be sorry you tomorrow.
- Please tell Amir the trumpet after midnight.

We make negative infinitives with not (to) + verb.

Try not to forget your keys. (NOT to not forget ...) Be careful not to wake Paul up.
I told you not to telephone me here. I'm sorry not to stay longer.
The company did not make any money last year. You must not park in front of the school.

We use an **infinitive with to** to say why we do something.

I **turned** on the TV **to watch** the news.  Joanna went **to study** music.

1. Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask for</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>catch</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>meet</th>
<th>relax</th>
<th>turn on</th>
<th>wait for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   > Use this button **to turn on** the computer.

   1. Oliver got up early **to** Mark to the station.
   2. I was late, so I ran **to** my bus.
   3. Ann wrote to me **to** Joe’s address.
   4. I sat in the waiting room **to** the doctor.
   5. Bob’s gone to the airport **to** his uncle.
   6. I went to town on Saturday **to** a present for my cousin’s birthday.
   7. I stayed up late last night **to** my English homework.
   8. Alice went to Beijing **to** Chinese.
   9. I turned on the radio **to** the latest news.
   10. I listen to music **to**

2. Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>clean</th>
<th>earn</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>get up</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>wish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   > Mum gave us some money **to go** to the cinema.

   1. I stood on a chair **to** the top of the fridge.
   2. Roger’s gone to town **to** a book.
   3. We moved closer to the fire **to** warm.
   4. Use this key **to** the front door.
   5. I left a note **to** George about the meeting.
   6. Jane got a part-time job **to** some pocket money.
   7. I bought some good boots **to** walking in the mountains.
   8. Alice phoned Sue **to** her a happy birthday.
   9. I put the kettle on **to** a cup of tea.
   10. I set the alarm clock **to** early.

3. Put the beginnings and ends together, using verbs from the box with to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cut</th>
<th>dry</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>wash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   0. You use soap  
   A. **to wash** yourself.  
   1. You use a knife  
   B. **to cut** things in shops.
   2. You use a torch  
   C. **to dry** and close doors.
   3. You use money  
   D. **to dry** yourself.
   4. You use a key  
   E. **to open** things into pieces.
   5. You use a towel  
   F. **to see** in the dark.

**In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.**
After some verbs we use infinitives, usually with to.

I hope to go to Ireland later this year. Did Jeremy agree to help you with your work?

Read the texts, and write down the verbs that are followed by an infinitive with to.

I'm eighteen, and I hope to be an airline pilot. My parents have agreed to pay for lessons if I do well in my exams. My brother says girls shouldn't be pilots, but I refuse to listen to him.

When I started to work here, my boss promised to give me interesting work, travelling to Europe and Asia. I expected to enjoy my job. But all my work is boring, and I don't do any travelling. I've tried to talk to my boss, but she doesn't listen. Now I've decided to look for another job.

I've always been afraid of water. Then one day last year I thought, 'I don't want to live like this.' So I found some special lessons for people like me. I'm learning to swim, and next summer I plan to take water-skiing lessons.

I needed to be at work early this morning. But I forgot to set my alarm clock, and I woke up at 7.30 instead of 6.30. Then everything seemed to go wrong. I had no clean shirts, the bus was late, ...

I began to learn karate four years ago, and I've continued to go to lessons twice a week since then. I love it. I've visited some other karate clubs, but I prefer to learn at my own club, because the teaching is so good.

After begin, start, continue and prefer we can also use -ing forms with the same meaning.

When did you begin to learn / begin learning karate?
I started to have / started having these headaches about a month ago.
The President continued to speak / continued speaking for an hour and a half.
I prefer to live / prefer living in the country – the city is too noisy.

→ For -ing forms after try and forget, see page 308.

Love . . . Everyone feels it, has felt it, or expects to feel it.
(Anthony Trollope, 1883)

We must learn to live together as brothers . . .
(Martin Luther King, 1964)

He preferred to be good rather than to seem good.
(Sallust, of Cato, 54 B.C.)

War will stop when men refuse to fight.
(Pacifist slogan, 1936)

Gentlemen always seem to remember blondes.
(Anita Loos, 1925)

Stop the world, I want to get off!
(Anthony Newley, 1961)
Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes and to.

1–4: agree decide expect ✓ need plan ✓ try

► ALICE: ‘The exam seemed easy. I was surprised when I got a low mark.’
Alice expected to pass the exam; she was surprised when she got a low mark.

► David and Cathy have got plane tickets and hotel reservations for Corsica.
David and Cathy are planning to go to Corsica.

1 Annie is going to Singapore. A visa is necessary, and she hasn’t got one.
Annie ........................................... get a visa.

2 JANE: ‘Could you possibly lend me £5?’
ANDY: ‘Sure.’
Andy has ........................................ lend £5 to Jane.

3 JOE: ‘Shall I go to the cinema or stay at home? Cinema, perhaps? No, I’ll stay at home.’
Joe has ........................................ stay at home.

4 Lizzie was expecting a call from Sarah. Sarah rang the number, but it was engaged.
Sarah ........................................ phone Lizzie, but the number was engaged.

5–10: forget learn promise refuse start want

5 Oliver lives in the US, but he took all his driving lessons in France.
Oliver ........................................... drive in France.

6 PATRICK: ‘I will write to you every day, Barbara.’
Patrick has ........................................ write to Barbara every day.

7 BOB: ‘I was going to post a birthday card to my mother, but I didn’t remember.’
Bob ........................................... post his mother’s birthday card.

8 PHILIP: ‘Please, please lend me your car.’
AGNES: ‘No, no, no and no.’
Agnes has ........................................ lend her car to Philip.

9 Helen’s parents are sending her to England for two weeks. Helen is not happy.
Helen doesn’t ........................................ go to England.

10 Susan said her first word when she was seven months old.
Susan ........................................ talk when she was seven months old.

11–15: begin continue hope prefer seem

11 Mark plays the piano and the trumpet. The trumpet is his favourite.
Mark can play the piano, but he ........................................ play the trumpet.

12 Ling usually stops work at 5.00, but yesterday she didn’t stop until 7.00.
Ling ........................................... work until 7.00 yesterday.

13 John swims every day; he’s going to try for the national team next year.
John ........................................... be in the national swimming team next year.

14 ‘I’m not sure, but I think Rebecca was worried yesterday evening.’
Rebecca ........................................ be worried yesterday evening.

15 Irene sat down to write a letter to her brother yesterday, but she didn’t finish it.
Irene ........................................ write a letter to her brother yesterday.

→ For infinitives in indirect speech (after tell, ask etc), see pages 125 and 269.
→ For sentences like I don’t want to, see page 293.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don’t/) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
We often say that we want somebody to do something.

My boyfriend wants me to do all the cooking. (NOT ... wants that I do all the cooking.)

We can use would like in the same way.

I'd like you to listen to this song. (NOT I'd like that you listen ...)

**1 Make sentences with want or would like.**

- MRS LEWIS: Ann, can you post my letters, please? (want)
  
  Mrs Lewis wants Ann to post her letters.

- SARAH: John, could you cook tonight? (would like)

- POLICEMAN: Please move your car, sir. (want)

- MOTHER: Helen, please wash your face. (want)

- BILL: Andy, can you help me? (would like)

- ROGER: Karen, could you lend me some money? (would like)

- JESSIE: Be quiet for a minute, Peter. (want)

- DAVID: Alice, can you have dinner with me? (would like)

- MIKE: The government should put more money into schools. (would like)

- LUCY: Bill, stop playing that terrible music. (want)

- MARY: Gordon, could you make the bed for once? (would like)

**2 Different people want Alice to do different things. Complete the sentences.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy a better guitar</th>
<th>buy him</th>
<th>do something</th>
<th>go to America with him</th>
<th>go to Russia with her</th>
<th>lend her</th>
<th>spend every weekend</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>study</th>
<th>take him for work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Everybody wants her to do something.

- 1 Her boss ... harder.

- 2 Her little brother ... a bicycle.

- 3 Her dog ... a walk.

- 4 Her boyfriend ... a blue dress.

- 5 Her friend Martha ... at home.

- 6 Her guitar teacher ... economics.

- 7 Her mother ... playing loud music at night.

- 8 Her sister ... economics.

- 9 The people downstairs ... economics.

- 10 Her father ... economics.
We can use some other verbs like this. For example: ask, expect, help, need, tell.

I asked Peter to go to America with me. The doctor told me to take a holiday.
We don’t expect you to work at weekends. I need you to translate this letter.

3 Change the sentences.

1. They thought that we would be late. (expect) They expected us to be late.
2. I said to Fred ‘Please be quiet.’ (ask) I asked him to be quiet.
3. Do you think she’ll phone? (expect) Do you think she’ll call?
4. I carried the books with Joe. (help) I helped Joe to carry the books.
5. The policewoman said to me ‘Show me your driving licence.’ (tell) The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence.
6. Ann finished the work with me. (help) Ann helped me to finish the work.
7. I said to the shop assistant ‘Can you help me?’ (ask) I asked the shop assistant if she could help me.
8. You must stay with me. (need) You need me.
9. I think she’ll pass her exam. (expect) I expect her to pass her exam.
10. Some people must help with the party. (need) Some people need help with the party.

4 Dan’s family wanted different things from him. Write sentences.

His mother: ‘Be happy.’ His mother wanted him to be happy.
His grandfather: ‘Don’t be a politician.’ His grandfather didn’t want him to be a politician.
1. His father: ‘Get rich’
2. His sister Isabel: ‘Be good at sport.’
3. His brother Andy: ‘Go to university.’
4. His sister Nicole: ‘Don’t go to university.’
5. His brother Henry: ‘Be a racing driver.’
6. His grandmother: ‘Be a doctor.’
7. His friend Anthony: ‘Have an easy life.’
8. His maths teacher: ‘Study maths.’
9. His literature teacher: ‘Study literature.’

5 What do/did people want you to do/be in life?

My parents want me to be a doctor.
My teacher wanted me to study engineering.

...
We don’t often begin sentences with **infinitive subjects** (like *To be here with you is nice*). More often, we begin with *it* and put the infinitive later. The structure *It is/was etc. + adjective + infinitive (with to)* is very common.

*It’s nice to be here with you. It was good to see you again. It’s important to remember people’s names.*

1. **Change these sentences to make them more natural.**

   - To take your passport is necessary.  
   - It’s necessary to take your passport.

   - To phone John was not necessary.

   - To understand that woman is impossible.

   - To stay in bed late on Sundays is nice.

   - To say ‘No’ is sometimes difficult.

   - To make our children happy was easy.

   - To tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.

   - To eat out in restaurants is expensive.

   - To learn a foreign language perfectly is almost impossible.

   - To travel is nice.

   - To visit my parents was good.

2. **Complete these sentences about a summer holiday. Use *It was* and words from the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a bit hard to understand</th>
<th>dangerous to swim</th>
<th>expensive to eat</th>
<th>impossible to be interesting to see</th>
<th>nice to have</th>
<th>really good to get away</th>
<th>very easy to make</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   - It was really good to get away from home and work.
   
   - ________________ sunshine every day.
   
   - ________________ how other people live.
   
   - Sometimes ________________ the language if people talked fast.
   
   - ________________ friends.
   
   - ________________ in restaurants, but the food was wonderful.
   
   - The sea was beautiful, but ________________ bored.
   
   - There were so many things to do that ________________.
What do you think? Make sentences beginning It's, using words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>right</th>
<th>wrong</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>necessary</th>
<th>stupid</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- take exercise: It's always good to take exercise.
- tell the truth
- relax
- save money
- give money to beggars
- drive fast
- fight
- be polite to older people
- dress well
- smoke
- work very hard

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: learning and using a language: what is important?
Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
Then make sentences with It's important to ... It's not necessary to ... or It's important not to ... Different answers are possible: for ours, see the answer key.

| bilingual comprehension correctness immediate mistake practise pronunciation |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| regular results rules translate vocabulary                        |

LEARNING
- study regularly: It's important to study regularly.
- study six hours a day: It's not necessary to study six hours a day.
- expect immediate results: It's important not to expect immediate results.
- practise grammar
- translate everything
- read a lot
- read things that interest you

PRONUNCIATION
5. have perfect pronunciation
6. have good enough pronunciation

GRAMMATICAL CORRECTNESS
7. make too many mistakes
8. speak without mistakes

COMPREHENSION
9. practise listening to English

VOCABULARY
10. know 3,000–5,000 words
11. know 50,000 words
12. have a good English-English dictionary
13. have a good bilingual dictionary
We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **why we feel** afraid, glad, happy, pleased, sad, surprised, unhappy etc.

*Mum will be* **glad to find** you at home. I'm **pleased to meet** you.

**1. Put in suitable adjectives or infinitives.**

- John was **happy** to get home after a long day at work. **(sorry, afraid, happy)**
- Hello. I'm very **glad** to **meet** you. **(meet, tell, like)**
- I was sorry not **to talk** to Barbara at the party. **(forget, talk, see)**
- I'm **pleased** to **wake her up** — she always shouts at me when I do. **(excited, pleased, afraid)**
- We were **pleased** to **have** a free weekend at last. **(work, have, know)**
- When I got home, I was **surprised** a policeman in the kitchen. **(get, leave, find)**
- I was not **to feel** bad news for you. **(surprised, sorry, sad)**
- Anna was not **to see** that the cat had brought a mouse in. **(sad, pleased, unhappy)**
- I was **to go** home and go to America. I knew I would miss my family. **(get, stay, leave)**
- We're always **to know** to go on holiday. **(surprised, sad, happy)**

We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **what we think** of things that people do. We do this with adjectives like clever, crazy, right, silly, stupid and wrong.

*You're crazy to think you can get there in an hour. You were clever to bring an umbrella.*

**2. Write sentences with infinitives.**

- Angela carries all her money in one bag. She's wrong. **(Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one bag)**
- Annie got to the airport early. She was clever. **(Annie was clever to get to the airport early)**
- Eleanor listens to Mark. She's silly.
- Elizabeth took the train without a ticket. She was wrong.
- I sat on my glasses. I was stupid.
- I washed a white shirt with a red one. I was wrong.
- You eat a good breakfast. You're right.
- You lent money to Chris. You were crazy.
- I thought the new Prime Minister was a good man. I was stupid.
- Rebecca told Peter she loved him. She was wrong.
- I stayed in bed until lunchtime. I was right.
adjectives with enough/too + infinitive  

Too tired to sing

After adjective + enough, we can use an infinitive (with to). Note the word order – see page 176.

Julie’s old enough to drive now. (NOT Julie’s enough old ...)  
John isn’t strong enough to carry that.

Make sentences with is/isn’t old enough to ....

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▶ John is old enough to drive a car.</td>
<td>▶ Alice isn’t old enough to drive a car.</td>
<td>1 Alice is old enough to part-time.</td>
<td>2 Alice isn’t old enough to home.</td>
<td>3 Mark isn’t old enough to school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Alice is old enough to home.</td>
<td>5 Cathy isn’t old enough to vote.</td>
<td>6 John is old enough to his name.</td>
<td>7 Liz isn’t old enough to a bus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rewrite these sentences using ... enough ... to ....

1 Laurie is not very tall, so he can’t play basketball. He’s not old enough to play basketball.
2 Annie’s only 14, so she can’t vote.
3 I’m not very strong. I can’t open this bottle.
4 My French is good. I can read a newspaper.
5 Peter isn’t very old. He can’t go out by himself.
6 Rob is intelligent. He will do well at university.

After too + adjective, we can use an infinitive (with to).

I’m too tired to sing. Alice was very afraid – too afraid to speak.

Change two sentences into one. Use too ... to ....

▶ I’m very sleepy. I can’t drive. I’m too sleepy to drive.
1 Helen is very ill. She can’t work.
2 My grandfather is very old. He can’t travel.
3 I’m very bored. I can’t listen any longer.
4 Cara’s very hot. She can’t play tennis.
5 I’m very hungry. I can’t work.
6 I’m very tired. I can’t drive.
7 I was very afraid. I couldn’t move.
8 Molly was very ill last week. She couldn’t go to school.
9 Our dog’s very fat. It can’t run.
10 My mother’s very deaf. She doesn’t understand what people say.

Middle age: the age when you are too old to play tennis and too young to play golf.  
(Ansel Adams)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

INFINITIVES AND -ING FORMS

129
noun/pronoun + infinitive  some letters to write

We can often use infinitives with to after nouns.
I've got some letters to write.  Sorry – I haven't got any money to lend you.

1 Complete the sentences with the expressions from the box.

dress to wear  film to watch  friend to see  homework to do
letters to post  shopping to do  stories to tell

► My uncle always has very interesting stories to tell about his year in Nepal.
1 Please can I go out tonight, Dad? I've got no ..........................................
2 I'm going to the post office – have you got any ........................................................
3 I think I'll stay at home tonight. I'm a bit tired, and there's a good ........................................ on TV.
4 Have you got a ........................................ to the party, or will you have to buy one?
5 If you've got any ........................................, we can go to the supermarket later.
6 I'll be home a bit late tonight – I've got a ........................................ after work.

We can use infinitives with to after words like somebody, anything and nowhere (see page 172).

Would you like something to drink?  I haven't got anything to read; can I borrow this book?
There's nothing to eat in the fridge.  Those poor people have nowhere to live.

2 Complete the sentences with somebody etc and the verbs in italics.

► POLICEMAN: Move on, please. There's (see) ........................................
1 I can't go to the party: I don't have (wear) ..........................................................
2 Could I possibly use this table? I need (work) ............................................
3 When I arrived, there was (do) ........................................... – all the work was finished.
4 Everyone in our class was ill today, so our teacher had (teach) ..........................................
5 I'll be with you in a few minutes – I have (finish) ..........................................
6 All my friends are out of town tonight, and I've got (go) ..........................................
7 Everybody needs (love) ..........................................................
8 My brother couldn't find (stay) ........................................................... in Bristol.
9 I'm looking for (help) ............................................................. me with the disco on Saturday.
10 Your arms are full – give me (carry) ..........................................................

NOTHING TO EAT

She had nothing to eat.
They made a film about her because she had nothing to eat.

Her husband was killed in the war.
They wrote a book about how he was killed in the war.

Her mother and brother were executed by the revolutionaries.
There was an opera about it.

Both her children died (there was no hospital).
You can see the photographs at an exhibition in London.

Then somebody wrote a poem.
Still she had nothing to eat.
We often use -ing forms (also called ‘gerunds’) as subjects – more often than infinitives.

*Smoking* is bad for you. (More natural than *To smoke is bad for you.*)

*Swimming* is good exercise. *Driving* makes me tired. *Travelling* takes a lot of my time.

1. Complete the sentences.
   - *Swimming* is slower than *running*.
   - 1 is more dangerous than 2.
   - 2 is faster than 3.
   - 3 costs more than 4.
   - 4 is easier than 5.
   - 5 is harder than 6.
   - 6 is more interesting than 7.
   - 7 is more tiring than 8.
   - 8 is more dangerous.

2. Make three more sentences like the ones in Exercise 1. Use some of the words in the box.
   - cycling
   - learning
   - running
   - shopping
   - sleeping
   - teaching
   - thinking
   - writing

   1.
   2.
   3.

3. We can put objects after -ing forms.
   - *Learning languages* is difficult and takes time. (NOT ... are difficult ... – learning is singular.)
   - *Eating chocolate* does not make you slim.

4. Complete this list of activities with verbs from the box (use -ing forms). Then number them in order of interest: 1 = most interesting (for you); 8 = least interesting.
   - buy
   - cook
   - learn
   - listen to
   - look after
   - meet
   - play
   - read

   cards ..... poetry ..... music .....
   meals ..... languages ..... friends ..... clothes .....

   In notices, you often see NO before -ing forms.

   **NO SMOKING**
   **NO WAITING**

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: public notices

Which words go with which notice?

Use a dictionary if necessary.

**NO PARKING** ..
**NO SMOKING** ...
**NO FISHING** ...
**NO CYCLING** ...
**NO CAMPING** ...

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
After prepositions, we use -ing forms of verbs.

The children are tired of going to the same place every summer. (NOT ... are tired of to go to ...)
She spoke for an hour without using notes. (NOT ... without to use ...)
Thank you for coming. I worry about spending too much money.
We’re thinking of going to Jamaica for Christmas.

For spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

→ Put the beginnings and ends together.

0 Every morning, my dad worries about  
1 Please don’t leave without 
2 I don’t like the idea of 
3 Are you interested in 
4 I’ll pay you for 
5 I never get tired of 
6 Thank you very much for 
7 My brother’s thinking of 
8 I can’t work without 
9 Sometimes I dream of

A being late for his train. 
B watering my garden while I’m on holiday. 
C telling me that you’re going. 
D going to Vienna with us next weekend? 
E working all my life. 
F being able to fly. 
G selling his house. 
H drinking lots of coffee. 
I reading. 
J babysitting.

→ Add -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

ask be close get go hear ski smoke wash watch work

▶ Alice dreams of being an opera singer, but she can’t sing very well.
1 I’m tired of the same old stories; doesn’t John realise he’s boring us?
2 Which British Prime Minister was famous for big cigars?
3 I’m thinking of to Greece next summer – have you ever been there?
4 Eric’s interested in football on television, but not in playing it.
5 Don’t worry about the dishes – I’ll wash them in the morning.
6 She ran out without the door.
7 They didn’t pay me much for in their garden.
8 Jessica and Rob are talking about married.
9 I’m not very good at, but I like it.
10 She took my bike without

People talking without speaking.
People hearing without listening. ... 'Fools, said I, 'You do not know Silence like a cancer grows.'

(from 'Sound of Silence', song by Paul Simon)
Make sentences with very / quite / not very good at …ing or bad at …ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>RUN</th>
<th>SWIM</th>
<th>CYCLE</th>
<th>DRAW</th>
<th>SING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jane</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>★</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>★</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>★</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>★</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>●</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

► (Jane / run, swim) Jane is very good at running, but bad at swimming.
► (Sue / run, cycle) Sue is very good at running, and quite good at cycling.

1 (Bob / run, cycle)
2 (Sue / draw, run)
3 (Mark / swim, run)
4 (Bob / swim, sing)
5 (Jane / run, cycle)
6 (Mark / sing, draw)
7 (Jane / draw, sing)
8 (Sue / sing, swim)

What are you good or bad at? Write some sentences about yourself.

We use by …ing and without …ing to say how people do something.

I earn my pocket money by working in a petrol station. She passed her exams without studying.

Make sentences with by …ing or without …ing.

► When I left the house this morning, I didn’t close the windows.
   I left the house this morning without closing the windows.

► Ali got a wonderful job. He was in the right place at the right time.
   Ali got a wonderful job by being in the right place at the right time.

1 Ellie stayed awake. She drank lots of coffee.

2 Paul drank three glasses of water. He didn’t stop.

3 Charles woke us up. He turned the TV on.

4 You can find out the meaning of a word. Use a dictionary.

5 Mike paid for his new house. He didn’t borrow any money.

6 Helen lost her driving licence. She drove too fast, too often.

7 Carl did all his homework. He didn’t ask for any help.

8 Teresa cooks all her food. She doesn’t use any salt.

Sometimes to is a preposition (for example I look forward to your answer). In this case we must use -ing forms of verbs after to.

I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT I look forward to hear from you.)
verb + …ing  I can’t help feeling unhappy.

After some verbs we use -ing forms.
Some of these verbs are: keep (on) (= ‘continue, not stop’), finish, stop, give up (= ‘stop’, for habits), go, can’t help (= ‘can’t stop myself’), spend (time), mind, suggest, practise, enjoy.

I can’t help feeling unhappy.  Do you mind sharing a room?  Alex has gone swimming.

1 Complete the sentences with -ing forms. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

We enjoy … playing … tennis in the morning. (play)
1 Has Julia finished … her photos? (take)
2 Robert’s given up … sweets. (eat)
3 ‘Where’s Helen?’ ‘She’s gone …’ (shop)
4 I have to practise … so I can pass my test. (drive)
5 Alec suggested … at the supermarket. (stop)
6 On Sunday I spent three hours … in the garden. (work)

2 Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.

He can’t help  She enjoys ✓  They’ve just finished  He’s given up  They’re going
All that week, it kept  She’s practising  She’s suggesting ✓  It’s just stopped

1 …………………………………

2 …………………………………

3 …………………………………

4 …………………………………

5 …………………………………

6 …………………………………

7 …………………………………

Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.
We use -ing forms after love, like, (not) mind (= 'not dislike'), dislike, hate.

3 Put in -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cook</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>get up</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>shop</th>
<th>study</th>
<th>wash</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>wear</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I hate getting up in the winter before the sun is up.
- I don't like playing baseball, but I like it.
- I don't mind late if my boss asks me.
- Joe's two-year-old sister loves with her toys in the bath.
- Jenny and her sister like each other's clothes.
- When I was at school, I hated history.
- I like nature programmes on TV.
- I hate in supermarkets.
- My father likes, and we all like, so we go well together.

4 Write about ten things you love/hate etc doing. Use expressions from the box or write about other things.

- I love walking in the mountains.
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...

After love, like and hate we can also use infinitives with to with the same meaning.

I love to sing. = I love singing. Rachel likes to go out / going out with friends.
Mum hates to cook / cooking on an electric cooker.
(BUT NOT I dislike to listen to opera. AND NOT Do you mind to wait for a few minutes?)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

1 Adjective or noun + infinitive. Complete the sentences with infinitives.

- (I saw Daniel.) I was happy to see Daniel.
- (I need to do some shopping.) I've got some shopping to do.
1 (I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised.
2 (She left her job.) She was wrong.
3 (I can't buy a car.) I've got no money.
4 (I gave Peter money.) I was crazy.
5 (We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad.
6 (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry.
7 (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too.
8 (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some.
9 (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time.
10 (I need a drink.) I need something.

2 Infinitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives (with to) from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>catch</th>
<th>cut</th>
<th>impress</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>look for</th>
<th>make ✓</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>pay</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers to make her feel better.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Alicia went to America coffee.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I switched the TV on my head warm.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I took two aspirins English.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Carolyn went to the kitchen the news.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I'm wearing a hat my headache.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I have to work in the evenings food.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I used a small knife for my new car.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Jack bought some new clothes the potatoes into pieces.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 We all ran as fast as we could his girlfriend.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 The cat got up on the table the train.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 -ing form subjects. Put these activities in order of interest (for you) and make sentences with more interesting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>driving</th>
<th>listening to music</th>
<th>playing chess</th>
<th>reading</th>
<th>studying English</th>
<th>studying history</th>
<th>talking to friends</th>
<th>watching birds</th>
<th>watching TV</th>
<th>cycling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting than listening to music.

136 INFINITIVES AND -ING FORMS
Grammar in a text. Complete the text with expressions from the boxes.

1-4: glad to leave ✓ happy not to have pleased to find sorry to say unhappy to think

Five years ago, I went to Australia to start a new job. I was glad to leave London, but I was very goodbye to my friends and family, and my mother was that I would be so far away. I was a bit afraid of my new life, so I was any problems when I arrived. Sydney was beautiful, and I was friendly people in the office, an interesting job and a lovely apartment.

5-7: happy to be pleased to see surprised to find

Everything went well in Australia, but I never felt really at home there, and in the end I decided to come back. Today I arrived in London, for the first time in five years. I was so many changes, but I am really here again. On the way from the airport I started to cry – I was so a big red London bus.

Grammar and vocabulary: vehicles. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the advertisements and say what the advertisers want you to buy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bike</th>
<th>motorbike</th>
<th>motorboat</th>
<th>plane</th>
<th>tractor ✓</th>
<th>yacht</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

► They want me to buy a tractor.

1 ........................................................................
2 ........................................................................
3 ........................................................................
4 ........................................................................
5 ........................................................................

Products, contact Trakta for the address of your nearest dealer.

Heathfield H300 Hybrid

• 4130 Molloy frame • 24-speed Hitalo gears

Sorenson... Setting a new standard in design and performance.

M marissini yachts

... OUT IN FRONT

Barrises

New spec machines arriving

Now

Call us for the best deals

M machines to clear

DVR300 £5590

Alpha £5450

Internet exercise. Find three advertisements on the internet. Write some words from each advertisement, and say what the advertisers want you to do or buy.
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

1. Put in the correct form of the verb.
   - I promise ... to phone ... you every day. (phone)
   - She suggested ... seeing ... a doctor. (see)
   - We agreed ... together. (work)
   - I didn’t expect ... John there. (see)
   - I’m really going to stop ... (smoke)
   - I can’t keep ... – I’m too tired. (drive)
   - Iris has decided ... a car. (buy)

2. Correct the mistakes or write ’Correct’.
   - I want seeing you. (to see)
   - Can I help you? (Correct)
   - It’s necessary to get a visa. (to have)
   - I went to Mexico for learning Spanish. (to learn)
   - His parents wanted him to be a doctor. (to be)
   - You can get there faster by take the train. (to take)
   - I stopped to smoke last year. (to smoke)
   - She keeps telephoning me. (to telephone)
   - We decided going by bus. (to go)

3. Write sentences with want.
   - ROBERT ➔ PAUL: tell / everything  Robert wants Paul to tell him everything.
   - ANNA ➔ BETH: look after / children
   - JOE ➔ JACK: lend / money
   - PETER’S MOTHER ➔ PETER: clean / room
   - SAM ➔ JOE: go shopping

   Write sentences with would like.
   - ALICE ➔ OLIVIA: make / coffee  Alice would like Olivia to make coffee.
   - TOM ➔ SARAH: pass / newspaper
   - MIKE’S PARENTS ➔ MIKE: study / medicine
   - THE BOSS ➔ EMMA: answer / phone

   Write sentences with not want.
   - CAROL ➔ ROBERT: drive fast  Carol doesn’t want Robert to drive fast.
   - MARY ➔ JACK: look / her / like that
   - HARRY ➔ JIM: say / anything / police
   - MARIA’S MOTHER ➔ MARIA: fall in love / pop singer

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example ‘I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example ‘I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 10 special structures with verbs

grammar summary

Several different structures are practised in this section:

- structures with get
  - It's getting late.  I got a letter.  Get out!
- verbs followed by prepositions
  - Look at this.
- phrasal verbs
  - Hurry up – we're late.
- verbs with two objects
  - Can you lend me some money?
- have something done
  - I have my hair cut every week.
- let's
  - Let's go and see a film tonight.
- imperatives
  - Come in and have some coffee.

'Don't embarrass me again, spell-checker.'
structures with get  get up; get your coat; it’s getting cold

Get has different meanings in different structures.
Get + direct object: ‘receive, fetch, obtain, buy …’

Get your coat – it’s time to go.  She got a letter from her mother.

Get + adjective: ‘become’

It’s getting cold.  The problem is getting worse.

Get + adverb particle / preposition: ‘move, change position’

What time do you usually get up?  It takes me an hour to get to work.
I couldn’t get on the bus because it was full.

1 Complete the sentences using expressions with get.
   
   > My English is ...........................................
   1 I need to ................................ some ................... out of the bank.
   2 Antonia ................................................. her car and drove away.
   3 I ................................ a long ..................... from Arthur this morning.
   4 What are you doing in my room? .................................!
   5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you’ll ..........................................
   6 If you don’t put on a sweater, you’ll ..........................................
   7 We have to ............................................................ the bus at the next stop.
   8 If I don’t have breakfast, I .................................. really ............... about eleven o’clock.
   9 I’m ..................... ing ....................., I think I’ll go to bed.
   10 It ............................................................ early in winter.

Get is often used with a past participle. Common expressions:
get burnt  get dressed  get undressed get changed get hurt get lost
get married  get divorced  get broken

This structure can be similar to a passive verb.

Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= … ‘was arrested’ …)
We never get invited anywhere.

2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles).

   [break  burn  change  divorce  dress  invite  lose  marry  send  steal  undress]

   > When he was 12 he ........................................... away to boarding school.
   1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it ............................................
   2 Anna and Brian have only been married for a year, but they’re .................................
   3 His glasses ............................................... when he fell off his bike.
   4 I’m going to ............................................... and go to bed.
   5 Every time he goes walking in the country he ............................................
   6 If you leave your bag there, it’ll ............................................
   7 That child takes hours to ........................................... in the morning.
   8 ‘Shall we go swimming?’ ‘OK. I’ll just go and ........................................…’
   9 Do you think we’ll ........................................... to Roger’s party?
   10 Sarah and Oliver ........................................... in a beautiful little church in the country.
verbs with prepositions  Wait for me.

With some verbs, we put a preposition (for, to, at etc) before an object.

Wait for me! (NOT Wait me!) I listen to a lot of music. (NOT I listen a lot of music.)

1 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0-4: ask believe belong laugh wait</th>
<th>5-9: happened listen look talks think</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 Do you believe ...................  A at my pronunciation. ......
1 I know my English is bad, but please don't .....................  B for it and I'll give it to you. ......
2 If you're late, I'll ...................  C for you. ......
3 If you want anything, just .....................  D in life after death? ..O..
4 Does this coat ......................  E to you? ......
5 I've got something important to say: please .....................  F about himself. ......
6 Their garden is wonderful. ......................  G about the future. ..... 
7 Megan lives from day to day. She doesn't .....................  H at those roses! ......
8 He's very boring: he always ......................  I to her? ......
9 Paula's an hour late. What's ......................  J to me. ......

2 Look again at Exercise 1, and write the preposition after each verb.

ask           for        believe         for        belong         for        happen         for        laugh          for
listen         for        look           for        talk           for        think           for        wait          for

You arrive at a place, or in a very big place (NOT to).

The train arrives at Oxford Station at 17.15. When did you arrive in Britain?

You get into/out of a car; you get on/off a bus, train, plane or ship.

I got out of the taxi at Piccadilly Circus. We got off the bus at Trafalgar Square.

Look after = ‘watch and take care of’; look for = ‘try to find’.

Could you look after the children this evening? I’m looking for my glasses.

You pay a person or a bill; you pay for something that you buy.

‘Have you paid Joe?’ ‘Yes, I paid his bill last week.’ Can you pay for the drinks?

3 Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

1 Don’t wait .......... me if I’m late.
2 What time did you arrive .......... the airport?
3 Don’t listen .......... him – he’s being stupid.
4 I’m looking .......... John’s house while he’s away.
5 We’re looking .......... a bigger house.
6 Did you ask .......... coffee?
7 We need to talk .......... money.
8 ‘Whose is that car?’ ‘It belongs .......... Carola.’
9 I forgot to pay .......... the tickets.
10 I don’t want to think .......... the future.
11 She got .......... her car and drove away.
12 I couldn’t get .......... the bus because it was full.
13 ‘What’s happened .......... your hand?’ ‘I cut it on some glass.’
14 The children still believe .......... Father Christmas.
15 When I got .......... the train I realised I’d forgotten my ticket.
16 Can you pay .......... the taxi driver?
17 When did you arrive .......... Ireland?
18 She got .......... the car and went into her house.
19 Why are you looking .......... me?
20 We had to get .......... the plane because there was a bomb.

For more about prepositions, see pages 273–286.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Some verbs have two parts. The second part is a small adverb (back, away, out etc). These verbs are called phrasal verbs.

The small adverbs are not the same as prepositions (but some of them look the same).

**SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS**

be in/out/away/back  get out  get up  go away  go/come back  go on (= "continue")  go in/out  hurry up  lie down  look out  look round  sit down  stand up  turn round  wake up

"Can I speak to Ann?"  "She’s not in."  **Come back** soon.  *This headache won’t* **go away**.

**Look out**!  **Come in and sit down.**  *It’s time to* **get up**.

1 Complete the sentences.

- The door opened and I went **in**.
- I usually ................ up at seven o’clock in the morning.
- Shall we ................ out this evening?
- I heard a noise behind me and turned .................
- I can’t go ................ Can we stop for a minute?
- I’m going home for a bit. I’ll be ................ after lunch.
- Hurry ................ We’re late.
- I’m not feeling well. I’m going to ................ down for an hour.
- ‘I love you.’  ‘................ away!’

2 Look at the pictures and complete the captions.

1 Wake ...................!
2 Please sit ....................
3 Come ......................!

**Some phrasal verbs** can have objects.

**SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS THAT CAN HAVE OBJECTS**

bring back  fill in (a form)  fill up  give back  give up (= "stop doing")  let in
look up (something in a dictionary etc)  pick up  put down  put on (clothes)
switch/turn on/off (lights, electrical appliances)  take away  take off (clothes)
throw away  turn up/down (radio, TV, heater)  wash up (cups, plates etc)

Please **fill in this form** and post it.  *I’m trying to give up smoking.*

I **put on my best clothes** for the interview.  *Shall I switch on the lights?*

*Could you* turn down the radio?  *Don’t throw away the newspaper.*

In phrasal verbs, **up** often means ‘completely’.

I’ll **cut up** the wood.  *Let’s clean up the house.*  **Fill up** your glass.  I tore up her letter.
Here are some sentences from books and conversations. Complete the phrasal verbs with words from the boxes.

back down down off on on up

1. It was a good feeling to put .............. dry clothes and eat a large cooked breakfast.
2. Switch .............. the kettle and sit on that chair while I make tea.
3. Put .............. your paper and listen to me.
4. Switch .............. the lights when you are not using them.
5. It's hot in here. Do you mind if I turn .............. the heater a bit?
6. If you find a café, could you bring .............. a couple of sandwiches?
7. I think I'll wash .............. the plates and cups now.

break fill give let look pick take

8. If you want to know what grammar is, .............. up the word in the dictionary.
9. You can't .............. up a newspaper these days without reading about terrible things.
10. She got ill and had to .............. up her job.
11. He .............. six goals in four games.
12. Why did you have to .............. in the form?
13. I .............. off my shoes whenever I can.
14. .............. up the firewood into little pieces, can you?

The small adverb can usually go before or after the object.

Switch on the kettle. OR Switch the kettle on. He let in six goals. OR He let six goals in.

When the object is a pronoun (him, her, it etc), the small adverb must go after it.

Switch it on. (NOT Switch on it.) He let them in. Take it away.

Change the sentences twice.

- She put on her coat. She put her coat on. She put it on.
- I washed up the plates. I washed the plates up. I washed them up.
1. Could you turn down the TV? ................................................
2. You can throw away the potatoes. ...........................................
3. Why don't you take off your glasses? ......................................
4. Please put down that knife. ....................................................
5. Shall I fill up your glass? .......................................................
6. I'll switch on the heating. .....................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
verbs with two objects  

Take the boss these letters.

SOME VERBS THAT CAN HAVE TWO OBJECTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bring</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>fetch</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>offer</th>
<th>pass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs can have two objects. Two different structures are possible:

1 VERB + PERSON + THING

I gave Peter lunch yesterday.
Could you take the boss these letters?
I've made tea for everybody.

2 VERB + THING + TO/FOR + PERSON

I gave lunch to Peter yesterday.
Could you take these letters to the boss?
I've made tea for everybody.

Most often, we use verb + person + thing, especially with personal pronouns (me, you etc).

Can I show you my photos? I wrote her a long letter, but she never answered.
I'm going to put John to bed and tell him a story. I've bought you a present.

I Change the structure.

Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison.
I'll make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea.

1 I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday.
2 I often read stories to Lucy.
3 Carol teaches small children maths.
4 Ruth showed the photo to the others.
5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers.
6 Could you buy a newspaper for me?
7 I found a hotel room for my parents.
8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.
9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.
10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.

2 Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing.

JOE: chocolates
SALLY: a book
FRED: flowers
ANNIE: a picture
LUKE: a sweater
MARY: a camera

Joe gave Sally chocolates.

1 Sally
2

Who gave who what?

3 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>lend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar')
1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and give me a four-year-old child.
   (Groucho Marx: 'Duck Soup')
2.......................... me liberty or.......................... me death. (Patrick Henry)
3 Money can't.......................... you love. (Traditional)

We don't use describe, explain, say, suggest or borrow in the verb + person + thing structure. (NOT Explain me this. NOT She said me 'hello'. NOT Can I borrow you a stamp?)
**have something done**  I have my hair cut every week.

If you *have something done*, you *don’t do it yourself*; somebody does it for you.

*I have my hair cut* every week.  *I have my car serviced* at the garage every 10,000 km.

Fred cuts his hair himself.  Eric has his hair cut at Franco’s.

1 Ann is very practical: she likes doing things herself. Bill is not so practical: he has things done by other people. Complete the sentences.

- Ann checks her oil herself.  Bill *has his oil checked* at the garage.
- 1 Ann checks her tyres herself.  Bill ........................................ at the garage.
- 2 Ann changes her oil herself.  Bill ........................................ at the garage.
- 3 Ann repairs her car herself.  Bill ........................................ at the garage.
- 4 Ann cleans her shoes herself.  Bill ........................................ on the way to work.
- 5 Ann does the gardening herself.  Bill ........................................ for him.
- 6 Ann types her letters herself.  Bill ........................................ by his secretary.

2 Make sentences with *should have* ...

- John’s car is running badly.  *(check)*  He *should have it checked*.
- 1 Mary’s watch isn’t going.  *(repair)* ........................................
- 2 Mike’s trousers are dirty.  *(clean)* ........................................
- 3 Steve and Helen’s kitchen window is broken.  *(repair)* ........................................
- 4 Pete’s hair is getting very long.  *(cut)* ........................................
- 5 Tom and Janet’s new car has done 10,000 km.  *(service)* ........................................
- 6 Emma’s eyes are giving her trouble.  *(check)* ........................................
- 7 Jasper’s roof lets water in.  *(repair)* ........................................
- 8 Daniel’s phone makes funny noises.  *(check)* ........................................
Imperatives are like infinitives without to. We use them, for example, to tell people what to do, to give them advice, or to give them friendly invitations.

Turn left at the next crossroads. Always hold the tennis racket like this. (NOT Hold always ...) Pay here. Try again. Come and have dinner with us. Have some more meat.

Negative imperatives begin do not, don't or never.

Please do not park here. Don't listen to him. Never tell her that she's wrong. (NOT Tell her never ...)

Which words go with which picture?

1. Which words go with which picture?
   - DRIVE SLOWLY ...
   - TURN LEFT ....
   - DON'T TOUCH ....
   - DO NOT PICK FLOWERS ....

2. How do you get from the station to Church Street?
   Complete the directions.

   go ✓ go take turn turn turn

   1. ............... out of the station, 1 ............... right, and 2 ............... down Station Road. 3 ............... left into Platt Street, then 4 ............... the first road on the right. After the car park, 5 ............... left, and Church Street is the second on the right.

3. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common imperative expressions
   Make sure you know the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
   Then complete the sentences.

   1–5: Be careful! Have a good journey/holiday Help! Hurry up! Look out! ✓ Sleep well
   6–11: Come in Don't forget ... Don't worry Follow me Have some (more) ... Make yourself at home Sit down Wait for me!

   Look out! ........................................... There's a child crossing the road in front of you!
   1 ...................................................... We're going to be late.
   2 ...................................................... There's ice on the steps.
   3 ...................................................... I can't swim!
   4 ...................................................... 'Thanks. I'll send you a postcard,'
   5 'I'm going to bed.' 'Goodnight.
   6 'I'll be home late tonight.' 'OK. ........................................... your keys.'
   7 ...................................................... I can't walk as fast as you!
   8 ...................................................... coffee.' 'No thanks. If I drink any more I won't be able to sleep.'
   9 'I'd like to speak to the manager, please.' 'Of course, sir. ........................................... please.'
   10 'Jill's gone into hospital.' ' ........................................... She'll be all right.'
   11 Hello. ........................................... in and ........................................... Please ...........................................
**let’s (suggestions)** *Let’s go.*

We can make **suggestions** with *let’s* (or *let us* – very formal) + **infinitive without to.**

I’m tired. *Let’s go home.*  
*Let’s eat out this evening.*  
*Let’s see what’s on TV.*

The negative is *Let’s not* … or *Don’t let’s* … (informal).

*Let’s not go camping this summer.*  
*Let’s not tell* John about Mary and Pete.  
*Don’t let’s invite* that fool Raymond.

1. Look at the pictures and complete the suggestions, using *Let’s (not) …*
   - *Let’s go for a walk.*
     1. *Let’s not* …
     2. … play …
     3. …………. cards.
     4. …………. go …………. ing.
     5. …
     6. …
     7. …………. watch …………. …
     8. …………. go …………. …

2. **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cities and countries**

Do you know the English names for cities and countries round the world? Complete the conversations using names in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Athens</th>
<th>Bangkok</th>
<th>Beijing</th>
<th>Copenhagen</th>
<th>Istanbul</th>
<th>Lisbon</th>
<th>Marrakesh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mexico City</td>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>Prague</td>
<td>Rio</td>
<td>Vienna</td>
<td>Warsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘I’d like to visit Portugal.’  
  *Let’s go to Lisbon.*
- ‘I’d like to visit Greece.’  
  ‘Let’s go to ………………………………………….’
- ‘It would be nice to see Denmark.’  
  ‘Let’s go ………………………………………….’
- ‘I want to see Austria.’  
  ‘Let’s ………………………………………….’
- ‘I’ve always wanted to see the Czech Republic.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘I’m interested in seeing Poland.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘What about a holiday in Russia?’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘Morocco sounds interesting.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘I’ve never been to Turkey.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘What about Thailand this year?’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘I’d love to see China.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘It’s time to see Mexico.’  
  ………………………………………….
- ‘Brazil this summer, OK?’  
  ………………………………………….
special structures with verbs: more practice

1 Phrasal verbs. Put in the missing words.
   ▶ I'm really tired. I'm going to ........... down for half an hour.
   1 Hurry .............! We're late.
   2 Don't turn ............., but somebody is following us.
   3 Can you ............. in this form?
   4 The radio's too loud. Can you ............. it down?
   5 It's dark. I'll switch ............. the lights.
   6 It's cold. ............. on your coat.
   7 Shall I wash ............. these plates?
   8 She borrowed my shoes and never brought them .............
   9 'I must talk to you.' 'No! ............. away!' 
   10 It's 6.30. Time to ............. up.

2 Phrasal verbs with objects. Change the sentences twice.
   ▶ He put on his glasses. ............. 
   He put his glasses on. ............. 
   He put them on.
   1 Could you wash up the cups? ............. 
   2 You can throw away those papers. ............. 
   3 Why don't you take your coat off? ............. 
   4 You need to fill in this form. ............. 
   5 Please bring my bicycle back. ............. 
   6 Let me fill up your glass. ............. 
   7 Please put down that gun. ............. 
   8 I'll switch the TV on. ............. 
   9 Can you cut up the onions? ............. 
   10 Pick your coat up. .............

3 Verbs with two objects. Change the structure.
   ▶ Send John this letter. ............. 
   Send this letter to John. ............. 
   Can you make some coffee for me? ............. 
   Can you make me some coffee? ............. 
   1 Alice sent her sister €500. ............. 
   2 Sarah bought ice creams for the children. ............. 
   3 Let's send Granny a postcard. ............. 
   4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. ............. 
   5 I gave some flowers to the secretary. ............. 
   6 Can you find John's address for me? ............. 
   7 I found a hotel for Aunt Patsy. ............. 
   8 Take these papers to Mrs Lewis. ............. 
   9 I've given George all the information. ............. 
   10 I want to buy a nice present for my sister. .............
4 Imperatives. Complete the sentences.

- Be careful with those glasses – they break easily.
1 __________________ in and close the door.
2 Don’t __________________ Everything will be all right.
3 Goodbye! __________________ a good journey.
4 Look __________________! There’s a car coming.
5 __________________ yourself at home.
6 __________________! I can’t turn the water off!
7 Goodnight. __________________ well.
8 ‘Where’s the Director’s office?’ ‘I’ll show you. __________________ me.’
9 ‘ __________________ a good holiday!’ ‘Thanks. I’m sure we will.’
10 Don’t __________________ to phone us when you arrive.

5 Grammar in a text. Read the text and put in imperatives from the box.
Use a dictionary if necessary.

Instructions for giving a cat a pill

1 __________________ up the cat. 2 __________________ it in your left arm like a baby.
3 __________________ your right forefinger and thumb at the sides of the cat’s mouth and push
   the mouth open, holding the pill in your left hand. Put the pill into the cat’s mouth.
4 __________________ the cat close its mouth and swallow the pill.
Pick up the pill from the floor and 5 __________________ the cat from behind the sofa. Pick up
the cat. Hold it in your left arm like a baby and 6 __________________ as before.
Fetch the cat from the bedroom and 7 __________________ the pill away. 8 __________________
another pill out of the packet. Hold the cat in your left arm, holding its back legs tightly with
your left hand. 9 __________________ the cat’s mouth and push the pill to the back of the mouth
with your right forefinger. Hold the mouth shut while you count to ten.
10 __________________ the pill out of the goldfish bowl. Get the cat down from the top of the
wardrobe. Wrap the cat in a towel. 11 __________________ on the floor, holding the cat firmly
between your knees. Put the pill in the end of a drinking straw. Force the cat’s mouth open
with a pencil and 12 __________________ down the drinking straw.
Check the label to make sure the pill is not harmful to humans. 13 __________________ a glass
of water to take the taste away. Put a bandage on your arm and 14 __________________ the
blood from the carpet with cold water and soap. 15 __________________ the fire brigade to get
the cat down from the tree across the road.
16 __________________ a new home for the cat. Get a dog.

6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the following
phrasal verbs: pick up, bring back, switch on, throw away, fill up. Write them here.

- Pick up the bag from the floor.
- Bring back the book from the library.
- Switch on the light in the hallway.
- Throw away the old newspaper.
- Fill up the gas tank at the station.
special structures with verbs: revision test

1 Which is/are correct? Circle the letter(s) of the correct sentence(s).
One, two or more answers may be correct for each question.

1 A He picked up the plate.
   B He picked the plate up.
   C He picked up it.
   D He picked it up.
2 I don’t repair my car myself: I …
   A repair it in the garage.
   B let it repair in the garage.
   C let repair it in the garage.
   D have repaired it in the garage.
   E have it repaired in the garage.
   F have it repair in the garage.
3 A I sent some flowers to my mother.
    B I sent some flowers my mother.
    C I sent to my mother some flowers.
    D I sent my mother some flowers.
4 A DO NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
    B NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
    C DON’T OPEN THIS WINDOW
    D OPEN NOT THIS WINDOW
5 A Let’s to play cards.
    B Let’s playing cards.
    C Let’s play cards.

Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

1 What’s happened …………………. Tom? He’s an hour late.
2 I usually arrive ………………. the station at 8.30.
3 ‘Have you lost something?’ ‘I’m looking ………………. my keys.’
4 ‘You look happy.’ ‘Yes, I’m thinking ………………. my holiday.’
5 I had to wait ………………. the bus for half an hour this morning.
6 Have you paid ………………. the tickets?
7 Could you look ………………. the children for half an hour?
8 Who’s paying ………………. the bill for lunch?
9 My parents don’t like me to ask ………………. money.
10 I got ………………. the bus and sat down.
11 Listen ………………. this – it’s really interesting.
12 Anna still believes ………………. Father Christmas.
13 Do you belong ………………. a political party?
14 I’ll sing, but please don’t laugh ………………. me.
15 I need to talk ………………. the secretary.
16 Look ……………….! There’s your brother.
17 I send money ………………. my parents every week.
18 You can pay ………………. the driver when you get ………………. the bus.
19 They talked ………………. sport all evening – it was very boring.
20 My girlfriend comes ………………. Ireland.
SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the

grammar summary

A/An shows that we are talking about one person or thing. We often use a/an:

- in descriptions
  She's an interesting person. He's got a loud voice.
- when we say what something is, or what somebody's job is.
  This is a return ticket. I'm an engineer.

The usually means 'You know which one(s) I'm talking about'.
  Can I use the phone? (The hearer knows that this means 'your phone')

Nouns used without articles often have a special meaning.
  I dislike cats. (This means 'all cats')

Most Western European languages have articles. So if you speak (for example) French, German, Spanish or Greek, you will not have too many problems with a/an and the: they are used mostly in the same way as your articles. There are a few differences: see pages 156–161. If you speak a non-Western-European language (for example Russian, Polish, Arabic, Chinese, Japanese), you may find articles more difficult. Study all of this Section, especially pages 154–155.

There is a mountain far away.
And on the mountain stands a tree.
And on the tree there is a branch.
And on the branch there is a nest.
And in the nest there is an egg.
And in the egg there is a bird.
One day the bird will fly.
One day we will be free.

( old folk song)

An Englishman, an Irishman, a Scotsman and a Welshman went into a pub. The Englishman . . .

There's some bacon in the fridge if you're hungry.

We went to the Czech Republic on holiday last year.

My wife's from California.

I'm afraid Ann's in hospital again.

We've got offices in Australia, Canada and the United States.

I'll meet you at the Palace Hotel in Clark Street at 8.00.

We both studied at Birmingham University.

He's a doctor and she's an engineer.

He's got a very nice smile.

People are strange.

You have beautiful eyes.
a/an; pronunciation of the

We use *a* before a **consonant sound** (for example, the normal sound of *b, c, d, f, g, h*).

- *a book*  
- *a coat*  
- *a house*  
- *a letter*  
- *a new idea*

We use *an* before a **vowel sound** (for example, the normal sound of *a, e, i, o, u*).

- *an address*  
- *an egg*  
- *an idea*  
- *an old house*

1. **Put in a or an.**
   
   - *a* ticket  
   - *an* afternoon  
   - 1 bicycle  
   - 2 airport  
   - 3 shop  
   - 4 holiday  
   - 5 exercise  
   - 6 day  
   - 7 American  
   - 8 student

2. **Put in adjectives.**
   
   - *a* car *(expensive)*  
   - *an* address *(new)*  
   - 1 friend *(old)*  
   - 2 apple *(big)*  
   - 3 child *(unhappy)*  
   - 4 train *(early)*  
   - 5 uncle *(rich)*  
   - 6 job *(easy)*  
   - 7 exercise *(hard)*  
   - 8 language *(European)*  
   - 9 book *(small)*

3. **Pronounce:**

   the beginning  
   the woman  
   the child  
   the time  
   the place  
   the house  
   the horse  
   the end  
   the old man  
   the office  
   the address  
   the American  
   the hour  
   the one  
   the university  
   the European  
   the uniform

4. **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: seven useful things**

   Complete the sentences with words from the box. Use *a* or *an.*

   ![Alarm clock, calculator, torch, envelope, hammer, knife, tin-opener]

   - You use *a tin-opener* to open tins.
   - You can use *a tin-opener* when you send a letter.
   - *A tin-opener* is useful for mathematics.
   - You can see at night with *a torch*.
   - You can put nails into wood with *a hammer*.
   - *A hammer* is useful for cutting things.
   - *A knife* wakes you up in the morning.
Countable nouns are words like car, book, chair. They are the names of things that you can count: you can say 'one car', 'two books', 'three chairs'. They can be singular (a cat, one book) or plural (two chairs, lots of books).

Uncountable nouns are words like smoke, rice, water, petrol. These are things that you can't count: you can say 'smoke' but not 'one smoke' or 'two rices' or 'three waters'. Uncountable nouns are only singular. (For more information, see page 198.)

1. Singular countable, plural countable or uncountable? Write 'SC' (singular countable), 'PC' (plural countable) or 'U' (uncountable) against the words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>SC</th>
<th>PC</th>
<th>U</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meat</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountains</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photos</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use a/an only before singular countable nouns. (A/an is a bit like one: you can't say one houses or one air.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR COUNTABLE</th>
<th>PLURAL COUNTABLE</th>
<th>UNCOUNTABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a house</td>
<td>houses (NOT a houses)</td>
<td>air (NOT an-air)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a car</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>petrol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Put in a/an or nothing (-).

- Jake's father makes .......... films.
- I need .......... new bicycle.
- 1 I never drink .......... milk.
- 2 Jane is .......... old friend.
- 3 Most .......... cars use .......... petrol.
- 4 I often listen to .......... music.

- The police are looking for him with .......... dogs.
- My room has got .......... really big window.
- That child wants .......... new shoes.
- She was wearing .......... orange skirt.
- They live in .......... very nice house.
- I never have .......... sugar in .......... coffee.

We often use an uncountable noun (without a/an) to say what something is made of.

The walls in the house were all made of glass. This sweater is made of silk.

3. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials. Put in words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- Shoes are made of .......... leather or plastic.
- 1 Socks are made of .......... leather or plastic.
- 2 Cars are made of .......... leather or plastic.
- 3 Houses are made of .......... leather or plastic.
- 4 Shirts are made of .......... leather or plastic.
- 5 Tables are made of .......... leather or plastic.

We use one instead of a/an when the exact number is important. Compare:

Can I have a cheese sandwich? (NOT Can I have one cheese sandwich?)
No, I asked for one sandwich, not two! I only want one sandwich.

4. Put in a/an or one.

- She's got .......... nice coat.
- She's only got .......... coat.
- 1 Can I have ..... boiled egg?
- 2 No, I said .......... egg, not two.
- 3 I've got .......... problem. Can you help?
- 4 She's only got .......... child.
- 5 John's got .......... beautiful sister.
- 6 .......... girlfriend is enough.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
the and a/an  Let’s see a film. I didn’t like the film.

We use the, not a/an, to talk about somebody or something, when the speaker and hearer both know about this person or thing; when they both know which one(s). In other cases we use a/an.

THE
Could you close the door?
(You know which door.)
I’m going to the post office.
(You know which one – the one near here.)
Can I use the phone? (= ‘your phone’)
I didn’t like the film. (= ‘the one that we saw’)
He looked at the moon. (There’s only one.)
She’s in the front room.
(You know which room – I’m telling you.)
She came on the 8.15 train.
(You know which train – I’m telling you.)
How much is the red coat?
(You know which coat – I’m telling you.)

A/AN
Could you open a window?
(I don’t mind which window.)
Is there a post office near here?
Have you got a phone?
Let’s go and see a film.
He looked at a tree.
I need a room for tonight.
She arrived in an old taxi.
I’ve just bought a new car.

1 Put in a/an or the.
► I walked up to her house, rang the bell and opened the door.
► He lives in a small village.
1 Look – that’s John walking across the street.
2 Can I use the bathroom?
3 I need an English-French dictionary – have you got one?
4 I know a good restaurant – shall I reserve the table for tonight?

5 Where’s the teacher? She’s very late.
6 I want a long holiday in the sun.
7 Who’s the man in your office?
8 I’m leaving on the 4.30 bus.
9 ‘Which is your coat?’ ‘The green one.’
10 Claire’s looking for a new job.
11 Why are you looking at the sky?
12 I’ll meet you at 4.30 at the bus stop outside the police station.

We use the before only; first, second etc; and superlatives like oldest, most (see page 223).

Shé’s the only woman for me. I live on the second floor.
It’s the oldest restaurant in Glasgow. He bought the most expensive one.

2 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an or the.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>Sarah’s the</th>
<th>A cup of coffee?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I’ve got the</td>
<td>B first train tomorrow morning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>John’s the</td>
<td>C hottest day of the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What time is</td>
<td>D most intelligent person in our family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Yesterday was</td>
<td>E only boy in the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Would you like</td>
<td>F present for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

154 ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE
We often use *a/an* to talk about a person or thing **for the first time**; and *the* when we talk about the person or thing **again**.

*A man walked up to a policeman. The man took out a map and asked the policeman ...*

### 3 Put in *a/an* or *the*.

**A BAG IN A BAG**

This is a true story. Once I went into a big sports shop because I wanted sports bag. An assistant came up to me, and I told him what I wanted. An assistant brought me three different bags. I chose the smallest one and paid for it. An assistant put the bag in a large plastic bag. I told him one bag was enough, and asked him to take the bag out of another bag. He did so, but he looked very unhappy as I walked out of the shop.

**REMEMBER:** we don’t use *a/an* with plurals. We can use *the* with plurals.

*She’s wearing black shoes. (NOT ... a black shoes.) She bought the shoes last week.*

### 4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: animals, birds and other creatures

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the groups of pictures and complete the sentences. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ant</th>
<th>camel</th>
<th>eagle</th>
<th>frog</th>
<th>monkey</th>
<th>mouse (plural mice)</th>
<th>parrot</th>
<th>pigeon</th>
<th>snake</th>
<th>spider</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**GROUP A**

- This is a **camel**. It's **the** biggest animal in **the** group.
- This is **mouse**. It's **the** smallest animal in **the** group.
- This is **parrot**. It's **the** most intelligent **animals**. .............

**GROUP B**

- This is **ant**. It's **the** fastest bird in **the** group.
- This is **snake**. It's **the** only blue and yellow **birds** in **the** group.
- This is **spider**. It's **the** smallest **decrypts**. .............

**GROUP C**

- This is **ant**. It's **the** only creature with eight legs in **the** group.
- This is **ant**. It's **the** creature with six legs in **the** group.
- This is **ant**. It's **the** with no legs .............
- This is **ant**. It's **the** green creature .............

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
a/an  She’s a doctor.

We use *a/an* when we say *what* something is, or *what job* somebody does.

A pony is a small horse.  Canada is a big country.  My sister is an electrician.

REMEMBER: we don’t use *a/an* with plurals.

Ponies are small horses. (NOT ... a small horses.)

1 Say what these people’s jobs are. Use the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>builder</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>dentist</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>driver</th>
<th>hairdresser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>musician</td>
<td>photographer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She’s a doctor.
- He’s a __________________________.
- He’s __________________________.
- She’s __________________________.
- He __________________________.
- She __________________________.
- He __________________________.
- She __________________________.
- He __________________________.

2 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1 …………………………….. is a good film.
2 …………………………….. is a bad film.
3 …………………………….. is a terrible singer.
4 …………………………….. is an interesting book.
5 …………………………….. is a great man/woman.
6 …………………………….. are beautiful animals.
7 …………………………….. is a/an …………………………….. .

3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: kinds of things

Look up these words in a dictionary if necessary:

*building, (musical) instrument, vehicle, tool, container.*

Now change these to true singular sentences.

- Cars are buildings.  *A car is a vehicle.*
- Houses are instruments.  *A house is a building.*
- Bags are vehicles.  ……………………………..
- Hammers are containers.  ……………………………..
- Pianos are buildings.  ……………………………..
- Buses are tools.  ……………………………..
- Screwdrivers are containers.  ……………………………..
- Guitars are tools.  ……………………………..
- Boxes are instruments.  ……………………………..
- Hotels are vehicles.  ……………………………..

156 ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE
We often use *a/an* in descriptions.

*She's got a quiet voice.* (NOT ... *the quiet voice.*)  *He's got a friendly face.*

REMEMBER: we don't use *a/an* with plurals or uncountable nouns.

*She's got blue eyes.* (NOT ... *a blue eyes.*)  *He's got long hair.* (NOT ... *a long hair.*)

1. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the words in the box, and add *a/an* if necessary.

- big beard  big ears  big nose  dark hair  long neck  loud voice  nice smile

- She's got a **nice smile**.
- He's got a **big nose**.

1. She's got a **nice smile**.
2. He's got a **big nose**.
3. She's got a **nice smile**.
4. He's got a **big nose**.
5. She's got a **nice smile**.

2. Here are two descriptions of the same person. Put in *a* or nothing (-).

   A 'My name's Sandra. I'm tall and slim. I've got blue eyes, small nose, big mouth and dark hair. I think I've got nice smile. I wear glasses.'

   B 'Sandra's got a very friendly face with lovely smile. She's got long dark hair and blue eyes. She's got long legs, and she's very pretty. She's wearing blue dress today. She's got nice voice.'

3. Write a short description (two or three sentences) of a friend of yours. Use some words from Exercises 1 and 2.

   My Friend

   My friend is Annie Lydford. Annie's got short hair and loves horses. Annie has blue eyes and a round head with a short haircut down to her forehead. Annie's always happy and she makes a really good friend.
We do not normally use the to talk about people or things in general. The does not mean ‘all’. We use the to talk about particular people or things (see page 154).

GENERAL

People are funny.
I like music.
Sugar is fattening.
She’s interested in dogs and horses.

PARTICULAR

The people in that house are funny.
The music’s too loud – can you turn it down?
Could you pass the sugar?
‘Why are the dogs barking?’ ‘There’s somebody outside.’

1 Make some sentences from the words in the boxes.

Artists  Builders  Cats
Dogs  Horses
Photographers  Pianists
Shop assistants
Students  Teachers

- Dogs don’t like cats.
- Teachers teach things.
1 .................................................................
2 .................................................................
3 .................................................................
4 .................................................................
5 .................................................................
6 .................................................................
7 .................................................................
8 .................................................................

cats  dogs  grass
houses  meat
music  photos
pictures  things

2 Circle the correct forms.

- The old people / Old people often forget the things / things.
- I like talking to the old ladies / old ladies who live in that house.
1 The books / Books are expensive in my country.
2 ‘Where shall I put the books / books?’ ‘On the floor.’
3 Japanese is a difficult language for the English people / English people.
4 The flowers / Flowers are beautiful. Thank you very much!
5 The life / Life is sometimes hard.
6 I don’t understand the words / words of that song.
7 The food / Food in this restaurant is very expensive.
8 The water / Water turns into the ice / ice at 0°C.
9 Why are the windows / windows open in this room?

3 Here are some common sayings about men and women (not all true!). Complete the sentences with words from the box, and give your opinion.

drivers  lost ✓  money  things  things  think  think  understand  understand

- Men never ask the way when they’re lost. TRUE / NOT TRUE
1 Men are better ...................................... than women. TRUE / NOT TRUE
2 Women are more careful with ...................................... than men. TRUE / NOT TRUE
3 Women ...................................... men. Men don’t ...................................... women. TRUE / NOT TRUE
4 Women ...................................... that men will change, but they don’t. TRUE / NOT TRUE
5 Men don’t ...................................... that women will change, but they do. TRUE / NOT TRUE
6 Men pay too much for ...................................... that they want. Women buy ...................................... that they don’t want because they’re cheap. TRUE / NOT TRUE
Read the two texts and then write one yourself.

I love snow.
I like poetry, art and walking.
I don't like football, big dictionaries or hot weather.
I hate telephones, banks, vegetable soup, pop music and small dogs.

I hate writing letters.
I don’t like swimming or opera.
I like children, apples, sport, television and cheese.
I love computers, history, dancing, cats, nice clothes and shopping.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: interests

Choose some words from the box to complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary. Don’t use the!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>art</th>
<th>chess</th>
<th>dancing</th>
<th>football</th>
<th>history</th>
<th>music</th>
<th>opera</th>
<th>photography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poetry</td>
<td>politics (singular)</td>
<td>skating</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I like ........................................
2. I don't like ......................................
3. I like ........................................ better than ........................................
4. I love ........................................, but I hate ........................................
5. I enjoy ........................................
6. I think ........................................ is interesting, but ........................................ is boring.
7. ........................................ is difficult.
8. I'm good at ........................................, but I'm not so good at ........................................
9. I prefer ........................................ to ........................................
10. I'm not interested in ........................................
11. Most people are interested in ........................................
12. Not many people are interested in ........................................
names Mary, Africa, the USA

NAMES WITHOUT THE: PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, MOST PLACES

- people: the
  Mary works for Dr Andrews. (NOT The Mary ... Dr Andrews.)
  General Parker  Prince Charles  Aunt Elizabeth

- languages: the
  Sorry, I don't speak Russian. (NOT ... the Russian.)

- most place-names (for example continents, countries, states, lakes, mountains, towns, streets): the
  Barry's from Texas. (NOT ... the Texas.)
  Africa  Cuba  Queensland  Dublin  Lake Geneva  Mount Everest
  Wall Street  Piccadilly Circus  Hyde Park  Times Square

1 Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lake Superior</th>
<th>London</th>
<th>Oxford Street</th>
<th>Peru</th>
<th>Queensland</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Uncle Eric</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

> Queensland is in Australia.
1 They speak ......................... in .........................
2 Here's a postcard from ......................... He's been swimming in .........................
3 ......................... is in the centre of ..........................

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>France</th>
<th>Kilimanjaro</th>
<th>Napoleon</th>
<th>Switzerland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4 ......................... was a very small man.
5 ......................... is the highest mountain in ..........................
6 ......................... is next to .............................

NAMES WITH THE: SOME PLACES

- deserts, rivers, seas and oceans (but not lakes!): the
  the Sahara Desert  the Thames  the Rhine  the Mediterranean  the Atlantic

- plural names: the
  the Netherlands  the United States / the USA  the Alps

- expressions with Republic/Kingdom/etc: the
  the Czech Republic  the United Kingdom

- large areas of the world: the
  the West  the Middle East  the Far East

2 Circle the correct answers.

> I once went on a boat on the Rhine / Lake Victoria.
> We're going to drive right across Europe / Sahara Desert.
1 Ann's just come back from the Himalayas / Mount Everest.
2 My sister works in Netherlands / Denmark.
3 I'd like to learn Japanese / the Japanese.
4 My parents are on holiday in the South Africa / People's Republic of China.
5 Here's a photo of Max in USA / Trafalgar Square.
6 Alan's living in a small town near the Barcelona / Mediterranean.
7 We have friends in Ireland / Republic of Ireland.
8 Wales is the smallest country in the Great Britain / United Kingdom.
9 There are a lot of Spanish-speaking people in the USA / America.
BUILDINGS WITH THE
- most names of buildings: the
  the Hilton Hotel  the Old Mill Restaurant
  the Globe Theatre  the British Museum
  the Eiffel Tower  the Taj Mahal
  the Great Pyramid

EXCEPTIONS
- place-name + Airport, Station, Cathedral, University, Palace, Castle, School: the
  Oxford Airport  Glasgow Central Station
  Exeter Cathedral  Cambridge University
  Buckingham Palace  Didcot Junior School
- name + possessive 's: the
  St Paul's Cathedral  McDonald's

3 Put the before five of these buildings, and nothing (−) before three.
  1…………. Taj Mahal  2…………. Halloran's Restaurant  3…………. Old Steak House
  4…………. National Gallery of Modern Art  5…………. Central Museum
  6…………. Birmingham Airport  7…………. Sheraton Hotel  8…………. New Theatre
  9…………. Jenner's Hotel  10…………. Canterbury Cathedral

4 Put in the or nothing (−).
  1…………. American English  2…………. Asia  3…………. Blue Train Restaurant
  4…………. Dominican Republic  5…………. Florida  6…………. Gobi Desert
  7…………. Lake Michigan  8…………. Metropolitan Museum  9…………. Mississippi (River)
  10…………. Mount Kenya  11…………. New York  12…………. North Sea  13…………. Paris
  14…………. Regent Street  15…………. Rocky Mountains  16…………. Trafalgar Square
  17…………. Egypt  18…………. White House  19…………. Whitehall Theatre  20…………. Far East

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don't/) and full forms (for example /am, do not/) are possible. Normally both are correct.
special cases *in bed; after lunch; a hundred; ...*

**NO ARTICLE (THE): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (1)**

- **meals:** the
to have breakfast/lunch/dinner; before/at/after/for breakfast etc
- **days, dates, public holidays, months and years:** the
  on Tuesday(s); on September 17th; at Christmas; in July; in 2006
- **this/next/last + a day or longer period of time:** the
  this Monday; next Friday; last week; next month; this summer; last year

1. Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>Easter</th>
<th>lunch</th>
<th>next</th>
<th>Saturdays</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>winter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I usually just have toast and coffee for breakfast.
   1. Let's have ................................ together on ................................
   2. We usually go to Scotland at ................................
   3. I'm working at home ................................ week.
   4. It got very cold last ................................
   5. I play tennis with Rob on ................................

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>August 23rd</th>
<th>Christmas</th>
<th>last</th>
<th>September</th>
<th>1616</th>
<th>this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

6. My holiday is in ................................ ...................... year.
7. Lindsay's birthday is on ..................................
8. Shakespeare died in ..................................
9. The whole family always comes together at ..................................
10. We went to California ................................ summer.

**NO ARTICLE (THE): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (2)**

- **places and activities:** the
to/at/from school/university/college; to/in/out of church/prison/hospital/bed; at home; to/at/from work; on holiday
- **transport:** expressions with *by: the*
  by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/underground/boat and on foot

2. Complete the sentences with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bed</th>
<th>car</th>
<th>church</th>
<th>foot</th>
<th>home</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>hospital</th>
<th>prison</th>
<th>school</th>
<th>university</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I usually stay in ................................ late at the weekend.
2. Jake's going to ................................ to study business.
3. Most of the people in our village go to ................................ on Sundays.
4. I was in ................................ for a week when I broke my leg.
5. If I go to ................................ by ................................ it takes half an hour.
6. Uncle George comes out of ................................ in June.
7. I'm not going there on ................................ – it's raining.
8. 'Is Kirsten at ................................?' 'No, sorry, she's out.'
9. 'Are you working in August?' 'No, I'm on .................................'
10. We had to learn Latin at .................................
A/AN (BEFORE SINGULAR COUNTABLE NOUNS)

- **after with, without and as**
  
  I did the translation with a dictionary. (NOT ... with dictionary.)
  You can't get in without a ticket. (NOT ... without-ticket.)
  She's working as a bus-driver.

- **after haven't/hasn't got**
  
  We haven't got a fax. (NOT We haven't got fax.)

- **in exclamations with What ...!**
  
  What a crazy idea!

- **before hundred/thousand/million**
  
  a hundred days  a thousand people  a million dollars

3 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>What</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I didn't listen to the programme; I haven't got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I want a house with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I went to sleep on the sofa and used my coat as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I've told you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>There are about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>You can't work there without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Phil's working as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>What</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>It's hard to live without</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH THE

the same; the country/sea/mountains; on the right/left; at the top/bottom/side/front/back; in the middle; at/to the cinema/theatre; on the radio (BUT on TV)

Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is same colour ...)  We live in the country.
I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea.  Our house is the second on the right.
Write your name at the top of the page.  I don't often go to the cinema.

4 Make sentences.

- Anne's house / the first / left   ..Anne's house is the first on the left.

  1 Patrick and I work / same office  
  2 We / going / theatre / tonight  
  3 My room / top / house  
  4 Would you like / live / country?  
  5 We usually go / mountains / Christmas  
  6 Joe always sits / back / class  
  7 Suzie's office / right  
  8 I would like / live near / sea  
  9 Why are you driving / middle / road?  
  10 Please sign your name / bottom / this paper

POSSESSIVES

We don't use a/an or the with my, your etc (see page 188).

your address (NOT the-your-address)  my friend / a friend of mine (NOT a my friend)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example 'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
articles: more practice

1 Mixed article uses. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).
  1 My sister lives in ........... big flat.
  2 ‘Where’s ........... phone?’ ‘In ........... kitchen.’
  3 Andy’s brother is ........... architect.
  4 I’m taking ........... 10.15 train.
  5 Most people like ........... animals.
  6 Do you play ........... tennis?
  7 ........... music’s too loud – please turn it down.
  8 All our furniture is made of ........... wood.
  9 Carola has got ........... beautiful brown eyes.
 10 I don’t want to be ........... student for the next five years.
  11 I’m not interested in ........... politics.
  12 Can I switch on ........... lights?
  13 ........... vegetarians don’t eat ........... meat.
  14 ........... petrol is very expensive these days.
  15 We haven’t seen ........... sun for a week.
  16 Where did you put ........... butter?
  17 I often listen to ........... music when I’m driving.
  18 ........... life is sometimes hard.
  19 I don’t like ........... fish.
  20 Perhaps ........... people are more interesting than ........... grammar.

2 Names and special article uses. Correct (✓) or not (✗)?
  1 The Canada is a big country. .......
  2 Have you ever seen Eiffel Tower? .......
  3 Andy works at Apollo Theatre. .......
  4 The River Rhone runs into the Mediterranean Sea. .......
  5 Hello. I’m at the Oxford Station. .......
  6 Would you like to work as teacher? .......
  7 He was in bed at 10.00. .......
  8 We live in a small town in south. .......
  9 Please write your address at the top of the page. .......
 10 I don’t eat much for the lunch. .......

3 Countable or uncountable? How many countable and uncountable nouns can you find in these advertisements?

COUNTABLE: ..........................................................................................................

UNCOUNTABLE: .......................................................................................................

/!

A DIAMOND IS for ever

Beautiful hair today!

Learn to take better photos!

For information, call 13462

We have the best coffee

For a great snow holiday at a great price, call us now!

YOU’LL FIND ALL
THE MUSIC YOU LOVE AT OUR LONDON SHOP.

FORMATTING DETAILS

164 ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE
**Grammar in a text.** Put in *a, an, the* or nothing (−).

**A TRUE STORY**

In 1969, in Portland, Oregon, a man went to rob a bank. He didn’t want six people in the bank to know what was happening, so he walked up to one of the cashiers, wrote on a piece of paper, ‘This is robbery and I’ve got a gun,’ and showed the cashier. Then he wrote, ‘Take all the money out of your drawer and put it in a paper bag!’ The cashier read the message, wrote at the bottom of the paper, ‘I haven’t got a paper bag’ and gave the paper back to the robber. The robber ran out of the bank.

**Grammar and vocabulary: materials**

Learn some or all of the words in the box. Use a dictionary. Then write some sentences to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>brick</th>
<th>cotton</th>
<th>china</th>
<th>diamond</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>gold</th>
<th>leather</th>
<th>metal</th>
<th>paper</th>
<th>plastic</th>
<th>rubber</th>
<th>silk</th>
<th>silver</th>
<th>stone</th>
<th>synthetic fibre</th>
<th>wood</th>
<th>wool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather….)

**Internet exercise.** Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Britain, Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly.

1. a river
2. a lake
3. a mountain
4. a part of the country
5. a hotel
6. a station
7. an airport
8. a tourist attraction
9. a cathedral
10. a museum
## Articles: Revision Test

### 1. Put in a or an.
1. address
2. student
3. English student
4. university student
5. bus
6. old woman
7. house
8. hour's lesson
9. one-pound coin
10. uncle

### 2. Countable or uncountable? Put in a or nothing (-).
1. I don't like beer.
2. Peter is very good friend.
3. Does your car use petrol or diesel?
4. Do you listen to music while you're studying?
5. I prefer dogs to cats.
6. My flat has got very small kitchen.
7. I need new jeans.
8. Nadia was wearing blue dress.
10. I never have milk in tea.
11. Rob has got very long hair.
12. John's very interested in science.
13. I liked everything in the film except music.
14. Why did you put shoe in fridge?
15. These socks are made of silk.
16. I watch football, but I don't play it.
17. I'd like to be student again.
18. My mother thinks animals are nicer than people.
19. Children don't usually like vegetables.
20. Andy lives in houseboat.

### 3. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).
1. I live in the France.
   - Correct
2. I was born in London.
   - Correct
3. Can I speak to the Professor Anderson?
4. Greek is a difficult language.
5. We've just been to Czech Republic.
6. The Soviet Union was founded in 1922.
7. She's from Texas.
8. Carol has just spent two months in hospital.
9. I'll see you the next Tuesday.
10. You can't go there without passport.
11. Joe's studying to be doctor.
12. In Britain people drive on the left.

### 4. Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.
- I live in the France.
- I was born in London.
- Can I speak to the Professor Anderson?
- Greek is a difficult language.
- We've just been to Czech Republic.
- The Soviet Union was founded in 1922.
- She's from Texas.
- Carol has just spent two months in hospital.
- I'll see you the next Tuesday.
- You can't go there without passport.
- Joe's studying to be doctor.
- In Britain people drive on the left.

---

166 ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before adjectives. Determiners help to show which or how many people/things we are talking about.

**Grammar Summary**

- *this, that, these, those*  
- *some, any, no, enough*  
- *all, each, every, both, either, neither*  
- *much, many, a little, a few*  
- *more, most*  
- *a lot, lots*  
- *(a/an, the)*  
- *(my, your, etc)*

Most determiners are explained and practised in this section. *A/An* and *the* have a separate section on pages 151–166. *My, your* etc are explained together with pronouns on pages 188–189.

*Somebody, anything, nowhere* etc are included here. These are not determiners, but it is more convenient to deal with them in this section.
We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are *here*, *near* to us. We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are *there*, *not near*.

1. **Put in *this* or *these*.**
   - Do you like *this* dress?
   - Do you like *these* shoes?
   - *That* cat sleeps all day.
   - *Those* tomatoes are not very good.
   - *These* letters are for you.
   - *This* I don't understand *that* word.

2. **Put in *that* or *those*.**
   - Ann lives in *that* house over there.
   - Who are *those* people?
   - Could you pass me *those* papers?
   - I don't think *that* train is ours.
   - *Those* glasses look very nice.
   - Why is she running after *that* man?

3. **Grammar and Vocabulary: cutlery and crockery**
   Use the words in the box to make ten or more sentences about the colours of the things in the picture. Use a dictionary if necessary.

   cup  plate  saucer  knife  fork  spoon  glass  napkin  jug  bowl

   *This knife is black. Those knives are silver*
We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are **happening now** or **starting now**.
We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are **finished**.

I like *this* music. Listen to *these* sentences.
*That* lesson was boring. *Did* you answer *those* letters yesterday?

4. **Circle the correct answer.**

   - *Do / Did* you like that film?
   1. *I'm enjoying / I enjoyed* these lessons.
   2. *This game was / will be* hard.
   3. *These / Those* potatoes weren't very nice.
   4. *That* holiday *is / was* great!
   5. *Do* you remember *this / that* funny hotel in France?
   6. *May* I have *this / that* dance with you?
   7. *I'm going to enjoy / I enjoyed* that meal.
   8. *That* political speech *is / was* really stupid.
   9. *Did* you understand *this / that* explanation?
   10. *Listen to this / that* letter from Karen.

We can use *this, that, these and those* **without nouns**.

*I don't like* *this*. *Look at these*. *Who said that?* *Those are pretty.*

We can use *this* to **introduce people**, and to introduce ourselves on the telephone.

*This is my friend Carla.* *This is Alex. Can I speak to Fred?*

5. **Put in *this, that, these or those*.**

   - *I don't like living in* *this* country.
   - *Could you bring* *this* box to me, please?
   - *Why did you say* *this*?
   - *Is Peter – is Mary at home?*
   - *Who are* *these* people over there?
   - *Listen – you'll like* *those* story.
   - *Wait – I can't walk fast in* *those* shoes.
   - *Is my sister Helen.* ‘How do you do?’
   - *It was a wonderful meal – thanks.*
   - *I'm not enjoying* *these* conversation.
   - *Do you remember* *these* people that we met in Greece?
   - *Let's leave* *this* party.
   - *The meal was nice, but I didn't like* *that* wine much.
   - *Could you take* *this* letters to the post office?
   - *I thought Geoff looked silly in* *those* shorts.
   - *Is your mother coming out of the police station?*
   - *Where are you? I can't see very well with* *these* glasses.
   - *We're going to win* *this* match. You wait and see.
   - *What are* *those* birds on the roof?
   - *I can't eat* *that* apple – it's too hard.
   - *I'll never forget* *that* ten days with Barbara.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
some and any  I need some sugar. Have you got any?

He's got some problems.  She hasn't got any problems.

We use some and any, not a/an, with uncountable and plural nouns.
They mean 'a limited number or quantity'.
We use some in affirmative (✓) sentences.
We use any in negative (✗) sentences, and in most questions.
I'd like some water.  Here are some flowers for you.
I haven't got any money.  There aren't any trains today.
Have you got any sugar?  Do you speak any other languages?

1 Circle the correct answers.
1 They aren't some / any letters for you.
2 Have you got some / any brothers or sisters?
3 We need some / any more milk.
4 She's got some / any interesting friends.
5 Are there some / any restaurants near here?
6 I'm having some / any problems with my car.
7 I didn't have some / any breakfast today.
8 He hasn't done some / any work for ten years.
9 Do you know some / any Americans?

2 Complete the sentences with any and words from the box.

English newspapers  games  foreign languages  help ✓  more to drink  sleep

Harriet likes to do things by herself: she doesn't want any help.
1 No, I'm not thirsty – I don't want ..........................................
2 Joe doesn't speak .............................................................
3 Our team hasn't won ................................................... this year.
4 I didn't get .................................................... last night.
5 I couldn't find .................................................. at the shop.

We use some in questions which expect the answer 'Yes' – for example offers or requests.
Would you like some more coffee?  Could I have some bread?

3 Write sentences with some.
1 (Ask for coffee) Could I have ..................................................
2 (Offer bread) Would you like ....................................................
3 (Offer rice) ...........................................................................
4 (Ask for tomatoes) .................................................................
5 (Offer more potatoes) .............................................................
6 (Ask for more milk) .................................................................

170 DETERMINERS
We use *any* with words like *never, without or hardly* (=‘almost not’), which have *negative* meanings.

They *never* give me *any* help. I got there *without any* difficulty. You made hardly *any* mistakes.

4 Put the beginnings and ends together.

| 0  | I finished the work without | A | any rain. ....... |
| 1  | I was tired, so I went to bed without | B | some rain, at last. ...... |
| 2  | I'm going to do | C | any work in the garden. ...... |
| 3  | Yesterday we had | D | some work in the house. ...... |
| 4  | In July we hardly had | E | any supper. ...... |
| 5  | She never does | F | some supper. ...... |
| 6  | You're hungry, I'll make you | G | any help. .......

We can use *some* and *any* without nouns if the meaning is clear.

‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘Sorry, I haven’t got *any.*’

‘I need some more envelopes.’ ‘I’ll bring you some.’

5 Complete the answers with words from the box and put in *some* or *any*.

- **buy**
- **good**
- **got ✓**
- **more ✓**
- **put**
- **tomorrow**
- **want**
- **you**

- ‘How many children has he got?’ ‘He hasn’t got *any.*’
- ‘This is wonderful soup.’ ‘Have *some more.*’
- 1 ‘How much did the flowers cost?’ ‘I didn’t *get any.*’
- 2 ‘We need light bulbs.’ ‘I’ll get *some.*’
- 3 ‘Where’s the sugar?’ ‘There’s in front of *some.*’
- 4 ‘Why didn’t you buy any cheese?’ ‘Because I didn’t *do any.*’
- 5 ‘Shall we go to the cinema?’ ‘There aren’t *any.*’
- 6 ‘The car needs oil.’ ‘But I’ve just *got any.*’

**NOTE:** *Any* is used in negative sentences, but is *not negative.* *Not ... any* (or no – see page 114) is negative.

Sorry, I *haven’t got any* time / I’ve got no time. (NOT Sorry, I’ve got any time.)

6 Complete the sentences with negative past-tense verbs. Use words from the box.

- **ask**
- **be**
- **do**
- **find**
- **get ✓**
- **have**

- 1 I didn’t *get any* letters today.
- 2 John *didn’t have any* work at university.
- 3 The hotel *hadn’t got any* free rooms.
- 4 The policeman *didn’t find me* any questions.
- 5 We *hadn’t got any* open petrol stations.

7 **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: possessions**

Have you got any of the things in the box? Use a dictionary if necessary. Write some sentences with *some* or *any*.

- aspirins
- ballpoint pens
- dollars
- jewellery
- keys
- love letters
- make-up
- red shoes
- stamps
- string
- ties
- white socks

I’ve got some ballpoint pens. I haven’t got any red shoes.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I’m, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

**DETERMINERS** 171
society, anything, nowhere, ...  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>someone</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>somewhere</th>
<th>anybody</th>
<th>anyone</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>anywhere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>no one</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>everybody</td>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>everything</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Somebody and someone mean the same; so do anybody and anyone etc.
The difference between somebody etc and anybody etc is the same as the difference between some and any (see pages 170–171). For every, see page 179.

Sometime telephoned for you. Has anybody seen my keys? She didn't speak to anyone.
I've got something for you. Do you want anything from the shops? He lives somewhere in London.
She never goes anywhere. Nothing happened. Everyone knew that.

1 Complete the words.

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is someone at home?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>'What did you say?' ‘No.............’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I haven't seen Amy ..........where.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>There's ..........one at the door.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Can I do any...... to help?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>You can find Coca-Cola every..........</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>No............... understands me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 'Where did you go at the weekend?' ..........where - we stayed at home.'
8 I want to tell you some.........
9 Every............. in my family has blue eyes.
10 I don't know ..........body who plays rugby.
11 Every............. in this shop is expensive.
12 I want to live .............where warm.

2 These are sentences from real conversations. Can you complete them with somebody, anything etc?

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Does .......... want to speak about that?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The poor woman has .......... to go.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>It doesn't cost ..........</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>.......... said 'thank you': not one man.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Ten people in one room with no bath, no water, .......... |

6 What can you buy for a woman who has ..........? |

After nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything and nothing we use singular verbs.

Everybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.) Everything is OK. Nothing happens here.

3 Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agree</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>know</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nobody .......... where she lives.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Everything .......... to me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Everything .......... interesting to somebody.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>.......... everybody here?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>.......... everybody got a drink?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>No one .......... with me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Correct (/) or not (X)?

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>We couldn't find a hotel nowhere. ......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Does anybody know Penny's phone number? ......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Can I ask you something? ......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Nobody want to go home. ......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I don't want something, thank you. ......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Don't say nothing to Alan about Olivia. ...... |

7 Everybody needs help sometimes. ...... |

8 Do anybody want another drink? ...... |

9 Anybody doesn't understand me. ...... |

10 I don't never want to take nothing from nobody. ...... |

Note the difference between no one and none. No one means 'nobody'; none means 'not any'.

No one can help me. I wanted some plums, but there were none in the shop.
**much and many**  How much milk?  How many languages?

We use *much* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *many* with plurals.

Do you listen to *much* music?  Do you go to *many* concerts?

1. **Put in much or many.**
   - She doesn't speak *much* European.
   - She doesn't buy *many* clothes.
   - I haven't got *too* much time.
   - Do you play *too* much football?
   - There aren't *too* many people here.
   - Are there *too* many Americans in your company?
   - We don't have *too* much rain in summer.
   - I don't eat *too* much meat.
   - Have you travelled to *too* many countries?
   - We don't watch *too* many films.
   - Was there *too* much traffic on the road?
   - Not *too* many tourists visit our town.
   - Do you know *too* many songs?
   - She doesn't speak *too* much English.
   - She doesn't buy *too* many clothes.
   - I haven't got *too* much time.
   - Do you play *too* many football?
   - There aren't *too* many people here.
   - Are there *too* many Americans in your company?
   - We don't have *too* much rain in summer.
   - I don't eat *too* much meat.
   - Have you travelled to *too* many countries?
   - We don't watch *too* many films.
   - Was there *too* much traffic on the road?
   - Not *too* many tourists visit our town.
   - Do you know *too* many songs?

2. **Write the questions. Do you know the answers? (See the bottom of the page.)**

   - How many plays did Shakespeare write?
   - How many symphonies did Beethoven write?
   - How many cents are there in a dollar?
   - How many kilometres are there in a mile?
   - How many states are there in the USA?
   - How many bloods are there in a person's body?
   - How many airs are we breathe every minute?
   - How many points do you get for a try in rugby union?
   - How many foods did an elephant eat every day?

   We can use *much* and *many* without nouns if the meaning is clear.

   'Have you got any money?'  'Not much.'  'How many people were there?'  'Not many.'

3. **Much and many** are used mostly in questions and negatives. They are unusual in spoken affirmative (is) sentences. In an informal style, we prefer expressions like *a lot of* (see page 174).

   'Do you get *much* snow in winter?'  'Not much, but we get *a lot of* rain.' (NOT ... we get *much* rain.)
   'Have you got *many* English friends?'  'No, I haven't got *many* English friends. But I've got *a lot of* American friends.' (NOT USAUALLY ... I've got *many* American friends.)

4. **In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.**
a lot of and lots of

A lot of and lots of are common in an informal style. They mean the same.

I haven't got a lot of time just now. He's got lots of money and lots of friends.

We can use both expressions before singular (uncountable) or plural nouns.

* a lot of / lots of + singular subject: singular verb

A lot of his work is good. Lots of his work is good. (NOT Lots of his work are good.)

* a lot of / lots of + plural subject: plural verb

A lot of his ideas are good. (NOT A lot of his ideas is good.) Lots of his ideas are good.

If we use a lot or lots without a noun, we don't use of.

* 'Have you got a lot of work?' ‘Yes, a lot.’ (NOT Yes, a lot of.)

In affirmative (yes) sentences in conversation, a lot of and lots of are more natural than much/many (see page 173).

We eat a lot of vegetables.

This car uses lots of petrol.

Plenty of can be used in the same way as a lot of / lots of.

Put in plenty of with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eggs</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>ideas</th>
<th>paint/</th>
<th>patience</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>warm clothes</th>
<th>water</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

What do you need:

1. if you're painting a big house? plenty of paint
2. if you're very hungry? 
3. if you've got a lot of work? 
4. if you work with small children? 

3. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: towns

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write four sentences about a town, using a lot of / lots of / plenty / not much / not many.

In Oxford there are a lot of museums; there is not much industry.

1. In 
2. 
3. 
4. 
We use *a little* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *a few* with plurals.

If you're hungry, we've got *a little soup* and *a few tomatoes*.

**Put in a little or a few.**

1. I know ................. English.  
2. I speak ................. words of Spanish.  
3. I'll be on holiday in ................. days.  
4. Can you give me ................. help?  
5. Grace will be ready in ................. minutes.  
6. Could I have ................. more coffee?  
7. I'd like to ask you ................. questions.  
8. I'm having ................. trouble with the police.  
9. The soup needs ................. more salt.  
10. I'm going away for ................. weeks.

**Little and few (without a) have a rather negative (□) meaning (like not much/many).**

A *little* and *a few* have a more positive (□) meaning (like *some*).

We've got *a little food in the house* if you're hungry. (= 'some, better than nothing')
There was *little food* in the house, so we went to a restaurant. (= 'not much, not enough')
His lesson was very difficult, but *a few students* understood it. (= 'more than I expected')
His lesson was so difficult that *few students* understood it. (= 'not many, hardly any')

**Circle the correct answer.**

1. I have *little* / *a little* time to read newspapers and no time at all to read books.
2. There was *little* / *a little* water on the mountain, and we all got very thirsty.
3. Foreign languages are difficult, and *few* / *a few* people learn them perfectly.
4. I'm going to Scotland with *few* / *a few* friends next week.
5. I've brought you *few* / *a few* flowers.
6. Life is very hard in the Arctic, so *few* / *a few* people live there.
7. She was a difficult woman, and she had *few* / *a few* friends.
8. ‘Would you like something to drink?’ *Little* / *A little* water, please.

**Little and few are rather formal; in conversation we use not much/many or only a little/few.**

There wasn't much food in the house. OR There was only a little food in the house.
The lesson was so difficult that not many / only a few students understood it.

**Make these sentences more conversational.**

1. I speak little English. ................. I only speak a little English OR ................. I don't speak much English
2. There was little room on the bus.  
3. Few people learn foreign languages perfectly.  
4. She has few friends.  
5. We get little rain here in summer.  
6. This car uses little petrol.  
7. Our town gets few tourists.  
8. We have little time to catch the train.

**We can use (a) little and (a) few without nouns if the meaning is clear.**

‘Have you got any money?’ ‘A little.’  ‘Did you buy any clothes?’ ‘A few.’
enough money; fast enough

We put enough before nouns.
Have you got enough money for the bus? There aren’t enough plates for everybody.

1 Look at the pictures and complete the descriptions.

1 not ............... food  2 ............... strings  3 ............... seats  4 ........................

2 Use enough with words from the box to complete the sentences.

buses ✓ chairs girls money salt time work

- You need a car in our village, because there aren’t ....... enough buses.
1 Have you got ............................. to finish the work?
2 There were plenty of boys at the party, but not ........................................
3 We couldn’t sit down because there weren’t ........................................
4 I won’t pass the exam because I haven’t done ........................................
5 I’ve got just .................................. for a ticket to America.
6 This soup isn’t very nice. There’s not ........................................ in it.

We put enough after adjectives and adverbs.
This room isn’t big enough. (NOT ... enough big) You’re not walking fast enough.

3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives
Check the words in the box with a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the list with not ... enough.

bright clear comfortable deep easy fresh interesting ✓ loud

POSSIBLE PROBLEMS
- a book not interesting enough
1 an alarm clock ........................................
2 a chair ........................................
3 a lamp ........................................
4 an exercise ........................................
5 an explanation ........................................
6 eggs ........................................
7 a swimming pool ........................................

4 Put enough with each word.
- old old enough
- people enough people
1 warm ........................................
2 early ........................................
3 beds ........................................
4 often ........................................
5 quiet ........................................
6 children ........................................
7 milk ........................................
8 help ........................................
9 sweet ........................................
10 young ........................................

We can use enough without a noun if the meaning is clear.
‘More coffee?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ve got enough.’
We use too with adjectives and adverbs. We use too much/many with nouns. These give the opposite meaning to 'not enough'.

This coffee's too cold. (NOT ... too much cold ...) He drives too fast.
I've got too much work and not enough time. You ask too many questions.

1. Put in too, too much or too many.
   1. ...................... old
   2. ...................... trouble
   3. ...................... problems
   4. ...................... money
   5. ...................... ill
   6. ...................... work
   7. ...................... hot
   8. ...................... students
   9. ...................... cars
  10. ...................... difficult

2. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives
   Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then change the expressions.

   cheap    dry    expensive    fast ✓    hard    heavy    high    light    low
   narrow   short   slow ✓   soft    tall    thick    thin    wet    wide

   ▷ not fast enough = .............................................. too slow
   ▷ too slow = .............................................. not fast enough
   ▷ not high enough = .............................................. too short
   ▷ not tall enough = .............................................. too light
   ▷ not heavy enough = .............................................. too soft
   ▷ not hot enough = .............................................. too cold
   ▷ too narrow = .............................................. too thick
   ▷ too dry = .............................................. too wet
   ▷ too expensive = .............................................. too cheap
   ▷ too thick = .............................................. too narrow

3. A man is going walking in the mountains for three days. Look at the things that he is taking and give your opinion, using (not) enough or too much/many. Use a dictionary if necessary.

   HE IS TAKING  YOUR OPINION
   1 packet of soup  not enough soup
   1 camera  enough cameras
   8 maps  too many maps
   5 pairs of socks
   1 pair of boots
   3 pocket torches
   1 tube of sun-cream
   2 waterproof jackets
   2 pairs of sunglasses
   10 kg of bread
   2 kg of cheese
   100 cl of water
   1 orange
   1 bar of chocolate
   1 small bar of soap
   3 toothbrushes

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
all  all my friends are here; my friends are all here

All can go with a noun or with a verb.

All the trains stop at Cardiff.  The trains all stop at Cardiff.
All the courses begin on Monday.  The courses all begin on Monday.
All birds lay eggs.  Birds all lay eggs.  All my clothes need cleaning.  My clothes all need cleaning.

Change the sentences.

1  All my family like travelling.  My family all like travelling
2  All the buses all run on Sundays.  All the buses run on Sundays
3  All the films start at 7 o'clock.
4  Our secretaries all speak Arabic.
5  All these coats cost the same.
6  All the courses begin on Monday.
7  All my friends live in London.
8  These houses all need repairs.
9  All those shops belong to the same family.
10  Children all need love.

Note the word order when all goes with a verb. All goes:

1 before one-word verbs
   The guides all speak German.  The visitors all arrived this morning.  We all got up late.

2 after auxiliary verbs (will, have, can etc) and after are and were.
   The guides can all understand Spanish. (NOT ... all can understand Spanish.)
   The visitors have all arrived. (NOT ... all have arrived.)  We were all tired. (NOT We all were tired.)

Put all with the verb.

Cars break down sometimes.  Cars all break down sometimes.
Mark’s friends have gone home.  Mark’s friends have all gone home.
1 All the offices close at weekends.
2 The lessons will start on Tuesday.
3 These children can swim.
4 Our windows are dirty.
5 Sorry, the tickets have gone.
6 We went to New York for Christmas.
7 The shops will be open tomorrow.
8 We stopped for lunch at 12.30.
9 These watches are too expensive.
10 The lights have gone out.

We don’t normally use all without a noun to mean ‘everybody’ or ‘everything’.

Everybody knows that. (NOT All know that.)  I’ve forgotten everything. (NOT I’ve forgotten all.)

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights.  (Universal Declaration of Human Rights)
Justice is open to all people in the same way as the Ritz Hotel.  (Judge Sturgess)
all and every; each

We use every with singular nouns and verbs. Compare:

All people are interesting.  Every person is interesting. (NOT Every person are …)
All teachers make mistakes. Every teacher makes mistakes.

We can use other determiners (the, my, this etc) after all, but not after every. Compare:

All the shops were closed. Every shop was closed. (NOT Every the shop …)

1 Rewrite the sentences with every.

   a) All the buses were late. Every bus was late.
   b) All animals breathe air.
   c) She's read all the books in the library.
   d) I paid all the bills.
   e) All the computers are working today.
   f) All languages have verbs.
   g) All London trains stop at Reading.
   h) I've written to all the customers.
   i) All the glasses are dirty.
   j) All children can be difficult.
   k) All the roads were closed.

2 Each and every are similar. We use each for two or more, but we use every for three or more.

   She had a bag in each hand. (NOT … in every-hand.) She had a ring on each/every finger.

3 Can you change each to every in these sentences?

   a) He's got six earrings in each ear. No.
   b) I work each day except Sunday. Yes … every day except Sunday.
   c) There's a pub on each side of the road.
   d) She wrote a careful answer to each letter.
   e) He works in London and Paris, and he's got a girlfriend in each city.
   f) She wears a watch on each wrist.
   g) My parents are strange, but each one is strange in a different way.
   h) Each house in this street looks the same.

Note the difference between every day (= ‘on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays etc’) and all day (= ‘from morning to night’).

   The restaurant is open all day, every day except Sunday.

‘Behind every successful man is a good woman.’ (Traditional)

‘Behind every successful woman stands a good man, looking rather confused.’ (E. Strabets)

‘Behind every successful man stands a surprised mother-in-law.’ (Hubert Humphrey)

‘Behind every successful man is a woman, behind her is his wife.’ (Groucho Marx)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
both, either and neither

We use **both**, **either** and **neither** to talk about two people or things.

- **Both** (="one and the other") has a plural noun.
- **Either** (="one or the other") has a singular noun.
- **Neither** (="not either, not one and not the other") has a singular noun.

"Are you free on Monday or Wednesday?" 'I'm free on **both** days.'

"Which day is better for you?" 'Either day is OK.'

"About four o'clock?" 'No, sorry, I'm not free on **either** afternoon.'

"What about Thursday or Saturday, then?" 'No, **neither** day is any good.'

1. **Put in both, either or neither.**
   1. ……………… children are very tall.
   2. I’m busy on ……………… afternoons.
   3. ‘Which room can I have?’ ‘You can have ……………… room. ……………… rooms have a view of the sea.’
   4. ……………… students tried the exam, but ……………… student passed.
   5. I’m lucky – I can write with ……………… hand.
   6. It’s very heavy: use ……………… hands to carry it.
   7. ……………… coat will look good on you. Why don’t you buy one of them?
   8. I don’t like ……………… coat. And ……………… coats are very expensive.
   9. ‘Do you want your holiday in July or August?’ ‘ ……………… month will be fine.’
   10. ……………… my brothers studied medicine, but ……………… brother works as a doctor.
   11. I paid for ……………… tickets – Ann’s and mine.
   12. ‘What do precipitate and recursion mean?’ ‘I don’t know ……………… word.’

2. **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that come in twos**
   Make sure you know all these words. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences, using **both**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ankle</th>
<th>direction</th>
<th>earring</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>eye</th>
<th>knee</th>
<th>parent</th>
<th>sex</th>
<th>side</th>
<th>sock</th>
<th>team</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I hurt ……………… playing football.
- Cars are parked on ……………… of the road.
- ……………… her ……………… are doctors.
- Traffic on the road was very slow in ………………
- ……………… are playing really badly.
- She hurt ……………… skiing.
- I’ve lost ……………… my ……………… – have you seen them anywhere?
- Police were stopping cars at ……………… of the bridge.
- That child has got holes in ……………… of his ………………
- I need new glasses. Both ……………… are getting worse.
- His shop sells clothes for ………………
determiners and of  *most people; most of us*

We use **determiners** (some, any, much, many, more, most, few, enough etc) with of before **other determiners** (the, this, my etc) and before personal pronouns (it, us etc).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DETERMINER + OF</th>
<th>DETERMINER WITHOUT OF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• before the: some of the people here</td>
<td>some people (NOT some-of-people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• before this etc: too many of those books</td>
<td>too many books I've got too many.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• before my etc: a few of our friends</td>
<td>a few friends She has a few.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• before it, us etc: enough of it most of them</td>
<td>enough milk most students</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Change the expressions.**

1. some houses (those) some of those houses

2. not much milk (the) most mistakes (these)

3. any friends (my) too many students (the)

4. enough meat (that) more potatoes (those)

5. some big plates (the) not much money (my)

6. a few ideas (her) not enough work (his)

**Put in of or nothing (–).**

1. Some ... people don't like her.
2. Some ... the people in the class don't like her.
3. Can you lend me some more ... money?
4. I've lost some ... the addresses.
5. I don't like many ... his books.
6. She knows a few ... those people.
7. 'Do you like jazz singers?' 'Some ...'

**Note the difference between most people/things (in general) and most of the people/things (particular ones).**

*Most people* like dancing.
You can pay by credit card in *most shops.*

*Most of the people at the party* were dancing.
*Most of the shops here* are open on Sundays.

**Put in most or most of the.**

1. ... people talk to themselves.
2. I know ... people in our village.
3. ... people on the bus had no tickets.
4. ... people like music.
5. ... cars are expensive.
6. There are students in ... houses in this street.
7. ... cats eat fish.
8. Our cat eats ... things: fish, meat, biscuits, cheese, ...
9. I understand ... words in this book.
10. She's very friendly: she gets on well with ... people.

**NOTE:** we often drop of after *all* and *both. After a lot / lots / plenty we always use of with a noun or pronoun (see page 174).

*All (of) my friends.*  *Both (of) her parents.*  *a lot of problems, (NOT a-lot problems)*

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
determiners: more practice

1 Demonstratives; some and any. Put in the correct forms.
   ▶ Have you got ............... shampoo? (some / any)
   1 Listen to ................... You’ll love it! (this / that)
   2 I didn’t like ................... film yesterday. (this / that)
   3 Who are ..................... people in John’s car? (these / those)
   4 ‘ ..................... is my friend Beth.’ ‘How do you do?’ (this / that)
   5 ‘Look at ................... earrings.’ ‘Where?’ ‘On my ears, of course!’ (these / those)
   6 You never tell me ................... about your work. (something / anything)
   7 I didn’t have ................... breakfast this morning. (some / any)
   8 ‘This is good ice cream.’ ‘Would you like ................... more?’ (some / any)
   9 ‘What are you thinking about?’ ‘ ................... ’ (Anything / Nothing)
   10 We got to London ................... any difficulty. (with / without)

2 Mixed determiners. Put in all, each, every, everybody, everything, both, either or neither.
   1 Has ..................... student arrived?
   2 Hold the string at ................... end.
   3 Tell me .....................
   4 She stayed in bed ................... day yesterday.
   5 We’re open .................... day except Tuesday.
   6 ‘Tea or coffee?’ ‘No, ..................... , thanks.’
   7 I can write with ................... hand.
   8 I can write with ................... hands.
   9 Do you know ................... here?
   10 Not ..................... animals can swim.

3 Mixed determiners. Circle the correct forms.
   1 Can I give you my answer tomorrow? I need little / a little time to think.
   2 His ideas are so difficult that few / a few people understand them.
   3 There were only a little / a few people at the meeting.
   4 I’d like to ask you few / a few questions, if I may.
   5 Too much work, too little / few time.
   6 James always has much / lots of money.
   7 Were there much / many girls at the party?
   8 A lot of my friends think / thinks I’m wrong.
   9 Am I driving too / too much fast?
   10 Are those shoes big enough / enough big?

4 Of with determiners. Put in the correct forms.
   1 ..................... the children enjoyed the show. (Most / Most of)
   2 ..................... people like animals. (Most / Most of the)
   3 ..................... us are meeting at Joe’s tomorrow evening. (A few / A few of)
   4 Have you seen ..................... good films recently? (any / any of)
   5 I’ve invited ..................... my friends to come round this evening. (some / some of)
   6 She finished ..................... the work, but not ..................... it. (most / most of / all / all of)
   7 Have you got ..................... milk? (enough / enough of)
   8 You ask ..................... questions. (too many / too many of)
   9 ‘How many books have you got to read?’ ‘ ..................... ’ (A lot / A lot of)
   10 I don’t like ..................... these books. (many / many of)
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives with somebody etc. Check that you know all the adjectives in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Now find these in the picture. Write the letters.

Now write your own examples for:

Grammar in a text. Circle the correct forms.

SOME STATISTICS
Those who always know better: perhaps half us / half of us.
Those who are not sure: most the rest / most of the rest.
Those who don’t know how to be bad: very few / few of.
Those who think they are important: a lot / a lot of.
Those who are always afraid of someone or something: most us / most of us.
Those who are glad to help, if it doesn’t take too long: nearly half / half of.
Those who can be happy: some us / some of us, not very many.
Those who are kind alone but cruel in crowds: half or more.
Those who will kill you if they think they have to: it’s best not to know how many / how many of.
Those who only take from life and give nothing: maybe 30% (I wish I were wrong).
Those who are lost and ill in the dark: nearly everybody, sooner or later.
Those who are good: a lot / a lot of.
Those who are good and understanding: hardly anybody.
Those that we should feel sorry for: almost everybody.
Those who are dead at the end: all us / all of us.

adapted from a poem by Wislawa Szymborska

Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google).
How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?

“too much fast” 40,700
“everybody is”
“everything are”
“most people”

“too fast” 10,900,000: Correct
“everybody are”
“everything is”
“most of people”
determiners: revision test

1 Correct the mistakes and rewrite the sentences.
- Would you like little more coffee?  \textit{Would you like a little more coffee?}
  1 He spoke fast, but I understood all. ..............................................................
  2 I'm hungry, but there isn't nothing to eat. ......................................................
  3 She has much money. .................................................................
  4 A lot of us was at the party last night. ............................................................
  5 Most of people think I'm right. .................................................................
  6 He was carrying a heavy bag in every hand. ...................................................
  7 Everything are very difficult. .................................................................
  8 I like every kinds of music. .................................................................
  9 I think you're driving too much fast. .............................................................
 10 If everybody are ready, we can go. .............................................................

2 Circle the correct forms.
  1 I'm enjoying this / that game.
  2 This / That lesson was really hard.
  3 I've had a postcard from these / those people we met in America.
  4 What's this / that thing in the tree over there?
  5 Hello. This / That is Mike. Can I speak to Anna?
  6 There's somebody / anybody on the phone for you.
  7 I need / I don't need some help.
  8 Could I have some / any more coffee?
  9 Anna hardly said anything / nothing all evening.
 10 We never go somewhere / anywhere interesting.

3 Put in the correct forms.
  1 Let me tell you ................. my problems. (all / every / each)
  2 .................. everybody ready to leave? (Is / Are)
  3 .................. her parents are doctors. (Either / Each / Both)
  4 I pronounced ................. word separately, very slowly. (all / each / both)
  5 Not ................. bird can fly. (all / every / either)
  6 'Is there anything to drink?' 'There's ................. orange juice.' (a little / a few / any)
  7 There was ................. to do in the town, so we stayed at home most evenings. (a little / little / anything)
  8 It's nice to spend ................. time alone, sometimes. (a little / little / a little of / little of)
  9 I've been to Scotland ................. times. (a little / a few / a little of / a few of)
 10 'Do you speak Russian?' ................. .'(A little / A little of / A few / A few of)
 11 Children ask ................. questions. (lots / lots of / much / many)
 12 I don't go to ................. parties. (a lot / many / many of)
 13 I've got ................. problems. (too / too much / too many / too many of)
 14 She didn't eat ................. breakfast. (much / many / many of)
 15 There ................. lots of time before the shop closes. (is / are)
 16 There's a pub at ................. end of our street. (each / every / all / both)
 17 She thinks she knows ................. (all / all of / everything)
 18 I practise karate ................. day except Tuesday. (all / either / every)
 19 'Which car can I have?' 'Sorry - ................. car is free.' (neither / either / any / both)
 20 I'd like ................. sweet. (something / something of)
SECTION 13  personal pronouns; possessives

grammar summary

l, you, he, she, it, we, you, they me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them
my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs
myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, yourselves, themselves each other

We use pronouns when it is not necessary, or not possible, to use a more exact noun phrase.

Mrs Parker phoned. She said ... (The speaker uses the personal pronoun she because it is not necessary to repeat Mrs Parker.)

Ann talks to herself all the time. (It is unnecessary to repeat Ann.)

In this section we explain personal pronouns (I, me, you etc); possessives (my, your etc and mine, yours etc); reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself etc); and each other.

Indefinite pronouns (somebody, anything etc) are explained in Section 12, together with some and any. Relative pronouns (who, which etc) are explained in Section 19.
personal pronouns: I and me etc

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECTS</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OTHER USES</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJECTS: I, HE ETC
I like Mary. He needs help. They want your address.

OBJECTS: ME, HIM ETC
Mary doesn't like me. Help him. Don't tell them anything.

AFTER PREPOSITIONS: ME, HIM ETC
Look at me. Why is Jane with him? Is that for us?

AFTER BE: ME, HIM ETC
'Who's there?' 'It's me.' (NOT I am OR He is)
'Is that Joe?' 'Yes, that's him.'

INFORMAL ANSWERS: ME, HIM ETC
'Who said that?' 'Me.'
'I'm tired.' 'Me too.'

Circle the correct answer.
1 'I/Me don't understand.'
2 'Tell me/us your address.'
3 'This isn't for you, it's for he/him.'
4 'I don't think they/them are here today.'
5 'Where's your brother?' 'That's he/him over there.'
6 'Where are the children? Can you see them?'
7 'Ask her why she/her is crying.'

Put in he, him, she, her, they or them.
1 'Does your father speak English?' '................. understands a little.'
2 'I'm seeing Lucy and Pete on Tuesday.' 'Oh, give ................. my love.'
3 'Mr Carter's here.' 'Ask ................. to wait downstairs.'
4 'Where are your friends? ................. 're very late.
5 'Have you spoken to Mrs Lewis?' 'Not yet. I'm going to speak to ................. this evening.'
6 'Where's Ann?' '............... 's in Germany all this week.'

We use it, they and them for things, including (usually) countries and animals.
I like Scotland, but it's cold in winter. She sold her horse because it cost too much.

Put in it, they or them.
1 'Where are my keys?' '............... 're on that chair.'
2 'Where did that cat come from?' '............... came in through the window.'
3 'What did you think of the film?' '............... 's not very good.'
4 'What shall I do with these letters?' 'Just put ................. on the table.'
5 'Can I have John's address?' 'I'll give ................. to you this afternoon.'
6 'Did you enjoy your holiday in Ireland?' 'Yes, ................. 's a wonderful place.'
7 'Where are your glasses?' 'I've lost ................. ' 
8 'Would you like tickets for the concert?' 'How much do ................. cost?'

We use it to talk about times, dates, distances and the weather.
It's five o'clock. It's Tuesday. It's December 17th today. It's my birthday.
It's 20 miles from my house to the centre of Oxford. It's cold today. It's raining.

Write true answers to these questions beginning It's ...
1 What time is it? .................
2 What day is it? .................
3 What's the date? .................
4 How far is it to London? .................

186 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES
We don’t usually leave out personal pronouns. (For exceptions in spoken English, see page 293.)

Jan arrived in America in 1976. He found a job in a clothes shop. (NOT Found-a-job …)

‘What languages do you know?’ ‘I can speak some German.’ (NOT ‘Can speak …)

‘Is your room OK?’ ‘Yes, I like it.’ (NOT ‘Yes, I like.)

5 Write answers, using I, you etc.

- ‘What time is the next train?’ (8.30 / leaves / at)
  It leaves at 8.30.

1 ‘Where’s John?’ (has / London / to / moved)

2 ‘Have you seen my glasses?’ (on / chair / are / that)

3 ‘What do you think of my new shoes?’ (like)

4 ‘What’s Elisabeth going to do?’ (medicine / study / going to / is)

5 ‘I’m learning Greek.’ ‘Is it easy?’ (No / difficult / is)

6 ‘Where’s my bicycle?’ (put / in / the garage)

7 ‘What do you do at weekends?’ (play / tennis)

8 ‘Do you like my picture?’ (is / beautiful)

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: weather

Make sure you know the adjectives and verbs in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then label the pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVES:</th>
<th>cloudy</th>
<th>cold</th>
<th>foggy</th>
<th>hot</th>
<th>sunny</th>
<th>warm</th>
<th>windy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERBS:</td>
<td>hail</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>snow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
possessives: my, your etc  This is my coat.

I → my  This is my coat.
you → your  That's your problem.
he → his  John's visiting his mother.
she → her  Ann looks like her brothers.
it → its  The club has its meetings on Tuesdays.
we → our  Our friends Joe and Pat are staying with us.
they → their  The children have spent all their money.
who? → whose?  Whose coat is this?

Possessives don't change for singular and plural.

our friend  our friends (NOT ours-friends)

Note how we use his and her: if a boy or man has something, we use his; if a girl or woman has something, we use her.

I saw John and his sister yesterday. (NOT ... John and her sister ...)
Mary and her brother are students. (NOT Mary and his brother ...)

We often use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.

Phil has broken his arm. (NOT Phil has broken the arm.)
She stood there with her eyes closed and her hands in her pockets.

Put in the correct possessives.

- Would you like to wash your hands?
- We're taking our holiday in June.
  1 Tina's lost our keys.
  2 Peter says his wife is ill.
  3 Peter's car is that outside?
  4 My bank has changed its name.
  5 I'm going to sell our motorbike.
  6 My students have got their exam next week.
  7 Stephen writes to his girlfriend every day.
  8 Maria lives with her father in Portugal.
  9 Come in and take your coats off.
  10 Robert broke his leg skiing last winter.
  11 'What film did you see?' 'Sorry, I've forgotten whose name.'
  12 Elizabeth did well in her exams.

'Your loving son,'
Who sold what to who? Make sentences.


Amy sold her car to James.

- James sold ......................... to Carlos.
- Carlos ................................
- Sara ................................
- Pat and Sam ........................
- Harry ................................
- Alice ................................
- Michael ..............................
- Helen .................................
- Marilyn ..............................
- Tom ...................................

Look at the picture and complete the text.

Anna ......................... and her husband Mark went on holiday with 1 ......................... and 2 ......................... in 3 .......................... There's room for six in the van, so Anna invited 4 ......................... to go with them, but she didn't ask 5 ........................., because Mark doesn't get on with Lucy. Mark asked 6 ........................., but she said no, because she doesn't like Frank. Then Mark asked 7 ........................., but he wasn't free. However, 8 ......................... was happy to go with them, so everything was OK.

We don't use a/an, the, this or that before possessives.

my car (NOT the my car)  this idea OR my idea (NOT this my idea)

Don't confuse its (possessive) and it's (= 'it is' or 'it has' – see page 301). Compare:

The company had its annual meeting yesterday. It's losing a lot of money.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example 'I'm, don't) and full forms (for example 'I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
possessives: mine, yours etc  

This is mine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DETERMINER</th>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my coat</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your car</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his chair</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her book</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DETERMINER</th>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>its price</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our house</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their problem</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use mine, yours etc without nouns. Compare:

That's not my coat. This is mine. (NOT This is the mine.) Is that your car? I thought yours was a Ford.

Their garden is much bigger than ours. (NOT ... ours garden)

We can use the question word whose with or without nouns.

Whose coat is that? Whose is that coat?

1 Rewrite the sentences with possessive pronouns.
   1 That's my newspaper. ........................................
   2 I prefer our house to their house. I prefer our house to ........................................
   3 Her hair looks better than your hair. Her hair ........................................
   4 Your hair looks terrible. ........................................
   5 That dog looks like our dog. ........................................
   6 That car's not her car. ........................................
   7 My cooking is better than his cooking. ........................................
   8 Is this bike your bike? ........................................

2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: the bathroom

Look at the pictures of David and Natasha's bathroom, and use the words in the box to make sentences with his, hers or theirs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

dressing gown  hair dryer  make-up  razor  shampoo  soap  toothbrush

toothbrush  toothpaste  towel  washcloth

The red washcloth is his.

1 The ........................................ is not theirs. 6 ........................................
2 ........................................ 7 ........................................
3 ........................................ 8 ........................................
4 ........................................ 9 ........................................
5 ........................................ 10 ........................................
6 ........................................ 11 ........................................
reflexive pronouns: *myself, yourself* etc

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I → myself</th>
<th>you → yourself</th>
<th>he → himself</th>
<th>she → herself</th>
<th>it → itself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we → ourselves</td>
<td>you → yourselves</td>
<td>they → themselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use *myself, yourself* etc when an object is the same person/thing as the subject.

*I cut myself shaving this morning. (NOT I cut me ...)*  
*We must ask ourselves some questions.*  
*He tried to kill himself. (Different from He tried to kill him.)*

Circle the correct answer.

1. She doesn't love *him/himself.*
2. She likes looking at *her/herself* in the mirror.
3. Old people often talk to *them/themselves.*
4. I'm going out tonight, so you will all have to cook for *yourself/yourselves.*
5. I like Bill, but I don't understand *him/himself.*

Put in *myself, yourself* etc.

1. I'm teaching .................. to play the guitar.
2. 'Who's John talking to?' ..................
3. Get a drink for ..................
4. We really enjoyed .................. last night.
5. Mary talks about .................. all the time.
6. Find chairs for .................. and sit down.
7. They just want to make money for ..................

We can also use *myself* etc to emphasise – to say 'that person/thing and nobody/nothing else':

*It's best if you do it yourself. I want to speak to the manager himself, not his secretary.*

Put in *myself, yourself* etc.

1. Did you cut your hair ..................?
2. Peter and Ann built their house ..................
3. I answer all my letters ..................
4. Can you repair this, or must we do it  
   ......................
5. We got a letter from the Queen ..................

Note the difference between *ourselves* etc and *each other.*

![Image 1](They're looking at themselves.)

![Image 2](They're looking at each other.)

4. *Each other or -selves?*

1. Henry and Barbara write to ..................
   every week.
2. Joe and Pat have bought a flat  
   for ..................
3. Do you and Julia tell ..................
   everything?
4. You'll need photos of ..................
   for your passports.
5. Ruth and I have known ..................
   for years.

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common expressions with reflexive pronouns**

*by myself/yourself etc (= 'alone')*  
*enjoy myself/yourself etc*  
*Take care of yourself.*  
*Help yourself.* (= 'Take what you want.')  
*Make yourself comfortable.*
personal pronouns and possessives: more practice

1 Forms. There is one mistake in each column. Find the mistakes in columns 2–5 and correct them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mines</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>theirselves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Mixed structures. Correct the mistakes.

1 She didn’t say ‘Hello.’
2 John and her wife have gone to Greece.
3 This coat is my.
4 Their house is much bigger than our.
5 That dog has hurt its ear.
6 ‘What about this music?’ ‘I like.’
7 There are five miles to the nearest station.
8 Where’s the station? ‘He’s over there.’
9 Their were all late.
10 ‘Did you like France?’ ‘I thought was wonderful.’

11 ‘Where are your gloves?’ ‘I’ve lost its.’
12 ‘Who did that?’ ‘It was I.’
13 ‘Which girl is your sister?’ ‘That’s she in the red dress.’
14 Is cold again today.
15 ‘What’s her name?’ ‘Have forgotten.’
16 Lucy broke the leg skiing.
17 ‘What’s the date?’ ‘Is December 17th.’
18 Is that the my coat?
19 Who’s car is this?
20 ‘Who’s that?’ ‘I am.’

3 Reflexives and each other. Complete the captions.

1 He’s talking to ................................ 2 She’s talking to ................................ 3 They’re talking to ................................

4 Mixed pronouns. Put in a personal pronoun (me, you etc), a reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself etc), each other or nothing (–).

1 She looked at ................................ and I looked at ...................... but we didn’t say anything.
2 When I’m alone I don’t always cook for ......................
3 We love ................................ very much, but we fight all the time.
4 ‘Can we have some coffee?’ ‘Sure. Help ......................’
5 Anna and I write to ................................ every week.
6 The children really enjoyed ...................... at your party.
7 I’m sorry. I haven’t got time to teach ...................... to cook. You’ll have to teach ......................
8 My girlfriend doesn’t speak much Italian, and I don’t speak much Chinese, so we sometimes have trouble understanding ......................
9 Come in and make ...................... comfortable.

192 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES
5 Reflexives. Circle the right pronouns.
1 Of all my wife’s relations I like myself / herself the best.
(Joseph Cook)
2 Novels are about other people and poems are about themselves / yourself.
(Philip Larkin)
3 An egotist: a person more interested in himself / yourself than in me.
(Ambrose Bierce)
4 ‘How do you know you’re God?’ ‘Simple. When I pray to Him I find I’m talking to myself / himself.’
(Peter Barnes)
5 We grow neither better nor worse as we get old, but more like ourselves / themselves.
(May Lamberton Becker)
6 You can always get someone to love you – even if you have to do it ourself / yourself.
(Tom Masson)

6 Grammar in a text. Choose words from the boxes to complete the text.

My brother and 1 .................. girlfriend have known 2 .................. for about five years, but 3 .................. ’ve only been going out together for six months.

Before that, he didn’t like 4 .................. and 5 .................. didn’t like him, but later 6 .................. became good friends, and started going out together.

7 .................. both have small flats. His flat is in the town centre, and 8 .................. very comfortable. 9 .................. is a long way out, and it’s not so nice. So they spend most of 10 .................. free time at 11 .................. place.

He works in a garage, and 12 .................. a teacher, but she doesn’t let 13 .................. touch 14 .................. car – she looks after it 15 .................. 

I like 16 .................. both very much, and I think 17 .................. good for 18 .................. , so 19 .................. hope 20 .................. will stay together.

7 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of these three expressions gets most hits? Can you see why?
“She broke her arm.” .................. 
“She broke the arm.” .................. 
“She broke his arm.” .................. 

pronunciation for grammar
personal pronouns and possessives: revision test

1 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>me</th>
<th>my</th>
<th>mine</th>
<th>myself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Correct the mistakes.

I haven’t seen him today.  
1 ‘Is the soup OK?’ ‘Yes, I like.’  
2 There are 20 miles to the shopping centre.  
3 We are Friday.  
4 Peter and her sister are in Brazil.  
5 I like our garden better than their.  
6 Olivia and Karl are nice. But theirs children!  
7 Who’s this bag?  
8 Ann and I write to ourselves every week.  
9 I really enjoyed at your party.  
10 I’m teaching me to play the guitar.  
11 Where’s the my bike?  
12 Is April 1st today.  
13 James fell off his horse and broke the arm.  
14 ‘What’s Joe’s phone number?’ ‘Have forgotten.’  
15 I sat down, made me comfortable, and waited for her to say something.

3 Put in a personal pronoun (me, you etc), a possessive (my, your etc), a reflexive (myself, yourself etc), or each other.

I don’t like …………………. and he doesn’t like ………………….
Don’t help …………………. She must do it by ………………….
Oliver and his girlfriend phone …………………. every day.
Thanks for yesterday evening. We really enjoyed ………………….
I like cooking for other people, but I don’t much like cooking for ………………….
Let’s work together: the work will go much faster if we help ………………….
Hi, Paul. Help …………………. to coffee. I’ll be with …………………. in a minute.
‘Will you teach …………………. the piano?’ ‘No, sorry, you’ll have to teach ………………….’
‘Who broke the cup?’ ‘It wasn’t ………………….’
‘Which is your mother?’ ‘That’s …………………. over there by the window.’
My parents don’t understand …………………., and my boyfriend doesn’t understand …………………., and sometimes I don’t understand ………………….
That girl keeps losing …………………. shoes.
Bill’s coming this evening with …………………. three sisters.
I don’t like looking at photos of …………………., because …………………. always look so old.
Mary’s mother’s really nice, but I don’t like …………………. father much.
grammar summary

Nouns are mostly words for things and people – for example house, tree, driver, child, water, idea, lesson. Most nouns can come after the.

English nouns can be countable (we can say two houses) or uncountable (we can’t say two waters).

Countable nouns have plurals (houses), and we can use a/an with them (a house, an idea).

Uncountable nouns have no plurals, and we can’t use a/an before them.

Some English uncountable nouns are countable in some other languages (like furniture).

We can join two nouns:

- with a possessive 's or s' (for example my brother's wife, my parents' house).
- with a preposition (for example a piece of cake).
- directly one after the other (for example chocolate cake, a shoe shop).
singular and plural nouns  cat, cats;  box, boxes

Countable nouns have different forms for singular and plural.

one car  four cars  one day  ten days  one baby  four babies  one child  six children

HOW TO MAKE PLURALS

• most nouns: + -s  book → books  home → homes  car → cars
  + -es  bus → buses  wish → wishes  church → churches  fox → foxes

1 Write the plurals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>apple ✓</th>
<th>boss ✓</th>
<th>box ✓</th>
<th>brush ✓</th>
<th>cat ✓</th>
<th>chair ✓</th>
<th>church ✓</th>
<th>class ✓</th>
<th>dress ✓</th>
<th>garden ✓</th>
<th>gas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apples</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -es:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bosses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOUNS ENDING IN -Y

• -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: + -s  day → days  monkey → monkeys  toy → toys
• -by, -dy, -gy, etc: -y → -ies  baby → babies  lady → ladies  lorry → lorries

2 Write the plurals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>boy ✓</th>
<th>city ✓</th>
<th>copy ✓</th>
<th>country ✓</th>
<th>family ✓</th>
<th>guy ✓</th>
<th>holiday ✓</th>
<th>key ✓</th>
<th>party ✓</th>
<th>way</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ -s:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Y → -IES:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS

| mouse → mice | child → children | half → halves | shelf → shelves |
| foot → feet | penny → pence | knife → knives | thief → thieves |
| tooth → teeth | person → people | leaf → leaves | wife → wives |
| man → men | potato → potatoes | loaf → loaves | sheep → sheep |
| woman → women | tomato → tomatoes | self → selves | fish → fish |

Simple present verbs have different forms after singular and plural nouns (see page 16).

This bus runs at weekends.  Most of the buses run at weekends.
My brother has a small flat.  Both my brothers have good jobs.

3 Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.

7 My ................. are giving me trouble. (tooth)
1 Our ................. play a lot of football. (child)
2 Those ................. don't look English. (student)
3 Some people ................. to talk to you. (want)
4 Big ................. are always dirty. (city)
5 Their ................. are travelling with them. (wife)
6 These knives ................. n't cut very well. (do)

10 The ................. are all wet. (match)
11 Who are those ................. ? (guy)
12 My parents ................. at home. (work)
13 How many ................. live here? (person)
Words for groups of people can have singular or plural verbs in British English. We often use plural verbs when we talk about personal actions (for example play, want, think).

The team is/are playing badly. My family want/wants me to study.

The government think/thinks taxes are too low.

Note the difference between England (the country) and England (the football team).

England has got a new prime minister. England have got a new manager.

Police is/are looking for a tall 30-year-old woman. (NOT The police is looking …)

### Group nouns (√) or not (X)?

- army ✓
- audience ✓
- beach ✓
- class X
- club ✓
- Communist Party ✓
- company ✓
- crowd X
- idea ✓
- lunch ✓
- question ✓
- room ✓
- school ✓
- train ✓

### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in plural verbs from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>are</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>haven't</th>
<th>need ✓</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>say</th>
<th>want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>The club</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>her to go to university.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The company</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>only ............</td>
<td>classical music.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Her family</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>scored a goal this year.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The orchestra</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>that they’re losing money.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>This team</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>a bigger room for their meetings.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>England</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>asking for information about the accident.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>The police</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>............</td>
<td>just lost against Germany.</td>
<td>......</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some nouns are always plural. Some common examples:

- trousers ✓
- jeans ✓
- tights ✓
- shorts ✓
- pants ✓
- pyjamas ✓
- glasses ✓
- scissors ✓

Those trousers are too short. (NOT That trouser …) Where are my glasses?

### Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

- black trousers ✓
- blue jeans ✓
- dark glasses ✓
- scissors ✓
- shorts ✓
- silk pyjamas ✓
- tights ✓

- Every time I see her she’s wearing blue jeans. 
- 1 I can’t see very well with these. 
- 2 It’s hot today. I’m going to put on. 
- 3 These don’t cut very well. 
- 4 You’d better put on your best for the interview. 
- 5 She always sleeps in. 
- 6 I’ve got a hole in my. again.

We can also use the expression a pair of with these nouns.

There is a pair of scissors on your chair. (NOT a scissors …) 

three pairs of jeans (NOT three jeans) two pairs of pyjamas (NOT two pyjamas)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
countable and uncountable nouns

**Countable nouns** are words like *car, book, chair*. They can be **singular** or **plural**.

**Uncountable nouns** are words like *petrol, rice, water*. They are only **singular**.

1. **Circle** the uncountable nouns.

   - cup
   - dog
   - flower
   - guitar
   - love
   - meat
   - music
   - ear
   - oil
   - photo
   - river
   - salt
   - snow
   - sugar
   - women
   - wool

2. The following words are uncountable in English (but countable in some other languages). They are normally **only singular**. We can use *some* with them, but not *a/an*. (NOT a travel, a furniture)

   - advice
   - baggage
   - bread
   - furniture
   - hair
   - information
   - knowledge
   - luck
   - luggage
   - news
   - spaghetti (and macaroni etc)
   - travel
   - work

   I need **some advice**.  This **furniture** is too expensive.  His **hair** is very long.  Travel rules you a lot.

3. **Put a with** the countable nouns and **some with** the uncountable nouns.

   - bread
   - cheque
   - baggage
   - fridge
   - furniture
   - handbag
   - holiday
   - knowledge
   - luck
   - newspaper
   - problem
   - station
   - travel
   - work

4. **Put in suitable uncountable nouns from the box.**

   - advice
   - baggage
   - furniture
   - hair
   - information
   - news
   - spaghetti
   - travel
   - work

   - Can you give me some .................... about the school?
   - ‘Have you got much .................................?’ ‘No, just one small bag.’
   - I live 50 kilometres from my work, so I spend a lot of money on ........................................
   - This ....................................... isn’t very good. You’ve cooked it for too long.
   - I’ve stopped reading the papers. The ........................................ is always bad.
   - I don’t know what to do. Can you give me some ....................?
   - All this ....................................... is from my mother’s house.
   - I’ve got too much ....................................... and not enough free time.
   - I like your ....................................... when it’s long like this.

   To give a countable meaning, we usually use a longer expression or a different word.

   Can you give me **a piece of advice**?  Did you have a **good journey**?

5. **Put in words or expressions from the box.**

   - a piece of advice
   - a piece of baggage
   - a piece of information
   - a piece of news
   - a job
   - a journey

   - a suitcase  ........................................
   - selling cars ........................................
   - driving from London to Edinburgh ........................................
   - ‘Don’t marry him, dear.’ ........................................
   - ‘The next train leaves at 10.15.’ ........................................
   - ‘There has been a big train crash.’ ........................................

   For articles with countable and uncountable nouns, see page 153.
Some words can be **countable** or **uncountable**, with different meanings.

A **light** was on in the house. (= 'a lamp')

**Light** travels at 300,000 km a second.

I've seen that film **three times**.

**Time** goes fast when you're having fun.

I had a strange **experience** yesterday.

We need a secretary with **experience**.

Three **coffees**, please. (= 'cups of coffee')

I drink too much **coffee**.

---

5. Look at the pictures and put in descriptions from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a chicken</th>
<th>chocolate</th>
<th>a glass</th>
<th>an iron</th>
<th>a paper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>iron</td>
<td>paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

6. **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: containers**

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then use them to complete the descriptions under the pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bag</th>
<th>bottle</th>
<th>box</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>jar</th>
<th>jug</th>
<th>mug</th>
<th>packet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. a .......... of water
2. a .......... of water
3. a .......... of chocolates
4. a .......... of tea
5. a .......... of coffee
6. a .......... of honey
7. a .......... of soup
8. a .......... of onions
9. a .......... of orange juice
10. a .......... of biscuits

---

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don't/) and full forms (for example /am, do not/) are possible. Normally both are correct.
one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair

We often use one instead of repeating a countable noun.

'What sort of car would you like?' A big one. (= 'A big car') (NOT 'A big')

That was a great party. Let's have another one soon.

The plural is ones.

'Which are your gloves?' The ones on the chair.

1 Complete the sentences with one(s), using words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>another</th>
<th>green</th>
<th>blue</th>
<th>last</th>
<th>new</th>
<th>this</th>
<th>small</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I bought a blue shirt and two green ones.
2. That shop isn't as good as .................................
3. My TV's broken. I must get .................................
4. She's finished her apple. She wants .................................
5. That bus is the ............................................ tonight.
6. 'Another piece of cake?'
7. 'Just a ............................................'
8. I don't like the red shoes. I prefer the ............................................

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

Use words from the box.

| big | black | blue | fast | glass | green | red | slow | small | white | wooden |

1. Which table do you prefer? The glass one.
OR The wooden one.
2. Which house do you prefer? .................................
3. Which sweater do you prefer? .................................
4. Which car do you prefer? .................................
5. Which dog do you prefer? .................................
6. Which flower do you prefer? .................................

We say one, not a one, when there is no adjective.

'What sort of cake would you like?' One with a lot of cream. (NOT 'A one with ...')

'Is there a garage near here?' There's one in Weston Street.

3 Write some true sentences. Use the expressions in the box.

I've already got one. I haven't got one. I need one. I need a new one.
I don't need one. I'd like one. I don't want one.

1. a computer I don't need one.
2. a bicycle .................................
3. a fast car .................................
4. a cup of coffee .................................
5. a tennis racket .................................
6. a raincoat .................................
7. a rich uncle .................................

We only use one for countable nouns (see page 198).

'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, black (coffee), please.' (NOT 'Yes, black one ...')
How to make possessive forms

- **Singular nouns:** + 's
  - My son's car
  - John and Iris's flat
  - The cat's leg

- **Most plural nouns:** + 's
  - Those boys' passports
  - The babies' toys
  - Our wives' stories

- **Plurals without s:** + 's
  - Most children's poems
  - Three men's names
  - The people's voices

1. Make possessive forms by adding 's or '.

   - my mother's nose
   - my sisters' names
   - Alice and John's house
   - artists' ideas
   - my dog's ears
   - those dogs' ears
   - those men's faces
   - his girlfriend's piano
   - their grandchild's birthday
   - their grandchildren's school
   - ladies' hats
   - 10. my aunt and uncle's shop
   - 11. Patrick's books
   - 12. a photographer's job
   - 13. our postman's cat
   - 14. postmen's uniforms
   - 15. Joyce's pen
   - 16. the thief's bag
   - 17. the thieves' car
   - 18. that woman's brother
   - 19. most women's desks
   - 20. your mum and dad's bedroom

2. Correct the mistakes and write the correct sentences.

   - This is the children's room.
   - This is the children's room.
   - 1. That big building is a girl's school.
   - 2. Is this your mother's office?
   - 3. May I speak to the bosses secretary?
   - 4. What's Jane and Peters' address?
   - 5. This is a picture of my grandfather's wedding.
   - 6. Do you know John's new girlfriend?
   - 7. She writes for a women's magazine.
   - 8. Is that Roberts' car?
   - 9. Let me have Ruth's and Jack's phone number.
   - 10. What's your wife's job?

3. Write the possessive expressions.

   - My son has a teacher. She has a husband.
   - My son's teacher's husband
   - 1. My sister has a secretary. She has an office
   - 2. Jane has children. They have bicycles.
   - 3. Rob has a family. They have a holiday flat.
   - 4. Olivia has a boyfriend. He has a cat.
   - 5. The Prime Minister has a wife. He has a problem.
   - 6. Luke has an uncle. He has a farm.
   - 7. Mr Patterson has a doctor. She has a car.
   - 8. The President has a niece. She has a business.
   - 9. Charlotte has a boss. He has a wife.
   - 10. The Director has a husband. He has a friend. She has a mother. She has a cousin.

---

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
's and s' possessive: use lan's car; the boss's car

Possessive nouns with ' or s' take the place of the.

the car that belongs to lan → lan's car (NOT lan's the car) the shoes that belong to Jo → Jo's shoes

But a possessive noun can have its own article.

the car that belongs to the boss → the boss's car the shoes that belong to the children → the children's shoes

1 Make ' or s' possessive structures.

- The dog belongs to Joe. Joe's dog
- The dog belongs to the postman. the postman's dog
- The house belongs to Astrid.
- The house belongs to the doctors.
- The book belongs to Oliver and Carla.
- The car belongs to the teacher.
- The money belongs to the girls.
- The money belongs to Susan.

2 Change the sentences.

- The classes are using the new books. (the French teachers) The French teachers' classes are using the new books.
- The car is parked in front of the house. (the builder; Anna) The car is parked in front of the postman's house.
- Do you know the address? (the tall woman) Do you know the postman's address?
- Their bedtime is eight o'clock. (the children) Their bedtime is eight o'clock.
- The brothers are all in the army. (Alice and Pat) The brothers are all in the army.

We use possessive 's and s' mostly to talk about people and animals, not things: for example their possessions, experience, relationships (family, friends etc), parts of the body.

Ann's purse Ann's English lessons Ann's holiday Ann's husband Ann's friend
my dad's book (NOT the book of my dad) my horse's ears (NOT the ears of my horse)
BUT the roof of the house (NOT the house's roof) the top of my desk (NOT my desk's top)

3 Write two sentences for each item.

- Is the door open? (Paul; the library) Is Paul's door open? Is the door of the library open?
- What's the name? (your brother; that book)
- Is there anything in the pockets? (the children; that coat)
- You can see the church from the window. (Emma; the living room)
- Why are the arms so dirty? (John; your chair)
With some common time words, we add ’s to say how long something takes.

*a second’s thought   a minute’s silence*

4 Choose a time expression for each sentence. Use the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>second</th>
<th>minute</th>
<th>hour</th>
<th>day</th>
<th>week</th>
<th>year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- ‘Who was it?’ I asked. There was a pause before she answered. *a second’s pause*
- After university, Les took a course to become a teacher.
- Lin had a holiday with her mother earlier this year.
- Sita’s new job will mean a drive to work every morning.
- There was a wait while the computer started up.

We can use noun + ’s or ’s without another noun, if the meaning is clear.

‘Whose coat is that?’ *Harry’s.* My hair is dark, but *my children’s* is fair.

We also use noun + ’s or ’s without another noun for offices, churches and some shops.

I bought this at Sainsbury’s. I hate going to the dentist’s. She sings at St. John’s.

5 Look at the picture. There is some confusion. Complete the sentences as in the example.

| Mr Brown | Sergeant Harper | Aunt Matilda | Texas Joe | Queen Lobelia | Oleg |

- The rope is probably Texas Joe’s.
- The handbag is probably ……………………………………….
- The gun …………………………………………………
- The crown …………………………………………………
- The big shoes ………………………………………………
- The document case ……………………………………………

We often use noun + ’s or ’s without another noun to talk about people’s homes.

I saw Monica at June and Barry’s on Friday. Lee is going to his sister’s next weekend.

6 Other people’s homes: write about two or more things in your past. Use at …’s or at …’s.

I met my girlfriend at Judy’s. I went to my grandparents’ for Easter.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
We can put one noun before another when we are talking about a kind of thing or person. The first noun is usually singular, even if it has a plural meaning.

- milk chocolate = a kind of chocolate, with milk in it
- chocolate milk = a kind of milk, with chocolate in it
- flower shop = shop that sells flowers (NOT flowers-shop)
- corner shop = a shop on a corner
- hotel receptionist = a receptionist in a hotel
- history teacher = a teacher who teaches history

**1.** Use the words in the box to make noun + noun structures. You can use some of the words more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>army</th>
<th>aspirin</th>
<th>business</th>
<th>corner</th>
<th>email</th>
<th>flower</th>
<th>garden</th>
<th>home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>perfume</td>
<td>police</td>
<td>pop</td>
<td>prison</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 3 kinds of shop: flower shop, corner shop, village shop
- 1 3 kinds of address
- 2 3 kinds of bottle
- 3 3 kinds of singer
- 4 2 kinds of wall
- 5 3 kinds of uniform
- 6 2 kinds of chair

**2.** Change the expressions in the box to noun + noun structures, and put the beginnings and ends together. Remember: don’t make the first noun plural.

| clothes for babies | make-up for eyes | building with offices in it | food for dogs | engineer who works on computers | school of languages | drawer for knives |

- 0 Judy wears too much eye make-up to the office
- 1 They’re going to put a big building in it
- 2 Our dog won’t eat building in it
- 3 The building looked at my printer
- 4 Do you know of a good building in it?
- 5 My aunt made some lovely building in it
- 6 Why are the spoons in the building in it?

**3.** Write noun + noun names for these.

- soup with chicken in it: chicken soup
- 1 a box made of metal
- 2 cakes with chocolate in them
- 3 a fork made of plastic
- 4 soup made of vegetables
- 5 a jacket made of leather
- 6 shirts made of cotton
- 7 a plate made of paper
- 8 salad with tomatoes in it
- 9 a wall made of stones
We often use noun + noun structures when the second noun is made from a verb + er.

*a truck driver = a person who drives a truck
*a hair dryer = a machine for drying hair

What do we call these people or things?

1. This person drives a bus. .................................................. a bus driver
2. This person manages an office. ..............................................
3. This machine makes coffee. ..................................................
4. This person drinks coffee. ....................................................
5. This person loves animals. ....................................................
6. This stuff cleans floors. .......................................................
7. This person plays tennis. .....................................................
8. This thing opens letters. .....................................................
9. This person climbs mountains. ...........................................

NOUN + NOUN STRUCTURE OR 'S / S' POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE

We mostly use 's or s' when the first noun possesses, experiences or has a relationship with the second noun. We use a noun + noun structure for other kinds of meaning. So things do not usually take 's / s'. Compare:

the dog's name (possession: the dog has a name) 
Rita's accident (experience: Rita had an accident)
Ed's brother (relationship: Ed has a brother) 
Annie's secretary is Ellen's best friend. (relationships)

But a shoe brush (the shoe doesn't possess or experience the brush; shoes don't have relationships)

Circle the correct answers.

2. Is that your teacher's book / teacher book, or is it yours?
3. Elizabeth's journey / Elizabeth journey took her to five continents.
4. The train's journey / train journey from Huntsville to Victoria was very boring.
5. My aunt's home / aunt home is full of beautiful furniture.
6. Our holiday's home / holiday home is in the French Alps.
7. My brother's interview / brother interview with the president will be on the radio today.
8. I was very nervous about my job's interview / job interview.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: one-word noun + noun structures

Some short noun + noun structures are so common that we write them as one word, for example:

armchair bathroom bedroom bookshop businessman businesswoman hairbrush
handbag raincoat postman postwoman schoolchild suitcase toothbrush toothpaste

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
nouns: more practice

1 Countable or uncountable? Put in a/an or some.
   We need a new bed.
   We need some new furniture.
   Can you give me some advice?
   Can you buy some bread while you're out?
   I've got some work to do this evening.
   I've got a difficult job to do today.
   Ann gave me some good news.
   Can you give me some advice?
   I need a new taxi, because I've got some heavy luggage.
   Did you have a good journey?
   I've just had a good idea.
   I must give you important information.

2 Special plurals. Put in three different plural nouns which have no singular.
   a pair of
   a pair of
   a pair of

3 Singular or plural? Correct (✓) or not (x)?
   The team are playing well.
   The police don't usually carry guns in Britain.
   My family have moved to Manchester.
   He buys too much clothes.
   I bought two new blue jeans yesterday.
   People are all different.
   Are those your pyjamas?
   I need a new pair of glasses.
   I don't like that people very much.
   The government are in trouble again.

4 Possessive forms. Correct the mistakes.
   What's your mother's phone number? mother's
   That's the Peter's house.
   She writes childrens' books.
   That building is a boy's school.
   This is my fathers office.
   I want to talk to the boss secretary's.
   We're going round to Jane's and Peter place.
   Here's a photo of my parent's wedding.
   Is this the teachers book?
   Johns' friends are all here.
   He only reads mens' magazines.

5 Noun + noun. Write shorter descriptions of these people and things.
   Chocolate with fruit and nuts in it: fruit and nut chocolate
   A person who makes toys: a toy maker
   A shop that sells shoes
   Juice taken from oranges
   A jacket made of leather
   A person who drives trains
   A table where you can drink coffee
   A person who cleans windows
   People who read the news (on TV)
   A magazine about computers
   A market in the street
   A watch made of gold
6 Noun + noun. What are these people? Put together words from the two boxes and write the descriptions.

bird bus butterfly computer dog glass hockey
maths mountain road tennis

blower climber collector driver player
programmer sweeper teacher trainer watcher

▶ a hockey player
1 ........................................ 2 ........................................ 3 ........................................

4 ........................................ 5 ........................................ 6 ........................................ 7 ........................................

8 ........................................ 9 ........................................ 10 ........................................

7 Grammar in a text. Read the text and circle the correct forms.

In the centre of Mappleford / Mappleford centre there’s a large ancient covered market with all sorts of interesting shops: 1 shops of clothes / clothes shops, butchers, grocers, jewellers etc etc. But my favourite place in the market is Joe’s Café. It’s a real 2 business of family / family business: Joe, 3 the wife of Joe / Joe’s wife, his sons, his 4 son’s / sons’ wives, his daughter and his 5 daughter’s / daughters’ boyfriend all work there at different times. It’s not luxurious – there are 6 tables and chairs of plastic / plastic tables and chairs – but it’s excellent value. Joe’s café is the best place in town for a full English breakfast. For a few pounds, you get a big plate of eggs, bacon and sausages, as much toast and butter as you can eat, and an enormous cup of tea. All sorts of people 7 have / has breakfast at 8 Joe / Joe’s, from professors to 9 drivers of buses / bus drivers / bus’s drivers. When they’ve all gone off to work, Joe and his family have time for a short rest, and then the café starts filling up with tourists who have come to try Joe’s famous 10 cake of chocolate / chocolate cake.

If you’re ever in Mappleford, take my advice and visit Joe’s Café.

8 Internet exercise. Checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following expressions get most hits? So which are correct?

“a heavy baggage” 822  “some heavy baggage” 9200
“a coffee table” .................. “a table coffee” ..................
“the President’s birthday” .................. “the birthday of the President” ..................
“a bus driver” .................. “a bus’s driver” .................. “a driver of bus” ..................
“a gold watch” .................. “a watch of gold” ..................
nouns: revision test

1 Write the plurals.
   bus ...........  fox ...........  journey ...........  match ...........  book ...........
   table ...........  foot ...........  person ...........  knife ...........  mouse ...........
   dog ...........  day ...........  family ...........  woman ...........  leaf ...........
   man ...........  child ...........  car ...........  wife ...........  baby ...........

2 Which nouns can be plural? Write the plural or x.
   note ...........  3 idea ...........  7 furniture ...........
   money ...........  4 duck ...........  8 government ...........
   1 information ...........  5 knowledge ...........  9 class ...........
   2 bread ...........  6 journey ...........  10 traffic ...........

3 Circle the correct forms.
   1 My cousin is a tennis player / player of tennis / tennis's player.
   2 The police is / are looking for a tall thin man.
   3 I'm going to have a sleep of an hour / an hour sleep / an hour's sleep now.
   4 Do you read woman's / women's / women's magazines?
   5 I like travelling to other countries / countries / countrys.
   6 'Coffee?' 'Yes, please. One large / Large one / A large one / A large.'
   7 Could you give me some information / informations?
   8 England is / are leading by 4 goals to 2.
   9 My sister works in a flower shop / flowers shop / shop flower / shop's flower.

4 Correct the mistakes.
   He's bought two new trousers / pairs of trousers.
   1 I like eating chocolate milk.
   2 My parents lived all their lifes in Dublin.
   3 I like looking round books shops.
   4 Who was the people who came to see you?
   5 Peter is my son's sister.
   6 I like those gloves. How much are the blue?
   7 It's a nice jacket, but I'd like a one with pockets.
   8 You will never be a player of football.
   9 Marco Polo wrote a book about his journeys.
   10 'Where did you buy it?' 'In the market of street.'
   11 We spent the weekend at my brother.
   12 A vet is a doctor of animals.
   13 The mother of Anna speaks good Spanish.
   14 My father gave me earrings of silver for my birthday.
   15 Can I have some oranges juice?
   16 Birmingham, Liverpool and Manchester are three important citys in England.
   17 I couldn't open the house's door
   18 There's the Peter's house
   19 Do you have the address of Emma?
   20 I've got a big work to do today.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Adjectives are words like easy, slow, sorry, important. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after some verbs (e.g. be, seem, look).

an easy job    a slow train    I'm sorry    This letter looks important.

Adverbs are words like easily, slowly, yesterday, there. Adverbs tell you, for example, how, when or where something happens.

I won the game easily.    Please speak slowly.    She arrived yesterday.
Adjectives go before, not after nouns.

- A long journey (NOT a journey long)
- Loud music (NOT music loud)

Adjectives don’t change for singular and plural.

- A fast car (NOT fasts cars)

Before nouns, we don’t usually put and between adjectives.

- A big bad wolf (NOT a-big-and-bad wolf)

Colour adjectives usually come after others.

- Beautiful red apples (NOT red beautiful apples)

1. Put in the adjectives and write the story.

One day, a time ago, (long fine)
a girl (beautiful little)
in a coat (red)
was walking through a forest (dark)
with a bag (big)
of apples (red wonderful)
to see her grandmother (old)
Under a tree (tall green)
she saw a wolf (big bad)
with teeth. (white long)

2. Put the words in the correct order and continue the story.

‘good little girl morning’, said
big the bad wolf.
‘going you where are
that with bag heavy
day this fine on?’
‘going my see to grandmother I’m old’
girl the said little.
‘lives small she in house a
new the supermarket near.’

3. Put in adjectives from the box to finish the story.

OK, said the wolf in a 1 voice.
‘I’ll see you later. I don’t think so,’ said
the 2 girl, who was not
3 . She took a 4 pistol out of her bag and shot the wolf dead.

(from an idea by James Thurber)
Adjectives can go after be, become, get, seem, look (= 'seem') and feel.

The water is cold. Everything became clear. It's getting late. You seem tired.
She looks happy. I feel hot.

After these verbs, we put and before the last of two or more adjectives.

He was tall, dark and handsome. (NOT He was tall, dark, handsome.) You look well and happy.

4 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, using words from the box.

and and beautiful cold hungry intelligent tired

1 She is .................................................. 2 He looks ..................................................

5 Make sentences.

1 'Jack / very / tall / be' .................................................. 'Yes, he's nearly 2 metres.'
2 'expensive / that / look / car' .................................................. 'No, it's cheap.'
3 'seem / happy / Adele' .................................................. 'She's in love again.'
4 'ill / tired / and / feel / I' .................................................. 'Shall I call the doctor?'
5 'dark / very early here in winter / get / it' ..................................................
6 'getting / my parents / old' ..................................................

6 Make sentences with adjectives from the box.

Australian bad beautiful hot late rich

1 This water / not be very / ...... This water isn't very hot.
2 'The train / be / ......' .................................................. 'No, it's on time.'
3 'He / look / ......' .................................................. 'No, he's American.'
4 'Your hair / look / ......' .................................................. 'Oh, thanks.'
5 My memory / getting very / ...... ..................................................
6 I want / become ...... / and famous ..................................................

We don't usually use adjectives without nouns.

'Polly's ill.' The poor girl.' (NOT The poor.)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Adjectives are connected with nouns and pronouns. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after be, seem, look etc (see pages 210–211). Adverbs are connected with other words — for example verbs. Some adverbs tell you how something happens. These often end in -ly.

It's an easy language.  
The music is slow.  
Her ideas are interesting.  
Joe looked hungry.

Choose an adjective or an adverb.

1. Could I have a ................. word with you? (quick / quickly)
2. She walked away ................. (quick / quickly)
3. This is a ................. train — it stops everywhere. (slow / slowly)
4. He talked very ................. about his work. (interesting / interestingly)
5. You've cooked the meat ................. (beautiful / beautifully)
6. I've got an ................. job for you. (easy / easily)
7. She writes in ................. English. (perfect / perfectly)
8. I sing very ................. (bad / badly)
9. I feel ................. today. (happy / happily)
10. You seem very ................. (angry / angrily)

HOW TO MAKE -LY ADVERBS

1. usually: adjective + -ly  
2. -y → -ily  
3. -ble → -bly  
   quick → quickly  
   easy → easily  
   possible → possibly

Write the adverbs.

1. wrong ................. 4. thirsty ................. 8. wonderful .................
2. final ................. 5. probable ................. 9. cold .................
3. sincere ................. 6. usual ................. 10. unhappy .................
4. nice ................. 7. nice ................. 11. comfortable .................

WEST
HAGBOURNE
Please drive slowly

EAST
HAGBOURNE
Please drive carefully
Some adverbs tell you when, where or how much something happens.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She speaks</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They make</td>
<td>very good bread</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I bought</td>
<td>a lot of clothes</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We didn't enjoy</td>
<td>the holiday</td>
<td>much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like</td>
<td>sport</td>
<td>very much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These adverbs often come at the end of a sentence. They do not come between the verb and the object.

### Make sentences with adverbs from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

- **carefully**
- **clearly**
- **correctly**
- **perfectly**
- **slowly**
- **tomorrow**
- **much**
- **yesterday**

**1. Make sentences with adverbs from the box.**

- **Cook the soup slowly.** OR **Cook the soup carefully.**

  1. **the / read / I / letter**
  2. **computer / bought / a / I**
  3. **name / your / write**
  4. **see / must / the / doctor / you**
  5. **languages / speaks / he / four**
  6. **the / you / write / address / didn’t**
  7. **skiing / don’t like / I**
  8. **speak / and / please (two adverbs)**

### Write about six things that you like very much.

1. I like ______________________ very much.
2. ____________________________
3. ____________________________
4. ____________________________
5. ____________________________
6. ____________________________

### Complete the sentences with words from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

- **badly**
- **beautifully**
- **completely**
- **extremely**
- **happily**
- **nearly**
- **terribly**
- **very well**

**1. Joe and Ann have been ______________ married for twenty-five years.**

  1. I’m _____________________ sorry to tell you that we have no more tickets.
  2. There’s nothing to eat – the fridge is ___________________ empty.
  3. The book’s ___________________ written but it’s not very interesting.
  4. After walking all day, David was ___________________ tired.
  5. The food here is ___________________ cooked but they don’t give you enough.
  6. ‘Is your new house ready yet?’ ‘No, but it’s ___________________ finished.’
  7. Languages were ___________________ taught at my school, so I didn’t learn much French.
  8. I’m _____________________ pleased to tell you that you’ve passed your exam.
adverbs with the verb *often, certainly* etc

Some adverbs, for example *always* or *certainly*, usually go with *the verb*.

**how often:** always often usually sometimes ever hardly ever (= ‘almost never’) never

**how certainly:** certainly definitely probably

**other:** already also just still even only

These *adverbs* go before most verbs, but after auxiliary verbs (*have, will, can, must* etc) and after *am/are/is/was/were*.

**Before most verbs**

I *always read* in the evenings.

Andy *often goes* to New York.

She *hardly ever sees* him.

I *certainly like* London.

We *only want* to see Barbara.

Jack *already knows* Sophie.

**After auxiliary verbs and am etc**

I *have always* enjoyed reading.

He *can often* get cheap flights.

He is *hardly ever* at home.

It *will certainly* rain tomorrow.

We are *only* here to see Barbara.

Jack *has already met* Sophie.

**Put the adverbs in the correct places.**

1. I speak French, but people know that I’m English. *(often; always)*
   
   I *often speak French, but people always know that I’m English.*

2. Andy *often goes* to New York.

3. She *hardly ever sees* him.

4. I *certainly like* London.

5. We *only want* to see Barbara.

6. Jack *already knows* Sophie.

**In questions, these adverbs usually go after auxiliary verb + subject.**

Do you *ever* write poems? Has Mary *always* lived here? Are you *often* in London?

**Put the adverbs in the correct places.**

1. Do you *play* cards? *(often)*

2. Have you *been* to Tibet? *(ever)*

3. Are you *happy*? *(always)*

4. Does the boss *take a holiday*? *(ever)*

5. Do you *eat* in restaurants? *(usually)*

6. Is Bethany *ill*? *(still)*

---

214 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS
Longer expressions usually go at the end of a sentence. Compare:

- She **often** plays tennis.  She plays tennis **two or three times a week**.
- She **hardly ever** wins a game.  She wins a game **once or twice a month**.
- She **always** practises.  **Does she practise every afternoon?**

3. Look at the table and make some sentences with **often, once a day etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITY</th>
<th>EVA</th>
<th>TOM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goes swimming</td>
<td>1/d*</td>
<td>1/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays football</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>3/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays tennis</td>
<td>1/w</td>
<td>1/y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes skiing</td>
<td>5–6/y</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to the theatre</td>
<td>1/w</td>
<td>2–3/y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to the cinema</td>
<td>3–4/y</td>
<td>2/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to concerts</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1/w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1/d = once a day;
2/m = twice a month; etc.

Eva **often goes swimming.**
Eva goes swimming **once a day / every day.**
Tom goes to the theatre **two or three times a year.**

4. **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: go with spare-time activities**

Look at the pictures, and put the correct numbers with the activities. Use a dictionary if necessary.

**IN YOUR SPARE TIME YOU CAN:**
- go walking
- go climbing
- go swimming
- go sailing
- go wind-surfing
- go skiing
- go skating
- go fishing
- go shopping
- go to the opera
- go to the theatre
- go to concerts

5. **Write some sentences about your spare-time activities. Use words from Exercises 1–4.**

- I **never go climbing.**
- I go **swimming every day.**

1. .................................................................
2. .................................................................
3. .................................................................
4. .................................................................
5. .................................................................
6. .................................................................
7. .................................................................
8. .................................................................
interested and interesting etc

Interested, bored, excited etc say how people feel. Interesting, boring, exciting etc describe the things (or people) that cause the feelings.

She's very interested in the lessons. (NOT She's very interesting in the lessons.) The lessons are always interesting. (NOT The lessons are always interested.) I'm often bored at work, because I've got a boring job.

1 Write these words under the pictures: interested, interesting, bored, boring.

1 .................................. 2 .................................. 3 .................................. 4 ..................................  

2 Put in words from the box.

annoyed (= 'a little angry') ✓ annoying excited exciting frightened frightening surprised surprising

1 Somebody phones you late at night. You are ........................................... He/she is ...........................................

2 A woman hears noises at night. She is ............................................. The noises are ..............................................

3 A family makes ................................... holiday plans. The children are very .............................................

4 Your exam mark is very good. This is ............................................. And you are .............................................

3 Here are the beginnings of five books. Write what you think of the books. Use very interesting, quite interesting, not very interesting, quite boring or very boring.

1 After King Leofric died in 1342, ...
   I think this book is probably .............................................

2 The moment Olga walked into Alan's office, he realised his life had changed for ever ...
   I think ..............................................................

3 Since the beginning of history, cats ...
   ..............................................................

4 The man in black had already killed five people that morning. The sixth ...
   ..............................................................

5 Four billion years ago, our world ...
   ..............................................................

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: adverbs of degree; subjects of study

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write how interested you are in some of the subjects. You can use extremely (= +++), very, quite, not very, not or not at all (= -- --).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>art</th>
<th>biology</th>
<th>economics</th>
<th>history</th>
<th>literature</th>
<th>mathematics</th>
<th>philosophy</th>
<th>physics</th>
<th>politics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm extremely interested in ..................................</td>
<td>I'm ..............................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm very bored by .............................................</td>
<td>..............................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not at all ..................................................</td>
<td>..............................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly, …

Fast, hard, late, early, daily, weekly and monthly are adjectives and adverbs.

He's got a fast car.  He drives fast.  I got an early flight.  I went home early.
It's hard work.  She works hard.  It's a weekly paper.  I buy it weekly.
The train was late.  Trains are running late.

Hardly and lately have different meanings from hard and late.

Hardly = 'almost not'; lately = 'recently', 'not long ago'

He hardly works these days – maybe one day a week.  Have you heard from John lately?

Well can be an adjective (the opposite of ill) or an adverb (the opposite of badly).

‘How are you?’  ‘Very well, thanks.’  The team are playing well.

These are sentences from real conversations. Put in words from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>early</th>
<th>hard</th>
<th>hardly</th>
<th>weekly</th>
<th>well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>And I really understand Italian quite .....................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>You've got no playschool tomorrow so you haven't got to get up ....................., have you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Why should I work  ..................... when you never do anything?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Departures from the UK are  ..................... mid-morning on Sundays from Dover.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She was really, you know, nervous, and  ..................... came out of her flat at all.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the best answer.

► You look  ..................... , Mike. (early / lately / well)
  1  Your father read the  ..................... Express when he was alive. (hardly / Daily / lately)
  2  You haven't seen the window cleaner  ..................... , have you? (lately / hard / weekly)
  3  I ran as  ..................... as I could, along the Tottenham Court Road. (early / fast / hardly)
  4  I  ..................... sleep – an hour at a time. (well / hard / hardly)
  5  I got up  ..................... to finish some work. (well / hardly / early)
  6  My daughter cooks really  ..................... . (hardly / well / lately)
  7  I went to bed very  ..................... last night. (late / lately / hardly)
  8  I go to Cambridge  ..................... for a business meeting. (well / hardly / weekly)
  9  I need a rest. I've been working  ..................... all week. (lately / hard / hardly)
  10  My grandfather hasn't been very well  ..................... (early / lately / daily)

Friendly, lovely, silly are adjectives, not adverbs.

She gave me a friendly smile. (BUT NOT She smiled friendly.)
He was very lonely. (BUT NOT He walked lonely through the streets.)
Her voice is lovely. (BUT NOT She sings lovingly.)  Don't be silly.

There are no adverbs friendly, lovely etc. Instead, we use other words or expressions.

She spoke in a friendly way.  She sings beautifully.

Correct (✓) or not (x)?

1  He spoke very friendly, but I didn’t like him. .......
2  You have a lovely smile. .......
3  He's not stupid, but he sometimes talks really silly. .......
4  He doesn't speak English very well, but he writes it lovely. .......
5  I gave her a friendly look, but she turned away. .......

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
adjectives and adverbs: more practice

1 Word order.  
Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?  

- She’s a good cook.  
1 She was driving a fast car.  
2 She speaks Chinese.  
3 She speaks Chinese.  
4 I lost my keys.  
5 I’ve got a meeting tomorrow.  
6 Anna read Peter’s letter.  
7 Tim plays the piano.  
8 Lucy is unhappy.  
9 They make very good ice cream.  
10 She’s been unmarried for 15 years.  

4 Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct words for the caption.  

She’s a good cook.  

2 She was driving a fast car.  
3 She speaks Chinese.  
4 I lost my keys.  
5 I’ve got a meeting tomorrow.  
6 Anna read Peter’s letter.  
7 Tim plays the piano.  
8 Lucy is unhappy.  
9 They make very good ice cream.  
10 She’s been unmarried for 15 years.  

1 Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct answers.  

1 You are making a terrible / terribly mistake.  
2 She walked up the steps slow / slowly.  
3 It was raining very hard / hardly when I got up.  
4 The boss is a really friend / friendly person.  
5 I cook very bad / badly.  
6 Amelia looks very unhappy / unhappily.  
7 I’m extreme / extremely sorry I arrived so late / lately.  
8 I drove very careful / carefully on the snow.  
9 I was late / lately because of a problem with the trains.  
10 I’ve complete / completely forgotten his name.  
11 Your hair looks beautiful / beautifully.  
12 He doesn’t work very hard / hardly.  
13 I can’t understand her. She talks very unclear / unclearly.  
14 The President spoke in perfect / perfectly French.  
15 This letter isn’t very good / well written.  

3 Adverbs with the verb. Write sentences about yourself.  

1 I often ..................................................  
2 I never ................................................................  
3 I am sometimes ..................................................  
4 I usually ................................................................  
5 I have often .....................................................  
6 I have never ......................................................  
7 I have always ....................................................  
8 I am certainly ....................................................  
9 I will probably ...................................................  
10 I will definitely ...............................................  

218 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS
5 Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

- She was wearing a red beautiful coat. **a beautiful red coat**
- There are films interesting on TV tonight. **There are interesting films on TV tonight.**
- He's tall, dark, good-looking. **He's tall, dark, and good-looking.**
- I am very interesting in the lessons. **I am interested in the lessons.**
- 'Emma's got appendicitis.' 'The poor!' **Emma has appendicitis. 'The poor!'**
- There were some difficulties questions. **There were some difficult questions.**
- The boss always talks to us friendly. **The boss always talks to us friendly.**
- My mother speaks very well Arabic. **My mother speaks very well Arabic.**
- You look beautifully in that dress. **You look beautiful in that dress.**
- I like very much this music. **I like this music very much.**
- I'm terrible sorry! **I'm very sorry!**
- I lost yesterday my glasses. **I lost my glasses yesterday.**
- She smiled happy when I walked in. **She smiled happily when I walked in.**
- We speak usually Spanish together. **We usually speak Spanish together.**
- I worked hardly, but I failed the exam. **I worked hard, but I failed the exam.**

6 Grammar in a text. Put in adjectives or adverbs from the box.

- daily early fast friendly hard hardly late lonely silly

I don't like getting up early so I usually stay in bed too long, and then have to eat breakfast very 1 ____________ and run for my train. On the train I read the 2 ____________ paper, because after I get to work there's no more time for reading. The boss is nice, but she makes us work very 3 ____________, and I often have to stay 4 ____________ to finish everything. There's a nice new secretary in the office. I 5 ____________ know her, but she always gives me a 6 ____________ smile when I arrive. She hasn't lived here long. Perhaps it's a 7 ____________ idea, but I wonder if she's 8 ____________ I think I'll ask her out.

7 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: nouns and adjectives. Find the answers. Use a dictionary to help you. Different answers are possible.

- a bed a light apples children coffee hair holidays milk skin water

- It can be cold, warm or hot. **water**
- It can be strong or weak. **It can be strong or weak.**
- It can be deep or shallow. **It can be deep or shallow.**
- They can be long or short. **They can be long or short.**
- It can be dark or fair. **It can be dark or fair.**
- It can be bright or dim. **It can be bright or dim.**
- It can be hard or soft. **It can be hard or soft.**
- It can be rough or smooth. **It can be rough or smooth.**
- It can be fresh or sour. **It can be fresh or sour.**
- They can be sweet or sour. **They can be sweet or sour.**
- They can be quiet or noisy. **They can be quiet or noisy.**

8 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with hard and some with hardly. Write three of each.

1 ____________ 4 ____________
2 ____________ 5 ____________
3 ____________ 6 ____________

pronunciation for grammar  ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS 219
adjectives and adverbs: revision test

1 Write the adverbs.
   quick .................. real .................. complete .................. possible ..................
   happy .................. nice .................. easy .................. beautiful ..................
   probable .................. usual .................. incredible ..................
   unhappy .................. right .................. sincere .................. hungry ..................
   careful .................. perfect .................. warm .................. angry ..................
   comprehensible .................. slow ..................

2 Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?
   It's a /day. (nice)
   I saw a good film. (yesterday)
   Andy can help you. (definitely)
   You speak Russian. (very well)
   She smiles. (never)
   Alice had some ideas. (really interesting)
   They sell very good clothes. (here)
   I have been to Norway. (never)

3 Correct (✓) or not (X)?
   I had a headache very bad.   X
   Read this now. ✓
   She makes wonderfully soup. ....
   I spoke to them very slow and clear. ....
   It snowed very hard yesterday. ....
   That secretary isn't very friendly. ....
   I sing terribly bad. ....
   Your baby looks really happy. ....
   I'm sorry I got here so lately. ....

4 These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?
   He was wearing black old boots.  old black boots
   He's short, fat, stupid-looking. ...........................................
   We usually are at home on Saturdays. ...........................................
   I am boring in the science lessons. ...........................................
   People never will stop fighting. ...........................................
   I listen always to the news at breakfast. ...........................................
   ‘Jenny's in hospital.’ ‘The poor!’ ...........................................
   We often have been to India. ...........................................
   We're terrible late. ...........................................
   They stood up slow when we walked in. ...........................................
   The weather already is getting better. ...........................................
   Never you tell me what you are thinking. ...........................................
   Your hair looks beautifully today. ...........................................
   John probably has forgotten my name again. ...........................................
   I don't like you driving so fastly. ...........................................
   Please speak slow. ...........................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
SECTION 16 comparison

grammar summary

We can compare people and things with each other using as ... as, -er than or more ... than.

Joe's as tall as me.  Jane's taller than me.  She works more carefully than me.

We can use -est or most to compare people and things with all of their group.

John is the oldest of Mary's children.  Nasima's the most intelligent person in the class.

We use -er and -est with shorter adjectives and some short adverbs; we use more and most with other adjectives and adverbs.

For smaller kitchens,

the smallest dishwasher in the world

We can make your car go faster.

The finest vegetables you've ever tasted

The sooner you come to us, the sooner you'll find the job you want.

London's wildest nightclub

'Best sports car of the year'
- it's bigger, lighter, stronger and faster.

100% Organic Soup
Nothing could be more comforting

The world's longest running musical:
Les Misérables

30% CHEAPER
20% FASTER
50% BETTER

30% CHEAPER
20% FASTER
50% BETTER

20% FASTER
50% BETTER
# Comparative and Superlative Adjectives: Forms

**Comparative** adjectives are forms like *colder, more famous.*
**Superlative** adjectives are forms like *coldest, most famous.*

### Most Short (One-Syllable) Adjectives
- **Forms:** + -er, -est
- **Examples:**
  - Old → older, oldest

### Short Adjectives Ending in -e
- **Forms:** + -r, -st
- **Examples:**
  - Nice → nicer, nicest

### Short Adjectives Ending in One Vowel + One Consonant
- **Forms:** Double consonant + -er, -est
- **Examples:**
  - Fat → fatter, fattest

  **BUT don’t double w:**
  - Thin → thinner, thinnest
  - Low → lower, lowest

### Two-Syllable Adjectives Ending in -y
- **Forms:** i -er, -est
- **Examples:**
  - Happy → happier, happiest

### Most Other Longer Adjectives
- **Forms:** + more, most
- **Examples:**
  - Hopeful → more hopeful, most hopeful

### Irregular Adjectives
- **Forms:**
  - Good → better, best
  - Bad → worse, worst
  - Far → further, furthest

### Put in Irregular Comparative Adjectives
- **Examples:**
  1. I know that my handwriting is bad, but Jenny’s is **worse.**
  2. I’m so tired. Is the bus stop much ..........? [Missing answer]
  3. I don’t enjoy train travel here, but I do in France – the trains are .......... there.
  4. ‘How’s your toothache today?’ ‘It’s ..........’ ‘You should see a dentist.’
comparative or superlative?

We use **comparatives** to compare people and things with **other people and things**.

- A is **bigger than** B.
- A is **bigger than** B and C.
- John is a **more careful** driver than Robin.

We use **superlatives** (usually with the) to compare people and things with **all of the group that they are in**.

- A is **the biggest** of the three letters A, B and C.
- John is **the most careful** driver in the family.

1. **Circle the correct answer.**

   - Dawn is **older / the oldest** than all of her sisters.
   - Leah is **taller / the tallest** person in her family.
   1. All of the players are nice, but Sarah is certainly **the nicer / the nicest**.
   2. This is the **better / the best** women's basketball team in the country.
   3. Basketballs are **more expensive / the most expensive** than footballs.
   4. Ice hockey is a **more dangerous / most dangerous** sport than basketball or tennis.
   5. Of all the sports in the Olympics, which sport is **more dangerous? / the most dangerous?**
   6. A basketball court is usually **bigger / the biggest** than a tennis court.
   7. Which is the **faster / the fastest** game? Not chess.
   8. Which is the **more / most expensive** game? Poker?

2. **Choose a comparative or a superlative. Remember to use the before the superlatives.**

   - 'The Marriage of Figaro' is **the most beautiful** of all Mozart's operas. (beautiful)
   - My new car is **faster** than my old one. (fast)
   1. My mother and her sisters are all **shorter** than their children. (short)
   2. I think Annie is **the most intelligent** person in our class. (intelligent)
   3. Let's meet in the library -- it's **more quiet** than all the other rooms. (quiet)
   4. My bedroom is **bigger** room in the house. (cold)
   5. A 3-year-old's voice is **more loud** than 200 people in a busy restaurant. (loud)
   6. Brazil is **the biggest** South American country. (big)
   7. My computer is **more intelligent** than me. (intelligent)
   8. Which is **the most boring** thing to study? (boring)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
comparatives: use brighter than the moon

We use than after comparative adjectives.
Russia is bigger than China. (NOT ... that China.) Rob and Tina are older than Emma.

1. Compare each pair of things in the box. Write two sentences for each pair. More than one answer may be possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPARE:</th>
<th>dogs and cats</th>
<th>train travel and air travel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the sun and the moon</td>
<td>dogs and cats</td>
<td>the Sahara and the Himalayas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the moon is smaller than the sun</td>
<td>English and Chinese</td>
<td>English and Chinese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES: big bright cheap cold easy difficult fast friendly hot intelligent small

1. The sun is brighter than the moon.
2. The moon is smaller than the sun.
3. The Sahara is bigger than the Himalayas.
4. English is more difficult than Chinese.
5. Train travel is faster than air travel.

2. Use comparative adjectives with ... than all the other ...

- Alaska's area is 1,518,700km². No other US state is so large.
  *Alaska is larger than all the other US states.*

1. The Amazon is 6,670km long. No other river in South America is so long.
2. Blue whales can weigh 120 tonnes. No other whales are so heavy.
3. Mont Blanc is 4,807m high. No other mountain in the Alps is so high.
4. Cheetahs can run at 110km/h. No other big cats are so fast.
5. The Atacama desert has no rain. No other deserts are so dry.
6. Redwoods can grow up to 110 metres. No other trees are so tall.
With comparatives, we can say ... than *I am* / than you *are* / than John *is* etc.
But in informal **spoken English**, we usually prefer ... than *me*/*you*/*him*/*her*/*it*/*us*/*them*.

3 Write two endings for each sentence: one with than *me* / than you etc and one with than *I am* / than you *are* etc.

- Tariq was angry, but I was **angrier than him**. / **than he was**.
- John's very careful with money, but Maria
- I'm hungry, but you must be ...
- You're not very short. Tony's ...
- We're excited, but our children ...
- My girlfriend is so beautiful. No other woman ...

We can use a *lot* / a *bit* (more conversational) or *much* / a *little* before comparatives.

Your cooking is **much better than my sister's.** (NOT ... very better... AND NOT ... too better ...)
This book is **a lot more interesting than that one.** You sound **a bit happier** today.

4 Use the table. Write sentences about Mark and Simon with a *bit* / a *little* and a *lot* / *much* with the adjectives from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>short / tall</th>
<th>old / young</th>
<th>rich</th>
<th>fast / slow</th>
<th>comfortable</th>
<th>quiet / noisy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How tall?</td>
<td>How old?</td>
<td>How rich?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark 1m95</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>€900,000/year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simon 1m85</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>€250,000/year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Simon is a bit (or a little) shorter than Mark
  1
  2
  3
  4
  5
  6
  7
  8
  9

We can use more than and less than without adjectives.

*Liz spent more than a week's pay on that dress.*  It took us less than ten minutes to get home.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example 'm, don't) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
After superlatives, we normally use in before the names of places.

Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (NOT ... of the world.)
Jamal is the most intelligent person in the office.
Sirius is the brightest star in the sky.

After superlatives, we also use in before singular words or groups of people.

Sam is the youngest player in the orchestra.
Wilkins is the oldest minister in this government.

In most other cases, we use of after superlatives.

Anna's the tallest of the three sisters. This is the shortest day of the year.

Put the beginnings, middles and ends together.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Jonathan is</td>
<td>A the biggest state ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>My great-great-aunt is</td>
<td>B the longest river ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>London is</td>
<td>C the best musician ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Alaska is</td>
<td>D the fastest runner ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The guitar player is</td>
<td>E the biggest city ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The Nile is</td>
<td>F the oldest person ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>My parents' room is</td>
<td>G the most expensive ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Mercedes is</td>
<td>H the longest day ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Sarah is</td>
<td>I the youngest ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>June 21st is</td>
<td>J the biggest ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>k in the group ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>l in my family ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m in the team ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n in Africa ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o in Britain ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p in the USA ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>q of the four bedrooms ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>r of the five girls ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s of the three cars ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>t of the year ......</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write sentences with superlatives.

- In my job, Friday / busy day / week
  In my job, Friday is the busiest day of the week.

1. In the 1970s, the Beatles / rich musicians / world

2. Eric says that Eleanor / good singer / group

3. When I was a child, my father / tall man / our town

4. In this country, February / cold month / year

5. Who / old / your three aunts?

6. Helen is very intelligent, but she / quiet person / my class

7. Which / good / these three bikes / ?

8. Which / big city / Argentina / ?

There is so much good in the worst of us, and so much bad in the best of us.

(Author unknown)
comparison of adverbs  More slowly, please.

To make the comparative of most adverbs: more + adverb (… than)

Can you speak more quietly, please?  I'm working more slowly today than yesterday.
Angela writes more clearly than Ellie.

1 Write sentences with comparative adverbs and than.
   ▶ Jacob drives / dangerously / Sam
     Jacob drives more dangerously than Sam.
   1 Lee talks to people / politely / Ben
   2 Liam works / carefully / John
   3 Simon goes swimming / often / Karen
   4 My car runs / quietly / my sister's car
   5 Annie talks / slowly / Rob
   6 Olivia thinks / clearly / most people
   7 Jack dresses / expensively / me
   8 I live / cheaply / my friends

Some short adverbs have comparatives with -er, like adjectives. Examples: early, late, fast, hard, high, long, near and soon.

I got to the station earlier than Mary.  Bill lives nearer to school than Pete, so he gets up later.

Irregular comparatives: well → better  badly → worse  far → further/farther
   little → less  a lot/much → more

My mother drives better than my father.  He sings badly, but I sing worse.
She talks less than he does, but she thinks more.  I live further from the centre than you.

2 Use the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.

early  fast  hard  high  late  little  long  much  near

▶ 'I want to earn more money.' 'Work … hard.'
   1 'I want to eat my breakfast slowly in the morning.' 'Get up .................'
   2 'I want to get more sleep.' 'Get up .................'
   3 'I want to be stronger.' 'Exercise .................'
   4 'I hate driving to work.' 'Live ................. to your work and walk.'
   5 'I get a lot of headaches.' 'Try to worry .................'
   6 'I'm afraid I'm going to miss the train.' 'Walk .................'
   7 'I'm no good at basketball.' 'Practise jumping .................'
   8 'I want to learn everything there is.' 'Live .................'

Sentences with superlative adverbs (for example John drives the most dangerously) are not very common.
(not) as ... as  Your hands are as cold as ice.

We use (not) as ... as to say that people and things are (not) the same in some way.

I don't think Tom is going to be as tall as his sister.  Your hands are as cold as ice.
Can you read this for me? My eyes aren't as good as yours.

1 Read the sentences and decide: which picture is Jenny and which picture is Cassie?
Jenny isn't as old as Cassie. Cassie's hair isn't as long as Jenny's.
Jenny's hands aren't as small as Cassie's.

A
B

Now write some more sentences about Jenny and Cassie with not as ... as.
1 slim .................................................................
2 tall .................................................................
3 skirt / long ........................................................
4 bag / big ........................................................
5 coat / heavy ....................................................
6 glass / big .......................................................

With as ... as, we can say ... as I am / as you are / as John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... as me /you / him / her / it / us / them.

2 Change the sentences in two ways, but keep the same meaning.
> Nicole's prettier than her sister. Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as her.
Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as she is.
1 You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor ...................................................
2 He's more interesting than his boss. .................................................................
3 I'm slimmer than my mother. .................................................................
4 We're more careful than the Browns. .................................................................
We can put just, nearly, not quite and half, twice, three times etc before as ... as.

He's just as handsome as his brother. My hair is not quite as fair as my sister's hair. The twins are nearly as tall as their mother. Brazil is half as big as Russia.

Think of a member of your family. Compare yourself to him or her, using as ... as and some of the words and expressions from the box. Write five sentences.

We can use as much as and as many as with nouns.

Make sentences with as ... as or not as ... as, and some of the expressions from Exercise 3.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Mixed structures. Put in the correct words.

1. I'm not ............ tall ............ my sister.
2. This is the ............ expensive restaurant ............ the town.
3. Anna is a bit older ............ her husband.
4. Who's ............ best player ............ the family?
5. Smith is good, but Jones is ............ and Ericsson is the ............
6. Please drive ............ slowly.
7. How much fruit can I have? Take ............ much ............ you want.
8. Texas is bigger ............ France.
9. You're ............ beautiful than I ............
10. A metre is more ............ a centimetre and ............ than a kilometre.

Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong (x). Can you correct the mistakes?

1. You're the most beautiful woman I have ever seen. ... most beautiful...
2. She's the best pianist of the world. ............
3. My sister is much taller than me. ............
4. Katie is the more beautiful person here. ............
5. Please drive slower. ............
6. This is the more expensive hotel in London. ............
7. You drive much faster than me. ............
8. My hands are cold like ice. ............
9. James is much older than his wife. ............
10. Everest is more high than Mount Fuji. ............
11. We all sing badly, but I'm the worse. ............
12. My sister is the intelligentest person in the family. ............
13. I'm happier this year than last year. ............
14. Tokyo is the biggest city of Japan. ............
15. Sunday is best day of the week. ............

Mixed structures. Look at the pictures and make sentences.

A £17,999  Maximum speed 120km/h
B £62,999  Maximum speed 200km/h
C £24,300  Maximum speed 150km/h

B / fast / A  B is faster than A.
1. B / fast / C
2. A / fast / B  A is not as
3. C / fast / B
4. B / fast  B is the
5. C / expensive / A
6. A / expensive / B
7. B / expensive  B is the
8. B / big / C
9. C / big / A
10. C / big
4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: time. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then answer the questions, using more and less.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>century</th>
<th>day</th>
<th>decade</th>
<th>hour</th>
<th>minute</th>
<th>month</th>
<th>second</th>
<th>week</th>
<th>year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

   - How much is a minute? More than a second and less than an hour.
   - 1 How much is a decade? .................................................................
   - 2 How much is a month? .................................................................
   - 3 How much is a week? .................................................................
   - 4 How much is an hour? .................................................................
   - 5 How much is a day? .................................................................
   - 6 How much is a year? .................................................................

5 Grammar in a text. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.

John lives in Birmingham. He is a bus driver. He is very interested in history. He is taller than Tom, and better-looking, but he doesn't have as much money as Tom. Tom works in an import-export firm in Liverpool. He collects antique furniture. He is deeply in love with Julia. He's much older than she is, but not as tall as she is, and he's really not very good-looking. Julia's friend Hannah lives in Birmingham, near her cousin Pete. She's exactly as old as he is, and they're both very interested in information technology. Pete runs a very successful computer business. He has much more money than Tom, but not nearly as much as Hannah. He has dark hair and blue eyes, and he's better looking than Tom, but not as tall as Tom. Pete and John are old friends. They often play tennis together. John is twice as old as Pete (he's nearly as old as Tom), but he usually wins when he and Pete play. They are both deeply in love with Julia. Julia works in a travel agency. She likes fast cars, travel, horse-riding and fashionable clothes. She often goes on holiday with Hannah. Hannah usually pays for the holidays, because Julia doesn't have as much money as Hannah. Hannah is taller than Julia, (but not as tall as John) and very beautiful. Hannah is deeply in love with the tallest of the three men. Julia is deeply in love with the oldest.

1. Who is Hannah in love with? .................................................................
2. Who is Julia in love with? .................................................................
3. Who is the richest of the five people? .........................................................

6 Than, that or as? Complete the caption.

![Illustration of two people walking]

‘There, dear! I think we've left the world a better place .......... we found it!’

7 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

- “beautifuller” 8,100
- “more beautiful” 5,880,000
- “more happy”
- “happier”
- “older that”
- “older than”
- “the highest mountain of Britain”
- “the highest mountain in Britain”
- “the best player of the team”
- “the best player in the team”
comparison: revision test

1 Write the comparatives and superlatives.
   ▶ tall
   1 interesting
   2 thin
   3 cheap
   4 easy
   5 bad
   6 beautiful
   7 lazy
   8 far
   9 good
   10 old
   11 fat
   12 happy
   13 late
   14 hot
   15 slow
   16 big
   17 expensive
   18 dirty
   19 important
   20 strong

2 Put in as, than or that.
   1 My feet are .............. cold .............. ice.
   2 She looks older .............. her sister.
   3 I think .............. he's Chinese.
   4 Alice is much stronger .............. her brother.
   5 Can't you eat faster .............. that?
   6 He's as funny .............. toothache.
   7 The car .............. I saw was too small.
   8 The cat seems worse .............. yesterday.
   9 It's not as cold .............. last week.
   10 She's got a more interesting job .............. me.

3 Put in the correct words.
   1 A kilogram is less .............. a tonne and .............. than a gram.
   2 Jake is bad at languages, but he's not as bad as I ..............
   3 I get up early, at 6.30; George gets up .............., at 6.15, and Pam is the .............., at 6.00.
   4 Please speak .............. slowly.
   5 Karl is .............. oldest player .............. the team.
   6 ‘How many people can I invite?’ ‘ .............. many .............. you like.’
   7 We stayed in the .............. expensive hotel .............. the city.
   8 She's not .............. nice .............. her brother.
   9 Siberia is bigger .............. Europe.
   10 Phil is a bad teacher, and Annie is .............. and Douglas is the ..............

4 These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?
   ▶ He’s the intelligentest man I have ever met. most intelligent
   1 Which is the highest mountain of Europe? ..............
   2 We all play badly, but I’m the worse. ..............
   3 Julie has the more interesting job in our office. ..............
   4 Your house is much nicer as ours. ..............
   5 Please walk quicklier. ..............
   6 His eyes are hard like stones. ..............
   7 London is more big than Paris. ..............
   8 My sister is the beautifullest of the three girls. ..............
   9 Paul is the oldest from the three children. ..............
   10 Monday is worst day of the week. ..............
SECTION 17 conjunctions

grammar summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>conjunctions</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>although and as soon as because before but so until when while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both … and either … or neither … nor</td>
<td>(For if, see Section 18.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(If necessary, use a dictionary to check the meanings of these conjunctions.)

We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

I went to Germany because Emma was there. We went home after the concert finished.

I phoned as soon as I got the news.

Some conjunctions (and the words that follow them) can go in two places.

I cleaned my room before I went out. Before I went out, I cleaned my room.

We use present tenses to talk about the future with time-conjunctions.

I'll phone you when I arrive. Let's wait here until somebody comes.

She'll pay you as soon as she has the money.

We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words. We don't need to repeat unnecessary words with and.

I went downstairs and I opened the door. I've got friends in Canada and in Australia.

Could I have a knife and a fork?

We stayed in because it was raining.

After she got married, she changed her job.

Ann phoned when you were out.

I won't be happy until I leave school.
Conjunctions: introduction and, but, because ...

Conjunctions are words like and, but, because, although, if, while, so, until. We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

- It was cold and I wanted to go home.
- I like him but I don't like her.
- He got up although he was ill.
- I didn't buy it because it was too expensive.
- I'll phone you if the train is late.
- Andrew called while you were out.
- It was raining so I took my umbrella.
- I waited until Mary was ready.
- Let's go out as soon as Peter arrives.

1. Circle the best conjunction.
   - I'll phone you although / so / when you arrive.
     1. The party was boring, although / because / so I went home.
     2. The weather was nice, although / or / until it was a bit cold.
     3. She speaks good French, after / because / but she has a strong English accent.
     4. I enjoyed my month in Argentina, although / and / but I learnt a lot of Spanish.
     5. I'll tell you my plans because / so / while we're having lunch.
     6. I helped him after / because / or he was a good friend.
     7. I'll wait here with you as soon as / until your train leaves.
     8. Let's talk about the future while / because / or we're walking.
     9. You can pay me now or / so / because I can wait until next week.
    10. Please come and see us before / as soon as / although you can.

2. Choose the best conjunction to join the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.
   - I lived in Liverpool. I left school. (if, although, until)
     1. We'll be glad. This job is finished. (when, or, while)
     2. I'll be very angry. You do that again. (and, if, but)
     3. I'd like to talk to you. You go home. (before, and, although)
     4. Sue watched TV. John came home. (if, until, or)
     5. We'll see you again. We come back from holiday. (while, after, and)
     6. I like her. She's a difficult person. (because, before, although)
     7. Henry didn't like working in a bank. He changed his job. (if, or, so)
     8. They think they can do what they like. They're rich. (because, although, until)
     9. I want to stop working. I'm 50. (if, before, and)
    10. You look beautiful. You're smiling. (or, so, when)
When we use conjunctions, there are often two possibilities.

1 **Start** with the conjunction (and the part that follows it).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>Aaaa(,) CONJUNCTION bbbbb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>IF you need help, please ask me.</em></td>
<td><em>Please ask me IF you need help.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHEN you are in London, phone us.</td>
<td>Phone us WHEN you are in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTHOUGH it was raining, I went out.</td>
<td>I went out, ALTHOUGH it was raining hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS SOON AS she could, she went to bed.</td>
<td>She went to bed AS SOON AS she could.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that we often put commas (,) in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.

1 **Put these sentences together in two ways.**

- I enjoyed the film. The beginning was boring. *(although)*
  - I enjoyed the film, although the beginning was boring.
  - Although the beginning was boring, I enjoyed the film.

1 I put on two sweaters. It was very cold. *(because)*

2 I'm going to work in Australia. I leave school. *(when)*

3 I go and see Felix. I want to talk to somebody. *(if)*

4 Ann made coffee. Bill fried some eggs. *(while)*

5 I was interested in the conversation. I didn’t understand everything. *(although)*

6 We went to a restaurant. There was no food in the house. *(because)*

7 We’ll have a big party. John comes home. *(when)*

8 I stayed with friends. My parents were travelling. *(while)*

9 I go for long walks at the weekend. The weather’s fine. *(if)*

10 Come and see us. You arrive in Scotland. *(as soon as)*

**NOTE:** *and, but, or and so always come between the two parts of the sentence.*

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m. don’t/) and full forms (for example /am, do not/) are possible. Normally both are correct.
We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when and as soon as.

I’ll see you before you go. (NOT … before you will go.)  We’ll talk about it after I get back.

You can use my car while I’m in Ireland.  Don’t move until I tell you.

He’ll phone when he gets home. (NOT … when he will get home.)

We’ll start the party as soon as Alice arrives.

1 Put in verbs from the box. Use the simple present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Wait here until Jane opens the door.
- I’ll cook supper after I ………. back from the gym.
- I’m going to travel round the world before I ………. 60.
- I’m not going out until the rain ……….
- Will you stay in while I ………. shopping?
- We’ll call you as soon as we ………. in Paris.
- We’ll go for a drink after the class ……….

2 Put in verbs from the box (simple present or will).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>look after</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>travel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I ………… give you my address before I say goodbye.
- Lisa’s going to live here until she ………… a job.
- We’re going to look after Sue’s flat while she ………… round America.
- I ………… you to clean the flat after I get back from work.
- We’re early – we’ve got half an hour before the lesson …………
- I ………… you the price as soon as I know myself.
- Can I go and see Maggie while you ………… the kids?
- When I get time, I ………… for a new place to live.
- Mum’s going to move to Scotland after she ………… work.
- I’ll bring you a present when I ………… home.
- Things ………… worse before they get better.

3 Write five or more sentences about yourself, using some of the beginnings in the box.

When I leave school, I’ll …
When I finish university, I’ll …
When I get married, I’ll …
When I have children, I’ll …
When my children leave home, I’ll …
When I stop work, I’ll …
When I have time, I’ll …
When I’m 20/30/40/50/60/70/80/90/100, I’ll …

1 …………
2 …………
3 …………
4 …………
5 …………
6 …………
7 …………

For tenses with if see page 245.
because and so; although and but

We can say why things happen with because or so (but not both).

Because Sue was tired, she went to bed. / Sue went to bed because she was tired.
OR Sue was tired, so she went to bed. (BUT NOT Because Sue was tired, so she went to bed.)

We usually put a comma (,) before so. For more about commas with conjunctions, see page 235.

Join the sentences with because (twice) and with so.

1. He passed the exam. He had a good teacher.
   - Because he had a good teacher, he passed the exam.
   - He passed the exam because he had a good teacher.
   - He had a good teacher, so he passed the exam.

2. I changed my hotel. The rooms were dirty.

3. The taxi was late. We missed the train.

4. I didn’t like the film. I walked out of the cinema.

We can say that things are not as we expect with although or but (but not both).

Although Pete was tired, he didn’t go to bed. / Pete didn’t go to bed, although he was tired.
OR Pete was tired, but he didn’t go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn’t go to bed.)

We usually put commas before although and but.

Join the sentences with although (twice) and with but.

1. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.
   - Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.
   - She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.
   - She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.

2. I felt ill. I went on working.

3. She was very kind. I didn’t like her.

4. He’s a big man. He doesn’t eat much.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words.

Sylvia won the first game and Pete won the second.
‘What’s she interested in?’ ‘Scottish dancing and mountain climbing.’
‘What shall we have for supper?’ ‘Fish and chips.’

In lists, we usually put and between the last two things, and commas (,) between the others.

We need soap, bread, orange juice, tomatoes and sugar.
She was beautiful, intelligent and kind. (NOT ... beautiful, intelligent, kind.)

1 Write the sentences using and and commas.
   - She speaks (French  German  Japanese  Arabic).
   - My company has offices in (London  Tokyo  New York  Cairo).
   - I’ll be here on (Tuesday  Thursday  Friday  Sunday).
   - She’s got (five cats  two dogs  a horse  a rabbit).
   - He plays (golf  rugby  hockey  badminton).
   - She (addressed  stamped  posted) the letter.

When we use and, we do not usually repeat unnecessary words.

She sings and she plays the violin. → She sings and plays the violin.
He plays tennis and he plays badminton. → He plays tennis and badminton.
They have offices in Britain and in America. → They have offices in Britain and America.
We stayed with my brother and my sister. → We stayed with my brother and sister.
The house and the garden were full of people. → The house and garden were full of people.
I’ve been to Greece and I’ve been to Turkey. → I’ve been to Greece and Turkey.
I washed my shirt and I dried my shirt. → I washed and dried my shirt.

2 Cross out the unnecessary words, and put in commas if necessary.
   - I speak Russian, and I speak English and I speak Swahili.
   1 She has painted the kitchen and she has painted the living room and she has painted the dining room.
   2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt and Bob was wearing blue jeans and Bob was wearing white trainers.
   3 Can you give me a knife and can you give me a fork and can you give me a spoon, please?
   4 Many people speak English in India and many people speak English in Singapore and many people speak English in South Africa.
   5 I’ve written six letters and I’ve posted six letters this morning.

We use or in similar ways.

You can come with me or wait here. → I don’t speak German, French or Spanish.
We can make and more emphatic ('stronger') by using both ... and.

He's both a top sportsman and a famous writer. She both sings and dances.

We can make or more emphatic by using either ... or.

You can either come with me now or find your own way home.

We have time to see either the museum or the cathedral, but not both.

Neither ... nor means 'not one and not the other'.

The lessons were neither interesting nor useful.

He speaks neither English nor French.

Make sentences with both ... and, either ... or or neither ... nor.

1. She speaks (Chinese \& Japanese)
   - She speaks both Chinese and Japanese.
2. You can have (coffee \& tea)
   - You can have either coffee or tea.
3. I can (draw \& sing)
   - I can neither draw nor sing.
4. I think that she's (Scottish \& Irish)
5. I'd like to work with (animals \& children)
6. He did well in (mathematics \& history)
7. This car is (fast \& comfortable)
8. She (looked at me \& said anything)
9. I've got problems (at home \& in my job)
10. You can (stay here \& go home)
11. I like (theatre \& cinema)
12. She speaks (English \& French)
13. I don't understand (politics \& economics)

Write some true sentences about yourself.

1. I can both
2. I can neither
3. I like both
4. I don't like either
5. I haven't got either
6. .................
conjunctions: more practice

1 Tenses with time conjunctions. Put in the simple present or will ...

- I'll phone you when I arrive. (phone; arrive)
  1 I think I some tea before I to bed. (have; go)
  2 I here until your father . (wait; arrive)
  3 When you again, Ann here. (come; be)
  4 We sorry when Rachel back home. (be; go)
  5 After we home I something for supper. (get; cook)
  6 We your tickets as soon as we the money. (send; receive)
  7 I very busy until the exams over. (be; be)
  8 Before I to Tokyo, I some Japanese lessons. (go; take)
  9 As soon as the rain I shopping. (stop; go)
  10 We breakfast after Luke . (have; get up)

2 Position of conjunctions. Put these sentences together in two ways.

- The weather's good. I go fishing at weekends. (if)
  1 If the weather's good, I go fishing at weekends.
  2 I go fishing at weekends if the weather's good.
  1 The teacher was ill. The children had a holiday. (because)
  2 I was China. I made a lot of friends. (when)
  3 They built the new road. It was difficult to get to our village. (until)
  4 Jessica wrote three letters. Dylan never answered. (although)
  5 I phoned him. The work was finished. (as soon as)

3 Double conjunctions. Make sentences with both ... and, either ... or or neither ... nor.

  1 I (swim play tennis).
  2 He (lives works) in Birmingham.
  3 My father speaks (Greek French).
  4 She likes (pop music jazz).
  5 You can have (orange juice water).
  6 I can (sing dance).
  7 He's (Scottish Irish).
  8 He's studying (physics biology).
  9 This sofa is (nice-looking comfortable).
  10 Anna (looked at Henry spoke to him).
4 Grammar in a text. Put conjunctions from the box into the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>although</th>
<th>although</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>because</th>
<th>because</th>
<th>before</th>
<th>so</th>
<th>until</th>
<th>when</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Andy Probert was bored at school, 1 .......... he left 2 .......... he was sixteen 3 .......... got a job in a travel agency. He did not stay there very long, 4 .......... he liked the work. He decided to move 5 .......... the pay was very low 6 .......... the hours were too long. His next job was in an import-export company. He liked that much better 7 .......... he travelled to America a lot 8 .......... the work was very well paid. He worked there for three years, 9 .......... he really understood the business; then he started his own company. Now he is doing very well, 10 .......... the work is sometimes very hard. He says he wants to make enough money to stop working 11 .......... he is 50.

5 Grammar and vocabulary: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.

- (Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.
- (Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.

1 (Karl, trombone, saxophone)
2 (Melanie, cello, drums)
3 (Steve, Karen, violin)
4 (Joanna, Charles, guitar)
5 (Karen, piano, trumpet)
6 (Sophie, guitar, trumpet)
7 (Charles, Steve, saxophone)
8 (Sophie, Steve, trumpet)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cello</th>
<th>drums</th>
<th>trombone</th>
<th>guitar</th>
<th>piano</th>
<th>saxophone</th>
<th>trumpet</th>
<th>violin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joanna</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sophie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

- "as soon as we will arrive" 9
- "until it will stop"  
- "after they will finish"  
- "before I will arrive"  
- "while I will be there"  
- "as soon as we arrive" 24,600
- "until it stops."  
- "after they finish"  
- "before I arrive"  
- "while I am there"  

Pronunciation for grammar
conjunctions: revision test

1 Choose the right conjunctions and put the sentences together.
   ▶ I was tired. I went to bed. (while, so, after)
       I was tired, so I went to bed.
   1 I'm going to do some gardening. It gets dark. (because, but, until)
   2 I couldn't read. It was too dark. (although, because, so)
   3 The food wasn't very good. He ate everything. (so, but, because)
   4 The lesson finished early. We went for a walk. (but, until, so)
   5 I got his letter. I went round to see him. (after, although, while)
   6 Jane gets up. She makes coffee. (as soon as, until, although)
   7 You can't have any more coffee. There isn't any more. (so, because, why)
   8 I didn't go to work. The buses weren't running. (because, although, as soon as)
   9 The buses weren't running. I didn't go to work. (until, so, as soon as)
  10 The phone always rings. I'm having a bath. (while, until, so)
  11 I can't tell you the decision. I know myself. (as soon as, while, until)
  12 He didn't work very hard. He passed all his exams. (so, but, because)
  13 The holiday was over. I had to start working very hard. (when, until)
  14 Andrew saw Zoë. He fell madly in love with her. (as soon as, until, but)
  15 I left school. I worked as a taxi driver. (until, after, while)

2 Correct the mistakes.
   ▶ You can either stay here or come with me.
   1 He plays neither the piano nor he plays the guitar.
   2 Although the train was late, but I got there in time.
   3 The house was small, cold, dirty.
   4 Although it was raining, went out.
   5 After Jake will get here, we'll all go swimming.
   6 Because it was cold, so I put on a coat.
   7 You can either come in my car or either walk home.
   8 I need a knife and I need a fork.
   9 Although I would like to help you, but I don't have time.
   10 I play both classical music and I play jazz.
   11 I'll change my job as soon as I'll find another one.
   12 Will you still love me when I'll be old?

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
**grammar summary**

Most tenses are possible in sentences with *if*.

- He *won't come* tomorrow if he *came* yesterday.
- If that *was* Mary, why *didn't* she *stop* and say hello?
- If you've *been* to Paris, you've *seen* the Eiffel Tower.
- Oil *floats* if you *pour* it on water.
- If you're happy, I'm happy.

Note the following three important structures:

- **present tenses for future:**
  With *if*, we use present tenses to talk about the future.
  - *I'll phone you if I have time.* (NOT ... *if I will have time.*)

- **if + past, ... would ...**
  We can use past tenses with *if* to show that something is *not real* or *not probable now*.
  (We normally use *would* in the other part of the sentence.)
  - *If I had more money, I would buy a car now.*

- **if + past perfect, ... would have ...**
  To talk about *unreal past events* – things that did not happen – we use *if + past perfect*.
  (We normally use *would have + past participle* in the other part of the sentence.)
  - *I'm sorry you had all those problems. If you had asked me, I would have helped you.*

These three structures are often called 'first,' 'second' and 'third conditional.'
The structure with two present tenses (e.g. *if you're happy, I'm happy*) is sometimes called 'zero conditional,' for no very good reason.

We can use *unless* to mean 'if not,' 'except if'.
- *You can't come in unless you have a ticket.* (= 'if you don't have a ticket')

---

**If you were the only girl in the world, and I were the only boy...**
*(Song by Clifford Grey, British songwriter, born 1937)*

**If you can find something that everyone agrees on, it's wrong.**
*(Mo Udall, American politician, 1922–1998)*

**If God did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him.**
*(Voltaire, French writer, 1694–1788)*

**If one morning I walked on top of the water across Potomac River, the headline that afternoon would read “President Can't Swim”.**

**If the human mind was simple enough to understand, we'd be too simple to understand it.**
*(Emerson Pugh, American writer on technology)*

---

**If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you'll be a man, my son.**
*(Rudyard Kipling, British short-story writer, novelist and poet, 1865–1936)*

**If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you just don't know what's going on.**
*(British Army saying)*

---

**If the automobile had followed the same development cycle as the computer, a Rolls-Royce would today cost $100, get a million miles per gallon, and explode once a year, killing everyone inside.**
*(Robert X. Cringely, InfoWorld magazine)*
if: position; unless

An *if*-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (,).

If I have time, I’ll clean up the garden.    I’ll clean up the garden if I have time.

1 Use *if* to put these sentences together in two ways.

- Joe works at Brown’s. He probably knows Annie.
  If Joe works at Brown’s, he probably knows Annie.
  Joe probably knows Annie if he works at Brown’s.

1 I can’t sleep. I get up and read.

2 You take books from my room. Please tell me.

3 You’re hungry. Why don’t you cook some soup?

4 She’s been travelling all day. She must be tired

5 We catch the first train. We can be in London by 9.00.

We can use *unless* to mean ‘if … not’, ‘except if’.

You can’t come in unless you have a ticket. (= ‘You can’t come in if you don’t have a ticket.’)

Unless I’m very tired, I go to bed about midnight. (= ‘Except if I’m very tired …’)

2 Rewrite these sentences with *unless*.

- Children can’t go in if they are not with an adult.
  Children can’t go in unless they are with an adult.

- If you don’t give me my money, I’m going to the police.
  Unless you give me my money, I’m going to the police.

1 You can’t park here if you don’t live in this street.

2 If you are not over 15, you can’t see this film.

3 I don’t drive fast except if I’m really late.

4 If I’m not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays.

5 We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn’t a good film on TV.

6 I see my mother at weekends if I’m not travelling.

7 If it’s not raining, I play tennis most evenings.

8 I can’t help you if you don’t tell me the truth.
**if: future**

I’ll phone you if I hear from Alice.

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. But after if, we normally use a **present tense** to talk about the **future**.

If it is sunny tomorrow, we’ll eat in the garden. I’ll phone you if I hear from Alice. I’ll be sorry if I don’t pass this exam.

---

1. **Choose the best verb to complete the sentence.**
   - If it rains, we’ll have the party indoors. (think, play, have)
   - If you like, I’ll buy you a nice one. (find, hold, pay)

2. **Put in the correct verb forms.**
   - If it rains, we’ll have the party indoors. (rain; have)

3. **Make sentences with if.**
   - I’m afraid the bus will be late.
     - (→ get to work late again) If the bus is late, I’ll get to work late again.
     - (→ lose my job) If I get to work late again, I’ll lose my job.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
not real / not probable  *If dogs could talk, ...*

We use *if* + past tense + *would* to talk about things that are not real or not probable now.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF + PAST TENSE</th>
<th>WOULD + INFINITIVE (WITHOUT TO)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I had a million dollars,</td>
<td>I would build a big swimming pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you were the President,</td>
<td>what would you do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If dogs could talk,</td>
<td>they would tell some interesting stories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If he didn't travel so much,</td>
<td>he'd have more money.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Constructions (see page 301): *I would* → *I'd*, *you would* → *you'd* etc.

1. Put in the correct forms of the correct verbs.
   - If people had four arms, life would be easier. *(have; be)*
   - This wouldn’t be a nice country if it didn’t rain so much. *(not rain; be)*
   - 1 If my cat opened the fridge, it all my food. *(can; eat)*
   - 2 If Lily and Jack were here, they what to do. *(know; be)*
   - 3 If I the answer, I you. *(know; tell)*
   - 4 If your boss you to work on Sunday, you it? *(do; ask)*
   - 5 If you read people’s thoughts, what you? *(can; do)*
   - 6 I a car if I enough money. *(buy; have)*
   - 7 If I you to marry me, what you? *(say; ask)*
   - 8 Alex his work on time if he so much. *(finish; not talk)*
   - 9 I Chinese if I more time. *(have; study)*
   - 10 If the programmes better, I ... more TV. *(be; watch)*

2. Make sentences beginning with *if*.
   - My parents don’t live near here, so I don’t see them at weekends.
     - If my parents lived near here, I would see them at weekends.
   - 1 We won’t play cards because Jane and Peter aren’t here.
     - If Jane ... 
   - 2 We haven’t got enough money, so we won’t buy a new car.
   - 3 Fred doesn’t answer letters, so I don’t write to him.
   - 4 I won’t take your photo because I can’t find my camera.
   - 5 I don’t enjoy opera because I can’t understand the words.
   - 6 I don’t like Carola because she talks about herself all the time.
   - 7 I haven’t got a dog, so I don’t go for walks.

3. What would you do if you had a free year and a lot of money? Write three or more sentences.
   - travel round the world  study  go to  (other answers)
   - 1 If I ... 
   - 2 ... 
   - 3 ...
If I were you, ...

We sometimes use *were* instead of *was* after *if*. This is usually rather *formal*.

*If I were taller I would play basketball.*       *If John were here, he would know what to do.*

We often say *If I were you, I would/I'd ...*, when we want to give people *advice*.

*If I were you, I'd get a new car.*       *I wouldn't stand there if I were you.*

1. Write sentences with *if I were you*, using the expressions in the box.

   - call the police at once
   - fly
   - not sell it
   - join a club
   - see a doctor
   - take a holiday

   - ‘I feel ill.’ .................................................................
   1 ‘I'm really tired.’ .................................................................
   2 ‘I haven’t got any friends.’ .................................................................
   3 ‘Shall I take the train to Scotland?’ .................................................................
   4 ‘Somebody has stolen my car.’ .................................................................
   5 ‘Otto wants to buy my motorbike.’ .................................................................

2. John Baker has won a lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

   - buy a sports car
   - buy a house
   - give the money away
   - have a big party
   - put the money in the bank
   - start a business
   - stop work
   - travel round the world

   - JOHN’S GIRLFRIEND: .................................................................
   1 HIS MOTHER: .................................................................
   2 HIS FATHER: .................................................................
   3 HIS BROTHER: .................................................................
   4 HIS GRANDMOTHER: .................................................................
   5 HIS SISTER: .................................................................
   6 HIS FRIEND JOE: .................................................................
   7 HIS FRIEND STEPHANIE: .................................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
If I go ..., I will ...; If I went ..., I would ...

The difference between if I go and if I went (for example) is not a difference of time. We can use both if I go/see etc and if I went/saw etc to talk about the present or future. With if, a past tense does not mean 'past time'; it means 'not real' or 'not probable'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROBABLE/POSSIBLE</th>
<th>NOT REAL/NOT PROBABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I go to London, I'll visit Tony.</td>
<td>If I went to the moon, I would take a lot of photos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I see Ann, I'll give her your address.</td>
<td>If I saw the Prime Minister, I would say 'hello'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Choose the best sentence-beginning.

- If I live/lived to be 75, ...
- If I live/lived to be 175, ...
- If dogs can/could talk, ...
- If I go/went shopping next week, ...
- If Switzerland starts/started a war against Australia, ...
- If the government gives/gave everybody a month's holiday with pay, ...
- If you need/needed help one day, ...
- If everybody gives/gave 10% of their money to poor countries, ...
- If everybody thinks/thought the same as me, ...
- If I am/was the most intelligent person in the world, ...
- If prices go/went up next year, ...

2 Choose the best way to continue the sentences.

- I'm not going to open the window. If I open/opened the window, it will/would be too noisy.
- Maybe I'll open a window. But if I open/opened a window, it will/would be very noisy.
- I'm going to get up early tomorrow. If I have/had time, I'll/d walk to work.
- If I have/had time, I'll/d walk to work, but it's just not possible.
- 'I may get a job in Germany.' If you get/got it, what will/would your boyfriend say?'
- 'There's a job in Germany, but I don't think I'll get it.' If you get/got it, what will/would your boyfriend say?
- We never leave food on the table. If we do/did, the cat will/would eat it.
- 'Shall I put this on the table?' If you do/did, the cat will/would eat it.
- I'll probably go to university. But if I go/went, I won't/wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- I'm not going to go to university. If I go/went to university, I won't/wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- Maybe Jenny will marry Phil. But if she does/did, I'm afraid she won't/wouldn't be happy.
- Phil isn't going to marry Jenny. Because if he does/did, he will/would have a terrible time with her.

3 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- If I live to be 90, .................................................................
- If I lived to be 190, .................................................................
- If I learn more English, .............................................................
- If I learnt 20 languages, ............................................................
- If I go to New York, .................................................................
- If I went to the moon, ...............................................................
unreal past If A had happened, B would have happened.

We can use if to talk about unreal past events – things that didn’t happen.
We use the past perfect and would have + past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF + PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>WOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the weather had been better,</td>
<td>we would have gone to the sea. (But it wasn’t, so we didn’t.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you had asked me,</td>
<td>I would have helped you. (But you didn’t, so I didn’t.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If Mary had seen you,</td>
<td>what would you have said? (But she didn’t.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If she hadn’t gone skiing,</td>
<td>she wouldn’t have fallen and broken her leg. (But she did.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. If I ........................................ here yesterday, I would have come to see you. (be)
2. If Joe ........................................ harder, he would have passed his exams. (work)
3. If you ........................................ a map with you, you wouldn’t have got lost. (take)
4. We would have won the game if we ........................................ so badly. (not play)
5. If I had gone to university, I ........................................ medicine and become a doctor. (study)
6. ........................................ you ........................................ if you had driven more slowly? (crash)
7. You ........................................ badly if you hadn’t drunk all that coffee. (not sleep)
8. If you ........................................ on holiday with us, you ........................................ a wonderful time. (come; have)
9. If my car ........................................ I ........................................ here at 8 o’clock. (not break down; be)
10. ........................................ you ........................................ harder at school last year if you ........................................ the teachers? (study; like)
11. She ........................................ married if she ........................................ to leave home. (not get; not want)
12. ........................................ you ........................................ me if I ........................................ you? (help; ask)

2 Getting up early is bad for you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.

get up early → catch the 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman
→ fall in love and marry her → go to live in her country → work in her father’s diamond business
→ become very rich → go into politics → die in a revolution

If I had got up early, I would have caught the 8.15 train.

1. If I had caught ...................................................................................................................
2. ...................................................................................................................................................
3. ...................................................................................................................................................
4. ...................................................................................................................................................
5. ...................................................................................................................................................
6. ...................................................................................................................................................
7. ...................................................................................................................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example /m, don’t/) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
1 Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Put the beginnings and ends together. (Different answers are possible.).

| 0 If I had a lot of money, | A I would give it all to you. ...... |
| 1 if you ask me nicely, | B I’ll break my leg. ...... |
| 2 If the news was always good, | C nobody would believe them. ...... |
| 3 If we go to the country, | D I’ll dance all night. ...... |
| 4 If we go skiing, | E I’ll wear my new bikini. ...... |
| 5 If everybody spoke English, | F it would be a disaster. ...... |
| 6 If I come to your party, | G I’ll make you a cup of tea. ...... |
| 7 If everybody was telepathic, | H newspapers wouldn’t have many pages. ...... |
| 8 If politicians told the truth, | I they might say some interesting things. ...... |
| 9 If we go swimming, | J I’ll take my bicycle. ...... |
| 10 If animals could talk, | K international communication would be much easier. ...... |

2 Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Choose the best ways to continue the sentences.

1 I think I’ll study medicine. But I know if I do/ did that, I’ll / ’d have to work very hard.
2 She’s a very generous person. If she wins / won the lottery, she will / would give it all away.
3 I’m not going to buy a car. If I buy / bought a car I will / would spend all my money on it.
4 I really must go and see Sandra. But if I go / went and see / saw her, I’ll / ’d have to talk to her stupid brother.
5 My parents live a long way away. If they live / lived nearer, I will / would see them more often.
6 We’re going to stay at home this evening. If we go / went out, we won’t / wouldn’t do anything interesting.
7 Those exams are difficult. Unless you start / started working harder, you won’t / wouldn’t pass.
8 The United Moderate Anarchist Party will probably win the election. And if they win / won, the country will / would be in deep trouble.
9 I’m glad Marion isn’t going to marry Jack. Because if she marries / married him she will / would be very unhappy.
10 Maybe I’ll take you to London with me. But if I take / took you, you’ll / ’d have to pay for your ticket.
11 If it rains / rained again tomorrow, I won’t / wouldn’t go cycling.
12 Dylan never tells the truth. And if he does / did, I won’t / wouldn’t believe him.

3 Grammar in a text. Put in the missing words.

The laws of work

1. If anything can go wrong, it ................. go wrong.
2. If a job looks easy, it’s difficult. If it ................. difficult, ................. impossible.
3. If you think a job will take two hours, it ................. take four days. If you think it ................. take four days, it ................. eight weeks. And so on.
4. If you throw something away, you ................. need it the next day.
5. If you do what everybody wants you to do, somebody ................. like it.
6. If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody .................
Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.

1. If I ........................................ coffee last night, I ........................................ better. (not drink; sleep)
2. If my parents ........................................ more money, I ........................................ to university after I left school. (have; go)
3. Jessica ........................................ to Brazil last year if she ........................................ Pete. (go; not meet)
4. If I ........................................ ill last week, I ........................................ to Ireland. (not be; go)
5. I ........................................ the bus if I ........................................ (catch; run)
6. If he ........................................ smoking, he ........................................ longer. (stop; live)
7. I ........................................ you for help unless I ........................................ it. (not ask; need)
8. Yesterday ........................................ a better day if I ........................................ in bed. (be; stay)
9. I ........................................ a sweater if I ........................................ it was going to be so cold. (wear; know)
10. If we ........................................ time we ........................................ to see Uncle Pete. (have; go)

Unreal past. Read the text and complete the chain of if-sentences.

HOT WEATHER IS GOOD FOR YOU
It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate her supper, so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an advertisement for a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it was a hot day!

If it hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door. If she hadn't opened the door, the cat ........................................ her supper. If the cat ........................................ her supper, she ........................................ to the shop. If she ........................................ to the shop, she ........................................ an advertisement for a secretary. If she ........................................ an advertisement for a secretary, she ........................................ a new job.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: names of languages
Anna is going to work in another country next year. See if you can make sentences with the correct language names. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Dutch</th>
<th>German</th>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>Portuguese</th>
<th>Swahili</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(China)</td>
<td>(Egypt)</td>
<td>(Brazil)</td>
<td>(Holland)</td>
<td>(Kenya)</td>
<td>(Greece)</td>
<td>(Austria)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out which of the following are more common.

"unless I buy" 104,000
"if I were you" ........................................
"if she knew" ........................................
"if we go" ........................................
"if they had said" ........................................

"unless I will buy" 6
"if I was you" ........................................
"if she would know" ........................................
"if we will go" ........................................
"if they would have said" ........................................
1. Put in the correct verb forms.
   - I’m sure John will help you if you ask him. (help)
   - I would be very happy if I had more friends. (have)
   1. If you wear your glasses, you would see much better. (clean)
   2. If Peter lives in Little Compton, he probably knows my friend Jack. (know)
   3. I will come and see you tomorrow if I have time. (come)
   4. If she spoke more slowly, perhaps I would understand her. (understand)
   5. If you arrive at 12.00, you will arrive at 3.20. (leave)
   6. I would be very happy if I were you. (were)
   7. If you live so far away, it would be easier for us to see each other. (not live)
   8. I would translate this letter for you if I can find my dictionary. (translate)
   9. If I were you, I would ask him. (help)
   10. If water evaporates very slowly, perhaps it becomes ice. (get)

2. Five of sentences 1–10 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
   - I usually get up and watch TV if I can’t sleep.  Correct
   - I wouldn’t do that if I were you.  were
   1. I’ll be very happy if I’ll pass the exam.  
   2. If she’s from Russia, she probably speaks Russian.  
   3. If he would eat more, he wouldn’t be so thin.  
   4. If I don’t see you today, I see you next week.  
   5. I’ll come and see you on Wednesday if I have time.  
   6. If we left early tomorrow morning, we would arrive before 12.00.  
   7. Unless he doesn’t work harder, he won’t pass his exams.  
   8. If it doesn’t rain tomorrow, I’ll play tennis with James.  
   9. We’ll go and see Max and Chris if we’ll be in Berlin.  
   10. I would get a better job if I could find one.  

   1. If I gave Michael, I told him what to do. (not ask; not know)
   2. If Alex met in London yesterday I would see him. (be; go)
   3. I’m sorry. I didn’t promise that if I promised that your mother was listening. (not say; know)
   4. It would be better if you didn’t remember nothing when the policeman stopped you. (be; say)
   5. If I hadn’t met on that bus, I would have seen my girlfriend. (not get; not meet)
   6. Lucy would have sent a letter if we would have sent her to hospital when she started feeling ill. (die; not take)
   7. If I hadn’t gone skiing last winter, I wouldn’t have been out. (not be; go)
   8. If I hadn’t been asked by my father, I wouldn’t have studied medicine. (do; study)
   9. Mark wouldn’t have gone skiing last winter if he hadn’t had enough money. (go; have)
   10. If you hadn’t helped me yesterday, I would have been in deep trouble. (not help; be)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
We use **relative pronouns** to join sentences to nouns.

The man **who** was Welsh won the prize.  

The man **who** won the prize was Welsh.

We use **who** for people and **which** for things. We can also use **that** for people and things.

*There's the man who/that sold me my bike.*

She said a word which/that I didn't hear.

We often leave **object pronouns**, but not subject pronouns.

Do you remember those photos (which/that) I showed you?

The photos which/that show the beach are beautiful. (Not The photos show the beach...)

**Prepositions** can often go in two places.

The woman **about whom** we were talking walked into the room. (formal)

The woman **that** we were talking **about** walked into the room. (conversational)

We can use **what** to mean 'the thing(s) which'.

The children always eat **what** I cook.

---

**artist** noun  /ˈɑːr.tɪst/; Name: art-it-

1 = a person who creates works of art, especially paintings or drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporary British artists = a graphic artist = a make-up artist = Police artists = a writer who has issued an artist's impression of her attacker. (especially figurative) Whoever made this cake is a real artist.

2 = (especially Brit) artiste = Name: art-it-

a professional entertainer such as a singer, dancer or an actor: a recording/solo artist.

**bee** noun  /bi/ a black and yellow flying insect that can sting. Bees live in large groups and make honey = a bee sting = bees were buzzing in the clover. = see also spelling bee.

**bee the bee's knees** (informal) = an excellent person or opinion of herself; have a bee in your bonnet = about sth (informal) to think or talk about sth all the time and to think that it is very important = more at BIRD, BUSY.

---

**builder** noun  /ˈbɪld.ər/; Name: build-er-

1 = a person or company whose job is to build or repair houses or other buildings = usually in compounds: a person or thing that builds, creates or develops sth: a shipbuilder = a confidence builder = see also BODYBUILDER.

**burglar** noun  /ˈbɜːrɡ.lər/; Name: borg-lar-

a person who enters a building illegally in order to steal.

---

**cheese** noun  /ˈtʃiːz/ = (U) a type of food made from milk that can be either soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; cheese sandwich = a selection of cheese (that is made from the milk of a goat) = a slice of cheese (made from cheese)

**plant** noun  /ˈplɑːnt/; Name: plant-

1 = a living thing that grows in the earth that is smaller than a tree or bush: All plants need light and water = flowering plant = an indoor plant = a tomato plant = the tomato/potato plant = the animal and plant life of the area = also bedding plant, house plant, pot plant, rubber plant.

**saucer** noun  /ˈsɔːsər/ a small shallow round dish that a cup stands on; an object that is shaped like this: cups and saucers = coffee saucer = see also flying saucers.
relative who and which the keys which I lost

We can use sentences to describe nouns. To join sentences to nouns, we use relative pronouns: who (for people) and which (for things).

The man plays golf. \(\text{He lives at No 10.}\)
The letter is for me. You saw \(\text{it.}\)
I like the girl. \(\text{She works with Ann.}\)
I've got those books. You wanted \(\text{them.}\)

Put in who or which.
1. The people ............... live downstairs are Irish.
2. The shop ............... sells that good bread is closed today.
3. The dictionary ............... I bought yesterday isn't very good.
4. That cheese ............... you like comes from Scotland.
5. Do you know the girls ............... are standing by the window?
6. I can't find the key ............... opens this door.
7. I've lost the earrings ............... Harry gave me.
8. The police are looking for three men ............... robbed the National Bank yesterday.
9. We know the woman ............... teaches French at Jane's school.
10. Here's a word ............... I don't understand.
11. Are those the shoes ............... Tracy has just bought?
12. I had just one teacher ............... was really good.

We use who or which instead of he, him, she, it etc. Don't use both.

The woman who \(\text{she}\) teaches me French is ill. Here's the address which you wanted.

Circle the correct answer.
1. There's the man who took / he took your coat.
2. Do you know the people who live / they live next door?
3. I like that woman; she is / is very kind.
4. I've found the keys which I lost / lost them.
5. Do you like the new dress which I bought / bought it yesterday?
6. The car which is parked / it is parked outside belongs to Susan.
7. This is a new kind of knife: cuts / it cuts everything.
8. The poems which Mark writes / writes them are very hard to understand.
9. We've got three children who make / they make a lot of noise.
10. What did you do with the sweater which I lent you / I lent you it?

The man who makes no mistakes does not usually make anything.

(E J Phelps)
3 Look at the picture and the information, and write sentences with who.

- The man and woman who live in flat 8 are from Scotland.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLAT</th>
<th>INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>play loud music all night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>broke her leg skiing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>play golf all day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>haven't got much money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>has three children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>drives a Rolls-Royce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>are hiding from the police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>are from Scotland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Join the sentences in the place marked *. Change he, it etc to who or which.

- Most of the people* speak German. They live in Austria.
  Most of the people who live in Austria speak German.

- I know a shop*. It sells really good meat.
  I know a shop which sells really good meat.

1 The bus* isn't running today. It goes to Oxford.

2 Yesterday I met a man*. He works with your brother.

3 The child* was ill. She didn't come to the party.

4 Can you pick up the papers*? They are lying on the floor.

5 The eggs* were bad. I bought them yesterday.

6 Here's the book*. You asked me to buy it for you.

7 I don't like the man*. He is going out with my sister.

---

We can use whom for people when the relative pronoun is the object of the following verb.

I've just got a postcard from a woman whom I met on holiday last year. (I met the woman.)

But whom is formal and unusual. In spoken English, we more often use that (see page 256), who or nothing (see page 257).

I've just got a postcard from a woman who/that I met on holiday last year.

OR I've just got a postcard from a woman I met on holiday last year.

---

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
relative *that* a bird *that* can't fly

We can use *that* instead of *who* or *which.*

*The man that* lives at number 8 is getting married. *You haven't drunk the tea that I made for you.***

**Join the sentences in the place marked *, using *that.***

1. I'd like to speak to the person*. She wrote this letter.
   *I'd like to speak to the person that wrote this letter.*

2. The tomatoes* are all bad. I bought them yesterday.
   *The tomatoes that I bought yesterday are all bad.*

3. Joe's got a motorbike*. It can do 200 km an hour.

4. Is that the computer*? It doesn't work.

5. Those are the trousers*. I use them for gardening.


7. The doctors* all said different things. They looked at my leg.

8. The flowers* are beautiful. You gave them to Aunt Sarah.

9. The children* have gone on holiday. They play football with Paul.

**2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that fly**

Write descriptions with *that.* Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>can fly straight up</th>
<th>flies at night and hears very well</th>
<th>can't fly</th>
<th>doesn't have an engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eats small animals and birds</td>
<td>can fly to the moon</td>
<td>makes honey</td>
<td>doesn't make honey and can bite you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- an insect *that makes honey.*
  1. an insect
  2. a bird
  3. a bird
  4. an animal
  5. a machine
  6. a plane
  7. a thing

![Images of flying objects: mosquito, bee, eagle, penguin, bat, helicopter, glider, space rocket]
leaving out relative pronouns  the car (that) you bought

When a relative pronoun (who/which/that) is the object of the following verb, we often leave it out. But we can’t leave out a relative pronoun when it is the subject of the following verb.

(I phoned a man.)
The man that I phoned spoke Spanish.

→ The man I phoned spoke Spanish.

The train that you want leaves at 10.00.

→ The train you want leaves at 10.00.

(A man phoned me.)
The man that phoned me spoke Greek.

→ NOT The man phoned me spoke Greek.

The train that stops at York goes at 8.00.

→ NOT The train stops at York goes at 8.00.

1 Is the relative pronoun the subject (S) or object (O) of the following verb?
   ▶ the woman who wrote this letter ...
   ▶ the film that I saw ...
   ▶ the languages that she spoke ...
   ▶ a woman who helped me ...
   ▶ the sweater which I wore ...
   ▶ a man who(m) I helped ...
   ▶ 4 the weather that we have had ...
   ▶ 5 the weather that we have had ...
   ▶ 6 a machine that makes paper ...
   ▶ 7 that car which you bought ...
   ▶ 8 the man who cuts my hair ...

2 Look at Exercise 1. Find the expressions with object relative pronouns and rewrite them without who(m), which or that.
   ► the film I saw
   1 ........................................................................................................
   2 ........................................................................................................
   3 ........................................................................................................
   4 ........................................................................................................
   5 ........................................................................................................
   6 ........................................................................................................

3 Join the sentences in the place marked * without using who, which or that.
   ► The cup of coffee is on the table. You wanted it.
   The cup of coffee you wanted is on the table.
   1 I’m working for a man*. I’ve known him for twenty years.
   2 They played a lot of music*. I didn’t like it.
   3 The campsite* was very dirty. We found it.
   4 I’m going on holiday with some people*. I know them.
   5 That book* is very good. You gave it to me.
   6 The ring* belonged to her grandmother. She lost it.
   7 I’m driving a car*. I bought it 15 years ago.
   8 The papers* are on the table. You wanted them.

4 Write three sentences beginning Everybody I know ...
   ► Everybody I know likes rock music.
   1 ........................................................................................................
   2 ........................................................................................................
   3 ........................................................................................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Some **verbs** have **prepositions** with them (see page 141) – for example **look at**, **listen to**. When **relative pronouns** are the **objects** of these verbs, there are **two possibilities**:

- **keep the preposition with the verb** (more informal; we can leave out who(m)/which/that.)

  The woman smiled. I was **looking at** her.  \[\rightarrow\]  The woman (whom/that) I was **looking at** smiled.
  
  The flat was dirty. He **lived in** it.  \[\rightarrow\]  The flat he **lived in** was dirty.

- **put the preposition before whom/which** (very formal)

  The woman **at whom** I was **looking** smiled.
  
  The flat **in which** he **lived** was dirty.

1. **Change these expressions to make them more conversational. Use that.**

   a boy with whom I went to school  \[\rightarrow\]  a boy that I went to school with

   1 the girl about whom I was talking  \[\rightarrow\]  the girl about that I was talking
   2 the people for whom I work  \[\rightarrow\]  the people for whom I work
   3 the house in which I live  \[\rightarrow\]  the house in which I live
   4 the music to which you are listening  \[\rightarrow\]  the music to which you are listening
   5 the bus on which I go to work  \[\rightarrow\]  the bus on which I go to work

2. **Rewrite the expressions from Exercise 1, but leave out that.**

   a boy I went to school with  \[\rightarrow\]  a boy I went to school with

   1  \[\rightarrow\]  3
   2  \[\rightarrow\]  4
   3  \[\rightarrow\]  5

3. **Look at the information about Helen, and then make sentences (like the example) about the people in her life.**

   Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom.

   a friend she lives with  \[\rightarrow\]  the friend she lives with

   1 Eric is
   2 Monica is
   3 Karen is
   4 Emily and Jack are
   5 Tom is

4. **Now write sentences (like the example) about Helen’s birthday presents.**

   For Helen’s birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings.

   a handbag  \[\rightarrow\]  with gave her a handbag

   1 The man she works
   2 The woman
   3 The 80-year-old woman
   4 The people
   5 The man
relative what  It was just what I wanted.

We can use what to mean ‘the thing(s) which/that’ or ‘anything that’.
Have you got what you need for your journey? (=‘... the things that you need ...’)
I’m sorry about what happened. ‘Can I have something to eat?’ ‘Take what you like.’

We use what with a singular verb.
What I bought was mostly very cheap. (NOT What I bought were ...)

1 Change the words in italics to what.

1 The things that she said weren’t true.
   What she said wasn’t true.

2 The things that he did made everybody angry.

3 Take anything that you want.

4 Soap – that’s the thing that I forgot to pack!

5 She gave me a watch. It was just the thing that I wanted.

6 That child does anything that he likes.

7 The things that I read in the paper make me unhappy.

8 Don’t tell me things that I know already.

9 The thing that I like best in life is doing nothing.

2 Write a sentence beginning What I need is ...

We use that, not what, after anything, something, nothing, everything, all and the only thing.

You can take anything that you want. (NOT ... anything what you want.)
The shop had nothing that I wanted.  All that I could do was stand and watch.
Money is the only thing in the world that matters to him.

3 Put in that or what.

1 I believe everything ............. she says.

2 .............. she did surprised everybody.

3 I can’t give you ............. you want.

4 He said nothing .............. was important.

5 I can’t eat .............. I like.

6 .............. you need is a holiday.

7 I can’t eat everything ............. I like.

8 The only thing ............. I forgot was toothpaste.

9 Ask Peter – he’ll tell you ............. you need to know.

10 She said something ............. was very helpful.
relative pronouns: more practice

1 Use of *who* and *which*. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using *who* or *which*.

Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it.  
Yesterday I saw a film which you would like.

1  I know a man.* He writes film music.

2  The bus* got to London twenty minutes late. I took it.

3  We have friends*. They live in Chicago.

4  The car* isn't very good. I bought it last month.

5  We stayed in a hotel*. It had a beautiful garden.

6  I didn't like the man*. My sister married him.

7  The people* weren't very interesting. They were at the party.

8  Tim uses long words*. I can't understand them.

9  The computer* crashes every five minutes. I'm using it.

10  The woman* is terribly nice. She works in the flower shop.

2 Use of *that*. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using *that*.

1  The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.

2  These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper.

3  The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons.

4  The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door.

5  I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them.

6  What did you do with the money*? We collected it.

7  People* are called linguists. They study languages.

8  We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.

9  The oranges* are all bad. You bought them.

10  Why did you throw away the soup*? I cooked it.
Leaving out **who**, **which** or **that**. Rewrite the words *in italics* without relative pronouns if it's possible. If not, write 'No change'.

1. *The people who live next door are German.*
2. *The clock that I bought doesn't work.*
3. *I didn't like the film which I saw last night.*
4. *The letter that came for you.*
5. *It was a journey that took twelve hours.*
6. *He was a man that I really disliked.*
7. *What happened to that dog which you had?*
8. *I know a woman who speaks eight languages.*
9. *Do you know anybody who can play the trumpet?*
10. *Did you see those earrings that I bought for Helen?*

**Grammar in a text.** Cross out **that** if it can be left out.

'How was that hotel that I suggested?' 'That hotel! The rooms that they put us in were like cupboards, the beds that they gave us were much too small, and the extra blankets that we asked for never arrived. The 'full English breakfast' that they served was uneatable, and the 'French champagne' that we ordered at dinner was undrinkable. And that brochure that you showed me was full of lies. The 'view of the sea' that they talked about was a view of the car park, and the gym that they advertised wasn't there. And then, the bill that we got at the end was unbelievable. Never again!'

**Position of prepositions.** Make these expressions more conversational.

1. a boy to whom I talked  
2. the book at which I was looking  
3. the hotel in which we stayed  
4. the place to which I drove  
5. those people to whom we were talking  
6. the train on which we travelled  
7. some people with whom I work  
8. the place about which I was telling you  
9. the pen with which I write  
10. the small village in which my mother lives

**Grammar and vocabulary: jewellery**

Read the text and complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Anna, Naomi, Sally, Jane, Jessica and Thalia have all got rich boyfriends. For Christmas, Anna wanted a gold watch, Naomi wanted a diamond brooch, Sally wanted sapphire earrings, Jane wanted a pearl necklace, Jessica wanted a ruby ring and Thalia wanted a silver bracelet. But:

1. Anna got a diamond brooch, so **Anna got what Naomi wanted.**
2. Naomi got a ruby ring, so
3. Sally got a silver bracelet, so
4. Jane got a gold watch, so
5. Jessica got a pearl necklace, so
6. Thalia got sapphire earrings, so

**Internet exercise.** Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find five simple sentences beginning "Everybody I know likes ...". Write one yourself.

1. Everybody I know likes  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6. (Your sentence)
relative pronouns: revision test

1 Which answer is right: A, B or both?
   ▶ The people ... play loud music very late.   A who live downstairs   B live downstairs
   ▶ I don't much like the music .... A they play B that they play
   1 The girls ... gave me flowers for my birthday.   A with whom I work   B that I work with
   2 I don't want a phone ... more intelligent than me.   A that is B is
   3 Where's the paper ... ?   A that you wrote the address on   B that you wrote the address on it
   4 I like people ... laugh at themselves.   A can B who can
   5 ... she said made me very angry.   A What B That what
   6 Yesterday everything ... was wrong. There are days like that.   A I did B that I did
   7 'What do you call a thing that ... bottles?' 'A bottle-opener.' A opens B it opens
   8 There are the keys .... A I was looking for B that I was looking for
   9 The train ... was very uncomfortable.   A in which we travelled  B which we travelled in
   10 There's a shop near here ... open all night.   A that stays  B which stays
   11 I've found the shoes .... A that I lost  B that I lost them
   12 Do you know anybody ... Russian?   A who speaks B speaks
   13 She married a man ... on holiday.   A she met B that she met
   14 The woman ... wanted to speak to James.   A phoned B who phoned
   15 Who were those people that you ...?   A were talking to  B were talking to them

2 Six of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
   ▶ The people which live next door have got five children.   A who live next door
   ▶ Do you know a shop which sells good cheese?   Correct
   1 I didn't understand the language which she was speaking.   Correct
   2 We stayed in a hotel which had a beautiful garden.   Correct
   3 I didn't understand the language she was speaking.   Correct
   4 Is the book you're reading interesting?   Correct
   5 I didn't understand the language that she was speaking.   Correct
   6 The woman came to dinner stayed very late.   Correct
   7 A vet is a doctor who works with animals.   Correct
   8 I didn't like the man which my sister married.   Correct
   9 Did I tell you about the film which we saw last night?   Correct
   10 Eric said a word which I couldn't understand it.   Correct
   11 I'm spending the day with some people I know.   Correct
   12 People what live in London are called 'Londoners'.   Correct
   13 There's the man I was telling you about.   Correct
   14 The train I came home on was an hour late.   Correct
   15 I don't like people that you can't relax with them.   Correct

3 Put in that or what.
   1 I like everything .............. you cook.   6 I learnt nothing .............. was useful.
   2 Nobody remembers everything .............. they do.   7 Peter will tell you .............. you have to do.
   3 .............. I said shocked everybody.   8 I can't wear .............. I like at work.
   4 The only thing .............. I need is a toothpaste.   9 .............. you need is a long holiday.
   5 They couldn't give me .............. I asked for.   10 Amy said something .............. was interesting.
When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech. Tenses, here-and-now words (like this, here, today) and pronouns (like I, you) may change in indirect speech. This is because the time, place and speaker may be different.

'I really like it here.' Bill said that he really liked it there.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say and think.

Bill said he really liked it there.

Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions.

'What is your phone number?' He asked me what my phone number was.

'Do you like cherries?' She asked me if I liked cherries.

We can use object + infinitive (with to) after ask and tell.

I asked him to make some coffee. She told the children not to make a noise.

PROMISES, PROMISES

'You said I was beautiful.'
'You are more beautiful every day.'
'You said you loved me.'
'And it's true. I love you. Deeply. Passionately.'
'You told me you would love me for ever.'
'And I will. For ever and ever.'
'You said you would never look at another woman.'
'I have never looked at another woman. I shut my eyes when one comes close.'
'You told me you were rich.'
'We have a solid gold bath with diamond taps.'
'You told me you wanted children.'
'We have thirteen children.'
'You said you could cook.'
'I cook you a magnificent five-course dinner every night.'
'You told me you would bring me a cup of tea in bed every morning.'
'You get a cup of tea in bed every morning. With biscuits and the newspaper.'
'You said you could play the saxophone.'
'I am a world-famous saxophonist.'
'You promised that you would take me to Hawaii.'
'We have just come back from three months in Hawaii.'
'You said you would mend the dishwasher.'
'Sorry. I forgot.'
'You see. I can't believe a word you say.'
tenses and pronouns  Bill said he was really happy.

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech. Tenses and pronouns (I, you etc) change in indirect speech if the time and speaker change. For example, present tenses become past; I may become he or she; my may become his or her.

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech. Tenses and pronouns (I, you etc) change in indirect speech if the time and speaker change. For example, present tenses become past; I may become he or she; my may become his or her.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOMEBODY SAID/THOUGHT</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'I'm happy.'</td>
<td>Bill said that he was happy. (NOT Bill said that I'm happy.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I have a problem.'</td>
<td>I thought that I had a problem. (NOT I thought that I have a problem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'She likes me.'</td>
<td>He knew that she liked him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'My feet are cold.'</td>
<td>She said her feet were cold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say, think.

Bill said he was really happy.  I thought it was a great party.

Put in the correct pronouns (I etc) or possessives (my etc).

1. ‘She likes me.’ He knew she liked ...............
   1. I speak French.’ He said .............. spoke French.
   2. ‘I’m sorry.’ She said ................. was sorry.
   3. ‘Kate phoned me.’ She said Kate had phoned .............
   4. ‘We want our money.’ They said ................. wanted ................. money.
   5. ‘I’m tired.’ He said ................. was tired.
   6. ‘I can’t help you.’ She told me she couldn’t help ..............
   7. ‘We’re leaving.’ They said ................. were leaving.
   8. ‘I’ve lost my coat.’ He said ................. had lost ................. coat.
   9. ‘I like my job.’ She told me ................. liked ................. job.
  10. ‘Where are our tickets?’ They asked where ................. tickets were.

Note the difference between say and tell.

Tell must have a personal object: we tell somebody something.

She told me I was late. (NOT She told I was late.)
They told Anna the wrong time. (NOT They told the wrong time to Anna.)

Say doesn't need a personal object: we say something (to somebody).

She said I was late. (NOT She said me I was late.)
I said nothing to the police. (NOT I said the police nothing.)

Circle the correct answer.

1. I said / told the driver I wanted to stop.
2. My mother said / told there was a letter for me.
3. Everybody said / told I looked beautiful.
4. Why did you say / tell the lessons were expensive?
5. Ross said / told the waiter he couldn’t pay.
6. I didn’t say / tell Peter that I was going away.
7. Nobody said / told me that the shop was closed.
8. Mia said / told that she would wait at the bus stop.
When we tell people what somebody said in the past, there is a time difference. (For example, somebody said something on Sunday, and I tell you about it on Monday.) Because of this, tenses usually change as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH ON SUNDAY</th>
<th>TENSE CHANGE</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH ON MONDAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The children are in Ireland. My TV isn't working.</td>
<td>AM/ARE/IS → WAS/WERE</td>
<td>Karen said her children were in Ireland. He said his TV wasn't working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have a meeting at 4.00. Sue has passed her exam.</td>
<td>HAVE/HAS → HAD</td>
<td>She said she had a meeting at 4.00. Sally told me Sue had passed her exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will probably be late.</td>
<td>WILL → WOULD</td>
<td>I thought I would probably be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can have three tickets.</td>
<td>CAN → COULD</td>
<td>The man said I could have three tickets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn't matter, Martin.</td>
<td>DO/DOES → DID</td>
<td>I told Martin it didn't matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The train leaves at 6.00. We all speak English.</td>
<td>SIMPLE PRESENT → SIMPLE PAST</td>
<td>The timetable said the train left at 6.00. She said they all spoke English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I forgot my keys.</td>
<td>SIMPLE PAST → PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>He said he had forgotten his keys.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech, changing the tenses. Begin He/She/They said ...

- **SALLY:** 'I'm tired.' ...She said (that) she was tired.
- **ANNA:** 'My sister needs a car.'
- **DANIEL:** 'I have to phone Andrew.'
- **MARY:** 'Nobody wants to help me.'
- **HELEN:** 'The radio doesn't work.'
- **BEN:** 'I will be in Paris in July.'
- **MIKE:** 'I like the red sweater.'
- **DAVID:** 'I can't swim.'
- **ALICE:** 'My parents are travelling.'
- **MARIA:** 'The lessons are very good.'
- **BRAD AND AMY:** 'We haven’t heard from Joseph.'

4. Look at the picture to see what John thought when he was small. Write his thoughts in indirect speech.

He thought animals could talk.

5. What did you think when you were small? Write three or more sentences.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
indirect questions  She asked him what his name was.

Indirect questions have a different word order from direct questions, and no question marks: ???

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION:</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monica said, 'Where is John?'</td>
<td>I said, 'When can you come?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monica asked where John was.</td>
<td>I asked when she could come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NOT Monica asked where was John?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We don’t use do in indirect questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION:</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'What do you want?'</td>
<td>'Where does Andrew live?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She asked me what I wanted.</td>
<td>I asked him where Andrew lived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NOT She asked me what did I want.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A policewoman stopped a driver in London and asked him some questions. Write the questions in indirect speech.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Indirect Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘What is your name?’</td>
<td>She asked him what his name was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Where do you live?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Where do you work?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Where are you going?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Where have you been?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘What is the number of your car?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Why are you driving on the right?’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION:</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you know Tim?</td>
<td>He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you French?</td>
<td>She asked if/whether I was French.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
present reporting verbs  *She says she comes from London.*

After *present* verbs (for example *she says, I think*) we *don't change* the tenses.

**DIRECT QUESTION:** ‘Well, yes, I *come* from London.’ ‘Funny – you *have* a Scottish accent.’

**INDIRECT QUESTION:** *She says she comes* from London, but I think she *has* a Scottish accent.

1. **Complete the indirect speech sentences.**
   - ‘I’m Irish.’  
     → He says *he’s Irish.*
   - ‘Where is Peter?’  
     → She wants to know *where Peter is.*
   - ‘Did John phone?’  
     → I don’t know *if John phoned.*
   - ‘We live in Greece.’  
     → They say *
   - ‘I went to Belfast yesterday.’  
     → She says *
   - ‘I’ve been ill.’  
     → He says *
   - ‘It’s going to rain.’  
     → She thinks *
   - ‘I’ll ask my sister.’  
     → She says *
   - ‘We’re going to be rich.’  
     → They believe *
   - ‘Is lunch ready?’  
     → He wants to know *
   - ‘Where did I put my keys?’  
     → I don’t remember *
   - ‘I’m getting a cold.’  
     → I think *
   - ‘This is the right answer.’  
     → I know *

We can ask questions politely by saying *Do you know ...? or Can you tell me ...? + indirect question.*

*Where does she live? → Do you know where she lives? Is he at home? → Can you tell me if he’s at home?*

2. **Rewrite the questions.**
   - What does this word mean?  
     → Do you know *what this word means?*
   - Is there a lesson today?  
     → Can you tell me *if there’s a lesson today?*
   - Where can I buy tickets?  
     → Can you *
   - How much does it cost?  
     → Do *
   - Has John phoned?  
     → Can *
   - Must I pay now?  
     → Can *
   - Does Maria like steak?  
     → Can *
   - Where did I park the car?  
     → Do *

We can also use *indirect questions* in answers.

*Sorry, I don’t know where she lives.*  
*I can’t remember if he’s married.*

3. **Don’t give the answers! But write sentences beginning *I know, I don’t know, I’d like to know,*  
   *I don’t want to know, I don’t care or I can’t remember.*
   - Who built the Eiffel Tower?  
     → *I know who built the Eiffel Tower.*
   - What languages do Irish people speak?  
     → *
   - What do elephants eat?  
     → *
   - Does the British Museum open on Christmas Day?  
     → *
   - Was King William II a tall man?  
     → *
   - Do birds dream?  
     → *

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I’m, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
When we tell people what somebody said, we may have to change words like here, this, today and now. This is because the place and time have changed since the words were spoken.

BILL IN IRELAND IN DECEMBER

I like it here.
I'm going fishing this week.
I'm not working today.
What do you want to do now?

JOE IN LONDON IN MARCH

Bill said he liked it there / in Ireland.
He said he was going fishing that week.
He said he wasn't working that day.
He asked what I wanted to do then/next.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH: ‘here and now’ words</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH: ‘there and then’ words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 here 5 today</td>
<td>A that day ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 now 6 tonight</td>
<td>B that night ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 this 7 last week</td>
<td>C that ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 tomorrow 8 next week</td>
<td>D the day before ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 yesterday</td>
<td>E the next week ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F the next day ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G there .....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H the week before ......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I then ......</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A friend of yours said these sentences a month ago in another country.
Now you are telling somebody what she said.
Complete the sentences with the correct ‘there and then’ words.

1 ‘I'm not happy here.’                      She said she wasn't happy there.
2 ‘I hate this place.’                       She said she hated there.
3 ‘I left home last week.’                  She said she had left home there.
4 ‘I wrote to my father yesterday.’           She said she had written to her father there.
5 ‘Are you leaving today?’                  She asked me if I was leaving there.
6 ‘Where will you be tonight?’               She asked where I would be there.
7 ‘I’ll phone you tomorrow.’                 She said she would phone me there.

Another friend of yours said these sentences two weeks ago in another town.
Now you are telling somebody what he said. Write the sentences with the correct tenses and ‘there and then’ words.

1 ‘I'm really happy here.’                  He said he was really happy there.
2 ‘I love this place.’                      .................................................................
3 ‘I saw a great film yesterday.’           .................................................................
4 ‘I’m going to another party tonight.’     .................................................................
5 ‘Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?’    .................................................................
6 ‘My girlfriend will be here next week.’   .................................................................
infinitives  *She told me to get out.*

We use *ask* or *tell* + object + infinitive (with **to**), to say what people want(ed) us to do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH</th>
<th>INDIRECT SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Please close the door.'</td>
<td><em>She asked me to close</em> the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Could you phone Angela?'</td>
<td><em>I asked John to phone</em> Angela.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Get out!'</td>
<td><em>She told me to get out.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Don't worry.'</td>
<td><em>The doctor always tells her not to worry.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 **Write past indirect speech sentences.**
   - MARK  Peter, could you close the window? *(ask)*
     Mark asked Peter to close the window.
   - THE TEACHER: Andrew, don’t talk so loud. *(tell)*
     The teacher told Andrew not to talk so loud.
   - DAVE: Sandra, please give me your phone number. *(ask)*
   - THE BOSS: James, I’d like you to work late. *(tell)*
   - JUDY: Kim, please don’t tell Karen about Ryan. *(ask)*
   - MR SANDERS: Fred, please don’t smoke in my car. *(ask)*
   - THE GENERAL: Colonel Walker, take 100 men and cross the river. *(tell)*
   - ANNA: Polly, you mustn’t study so hard. *(tell)*

2 **Joe left home for university. His family gave him lots of advice. Look at the picture and complete the sentences.**
   - His mother *told him to write* every week.
   - His grandmother *told him not to forget* to brush his teeth.
   - His girlfriend told *to* every day.
   - His mother *clean*. 
   - His father *hard*.
   - His sister *parties*.
   - His brother *exercise*.
   - His mother *every day*.
   - His father *late*.
   - His brother *with money*.
   - His sister *for money*.
   - His grandmother *properly*.

   We can use infinitives after how, what, when etc.

   *I don’t know how to cook fish.*  *She asked me what to write.*  *Tell me when to pay.*

3 **Write two sentences about yourself.**
   1. *I know how to* ...
   2. *I don’t know how to* ...
indirect speech: more practice

1 **Indirect questions.** Yesterday morning Peter asked his mother hundreds of questions. Here are some of them. Report them using indirect speech.

- ‘Why do cats have tails?’ He asked her why cats had tails.
- ‘Will I get all your money when you die?’ He asked her if she would get all her money when she died.
- ‘Can I have ice cream for breakfast?’
- ‘Why do the stars only come out at night?’
- ‘Why does Daddy have to work?’
- ‘Where is God?’
- ‘Will I be taller than you one day?’
- ‘Do you believe in Father Christmas?’
- ‘Is Scotland in London?’
- ‘When will I be rich?’
- ‘Why don’t French people speak English?’
- ‘How big is the universe?’

2 **Infinitives.** Yesterday morning Peter’s mother told him to do hundreds of things. Here are some of them. Report them using “She told him”.

- Say ‘Please’. She told him to say “Please”.
- Don’t ask so many questions. She told him not to ask so many questions.
- Wash your hands before breakfast.
- Don’t eat with your mouth open.
- Eat everything on your plate.
- Don’t talk with your mouth full.
- Make your bed.
- Clean your room.
- Polish your shoes.
- Put on a clean shirt.
- Don’t shout at your sister.
- Don’t be late for school.

3 **What to… etc.** Write sentences beginning John doesn’t know.

- ‘What should I tell Ann?’ John doesn’t know what to tell Ann.
- ‘How do I phone New York?’
- ‘Where do I pay?’
- ‘When do I start work?’
- ‘How do I switch the computer on?’
- ‘Where shall I put my coat?’
- ‘How much must I pay?’
- ‘What should I study?’
4 Grammar in a text. Read the letter and then complete the report.

Dear all,

Sorry I haven't written for a few weeks. I've been too busy. I'm having a great time; I'm going to parties every night. I'm doing a bit of work too. We had an exam last week. I hope I'll get good marks.

I only have one shirt - I've lost the others. Mum, can you buy me six more? And I can't find my raincoat. Is it at home?

My room here isn't very nice - I'll have to look for a better one. And the food here in college isn't much good, so I'm living on hamburgers. I've spent nearly all my money. Dad, can you send some more?

Can you give me Aunt Ellen's address? And I haven't heard from Sarah. Where is she living? And does Jasper want to come and spend two or three days down here with me?

That's all for now. Love to everybody.

Joe

In his letter Joe said he was sorry that he hadn't written for a few weeks.
It was because he was too busy. He told his family that he had a great time, but he was also doing some work too. He said he had an exam, and he hoped he would get good marks.

Joe said that he only owned one shirt, because he had lost the others. He asked his mother to buy him six more.
And he asked his father to buy him a raincoat at home.

His room wasn't very nice, he said, so he had to look for a better one. And because of the bad college food he was having to look for hamburgers.
He said he had nearly all his money, and asked his father to give him some more. Joe also asked his family to give him his Aunt Ellen's address.
And he asked them that he had heard from Sarah, and asked her to go and spend a few days with him.

5 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences beginning “We don't know what/where/when/how” + infinitive. Write some of them.
(Note that why + infinitive is very unusual.)

1
2
3
4
indirect speech: revision test

1 Put in *said* or *told*.

1  The newspaper ................. it would snow at the weekend.
2  Everybody ................. me I would pass the exam, but I didn’t.
3 I ................. the driver I knew the way.
4 My father ................. he was feeling tired because of working at weekends.
5 Everybody ................. Emma looked ill, but she was fine.
6 Luke ................. the doctor he had a lot of trouble sleeping.
7 I ................. my mother I wasn’t coming home before Saturday.
8 Nobody ................. me that the school was closed.
9 Rachel ................. that she would be back by one o’clock.
10 You never ................. me that you loved me.

2 Correct (√) or not (x)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I knew that I will see her again.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Andrew told me he hated his brother’s wife.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leo phoned me on Sunday and said he went to a great party yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I said that I was sorry, but that I’m really tired.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I knew I would forget her name in a few days.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You told me I like the new car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jack said he had to phone Karl that evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lucy said that nobody likes her.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I thought the TV didn’t work, but I was wrong.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maggie said she would see me soon, but I never saw her again.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I saw Carola in January and she told me I was unhappy just now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shakespeare told his wife that you don’t understand my work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Nine of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Do you remember what time the play starts?</th>
<th>Correct</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>John asked how did I feel.</td>
<td>how I felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I asked what the time was.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn’t know if I was late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A man asked me where was the post office.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you know when is arriving Jane?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn’t know whether I was late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you know where all those people work?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you say me what the time is?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The policeman asked me where I am going.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The children wanted to know was I English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I asked him what he wanted?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don’t know what does this word mean.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nobody understood what Sophie wants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’d like to know what you are thinking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please tell me what you want.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don’t know why did she say that.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I’m, don’t*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.
grammar summary

above across against along at behind between by down during
for from in in front of into near off on opposite out of over
past round through to under until till up

Some prepositions are difficult, because they have more than one meaning. (A preposition in one language often has several different translations into another language.)

In this section, we explain and practise the most important prepositions: those that we use to talk about time, place and movement.

- For since and for, see page 65.
- For the place of prepositions in questions, see page 111; with relative pronouns, see page 258.
- For -ing forms after prepositions, see page 132.
- For verbs followed by prepositions, see page 141.
- For lists of common expressions with prepositions, see pages 305-306.
at, in and on (time)

We use *at* with clock times.

*I'll see you at 4.15.* The plane leaves *at six.* *Call me at lunchtime.*

But we say *What time...?*, NOT *USUALLY* *At what time...?*

**What time** is the film?

We use *on* with days, dates and expressions like *Monday morning* and *Friday afternoon.*

*I'll be at home on Tuesday.* We get up late *on Sundays.*

The meeting's *on June 23rd.* I'm always sleepy *on Monday mornings.*

I had to work *on Christmas Day.*

---

1. **Put in at or on.**
   1. What are you doing .......... Saturday?
   2. Can you wake me .......... 6.30?
   3. The classes start .......... September 8th.
   4. I'll be in late .......... Tuesday morning.
   5. I have my guitar lessons .......... 10.00 .......... Wednesdays.
   8. Can we meet .......... lunchtime .......... Tuesday?
   9. I'll be home .......... 5.00.
  10. I'll see you .......... Friday evening.
  11. She always phones .......... midnight.
  12. I was born .......... March 21st.

---

We say *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, but at night.*

She was born *at 6.16 in the morning.* I work best *in the evening.*

This street is very quiet *at night.*

We use *in* with weeks, seasons, months, years and centuries.

We're going to Denmark *in the first week of May.*

I always get unhappy *in the winter.* My birthday's *in March.*

Shakespeare died *in 1616.*

There were terrible wars *in the 17th century.*

We say *at Christmas, at Easter and at the weekend.*

(American English *on the weekend*)

**What are you doing at the weekend?** Did you go away at Christmas?

---

2. **Put in in, at or on.**
   1. We went to Wales .......... the weekend.
   2. I go skiing .......... February.
   5. I don't like driving .......... night.
   6. Our garden is beautiful .......... the spring.
   7. I stop work .......... 5.00 .......... the afternoon.
   8. I'll finish university .......... June.
   11. I'm never hungry .......... the morning.
   12. It gets hot here .......... the summer.
   13. I'm going to Spain .......... Easter.
   14. The conference is .......... the last week of May.
   15. My grandfather was born .......... the 19th century.
We don’t use prepositions before common expressions with this, next, last and every.

What are you doing this afternoon? Goodbye. See you next week.
Theo was here last Tuesday. We go on holiday to the same place every year.

Today is Wednesday March 16th 2011. Rewrite the sentences using this, next, last and every.

> I met her in 2010. I met her last year.
1. I’ll see you on March 23rd.
2. It rained non-stop from March 7th to March 13th.
3. Business was bad in February 2011.
4. Shall we go out on March 16th in the evening?
5. We’re going to America in April 2011.
6. Ann had a car crash on March 9th.
7. I’m going to change my job in 2012.
9. I’ve spent too much money already in March.
10. The new school will be open in March 2012.

To say how long it takes to finish something, we use in.

They built our house in three months. Your soup will be ready in ten minutes.

My Australian friend Sheila is saving money because she wants to buy a sports car. She is saving $1 a day, starting tomorrow.

> When will she have $2 in her savings account? In two days.
1. When will she have $5? 
2. When will she have $7? In a 
3. When will she have $14? 
4. When will she have $30? 
5. When will she have $365? 
6. The car costs $36,500. When will she have it?

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: dates

WE WRITE
1999
17(th) March 2011
OR March 17(th) 2011
OR 17.3.(2011)
OR 17/3/2011
American English: 3.17.2011

WE SAY
nineteen ninety-nine
the seventeenth of March, two thousand and eleven
March the seventeenth, two thousand and eleven
March (the) seventeenth, two thousand (and) eleven

Say these dates:
1 21.3.1999 2 14 February 1960 3 July 28 1846 4 6/5/03 5 May 9 1984 6 17 December 2012

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
from ... to, until and by

We use till (informal) or until to say when an action or situation ends.

I’ll be in London till Thursday. We played football until 5 o’clock.

1 Complete the sentences with until or till and expressions from the box.

the age of 14 July lunchtime six o’clock in the morning Saturday the end

It was a great party. We danced until six o’clock in the morning.

1 I’m going to have a sandwich now. I can’t wait

2 Granny’s coming on Monday for a few days. She’s going to stay

3 When I was young, you had to go to school

4 I didn’t like the film, so I didn’t stay

5 I’m doing a three-month computer course; it goes on

We can give the beginning and end of an action or situation with from ... to/until/till.

I worked from 8.00 to 6.00 yesterday. We’ll be away from July 16 until/till August 4.

2 Make sentences about John’s Sunday morning with to, till or until.

read paper 7.30 – 8.00 He read the paper from 7.30 to 8.00.

OR He read the paper from 7.30 until/till 8.00.

washed car 8.00 – 9.00

talked to woman next door 9.00 – 9.15

played tennis 10.00 – 11.00

talked to friends 11.00 – 11.30

went for a walk 11.30 – 12.45

3 Write two sentences with from ... to/till/untill about things you did yesterday.

1

2

We use by (= ‘not later than’) to say that something happens at or before a certain moment.

UNTIL

You can keep the car until Sunday.

BY

You really must bring it back by 12.00 on Sunday.

NOW

SUNDAY

FRI... SAT... SUN 11.00... SUN 12.00... SUN 1.00

OK

not OK

4 Put in by or until.

1 This book must go back to the library ...

2 The film goes on ...

3 Can you finish painting the room ...

4 If I give you this coat to clean, can you do it ...

5 I must find some money ...

6 Can you wait for my answer ...

276 PREPOSITIONS
for, during and while

**For + period** tells you how long.  
**During** tells you when.

The journey lasted **for three days.**  
There was a rainstorm **during the night.**

I slept **for 20 minutes during the lesson.**

**Put in for or during.**

1. I lived in Mexico ............... six years.
2. I got a headache .................. the examination.
3. We visited Kyoto ............... our holiday in Japan.
4. The electricity went off ............ two hours .................. the afternoon.
5. Alex and his wife met .................. the war.
6. Could I talk to you .................. a few minutes?
7. I usually get a lot of phone calls .................. the morning.
8. She and her boyfriend have been together .................. a long time.

**During** is a **preposition:** we use **during + noun.**

**While** is a **conjunction:** we use **while + subject + verb** (often past progressive - see page 52).

They got into the house **during the night.**  
They got into the house **while I was asleep.**

He got ill **during the journey.**  
He got ill **while he was travelling.**

**Change the expressions.**

- during the meal (I / eat) ........... while I was eating
- while I was travelling (journey) ........... during the journey
1. during the game (they / play)
2. while we were listening (lesson)
3. while they were fighting (war)
4. during her lesson (she / teach)
5. during his speech (he / speak)
6. during the conversation (they / talk)
7. while she was in hospital (illness)
8. during the snowstorm (it / snow)

**GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY:** useful expressions with **for**

Look at the expressions in the box, and choose suitable ones to complete the sentences.  
Different answers are possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for a moment</th>
<th>for a minute or two</th>
<th>for a few minutes</th>
<th>for an hour or so (= ‘about an hour’)</th>
<th>for a couple of hours</th>
<th>for a long time</th>
<th>for ages</th>
<th>for years and years</th>
<th>for ever</th>
<th>for life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. They waited ........................................, but the bus didn’t come.
2. I will love you ..................................
3. Could I talk to you ...................................?
4. I played tennis ................................... and then went home.
5. I went to sleep ................................... during the opera.
6. She usually stops work at 11 o’clock ...................... and has a cup of coffee.
7. I often watch TV ................................... before I go to bed.
8. They put him in prison .................................
We use *in* with **3-dimensional spaces** like boxes, rooms, towns or countries.
We use *on* with **2-dimensional surfaces** like floors, tables, walls or ceilings.

'Where's Joe?' 'In the kitchen.'
There's nothing in the fridge. Tara's in Poland.

Why are all those papers on the floor? The church has wonderful paintings on the ceiling.
She had photos of all her family on the wall.

People are in clothes. Clothes and jewellery (earrings etc) are on people.

Who is the man in the grey suit? That sweater looks good on you. She had a ring on every finger.

Put in *in* or *on*.

1. a bath  
2. a roof  
3. a tree  
4. a table  
5. a cup  

6. her arm  
7. a plate  
8. your head  
9. your head  
10. a door

We say *in a book*, *in the newspaper*, *in a story* (**BUT on a page**); *in a street*.

Is there anything interesting in the paper? Her photo is on page 4. They live in Park Street.

Put in words from the boxes with *in* or *on*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>children's stories</th>
<th>her first finger</th>
<th>my diary</th>
<th>the office</th>
<th>the roof of the car</th>
<th>the cupboard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **In children’s stories**, animals can talk.  
1. ‘Are you free next Tuesday?’ ‘Just a minute. I’ll look ...........................................’  
2. Is Sandra ........................................... today?  
3. She had a wonderful diamond ring ...........................................  
4. ‘Where’s the salt?’ ...........................................  
5. The cat likes to sleep ...........................................  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a little village</th>
<th>his T-shirt</th>
<th>my pocket</th>
<th>a piece of paper</th>
<th>the wall</th>
<th>your car</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 6. Don’t leave your keys ........................................... when you get out.  
7. ........................................... it said ‘Aberdeen University Football Club’.  
8. She had pictures of pop singers ........................................... in her room.  
9. They live ........................................... near Belfast.  
10. I wrote her address ........................................... and put it ........................................... |

Note that we say *in a car* **BUT on a bus/train/plane/ship**.

Granny arrived in a taxi, as usual. I'm leaving on the 4.15 train.
at (place)

I’ll meet you at the cinema.

The train stops at Slough, Reading and Didcot.

We often use at to show where something happens – for example, with meeting places or points on a journey.

I’ll see you this evening at Sarah’s house. You have to change planes at Karachi.

I saw Linda waiting at the bus stop. Turn left at the next corner.

We often use at with words for things that people do, or the places where they do them.

at a football match at breakfast, lunch etc at a restaurant at work at the office
at the theatre at the cinema at the station at a party at (the) college/university

Put in words from the box with at.

a Chinese restaurant a theatre Birmingham breakfast the cinema the crossroads the hotel bar the party the station the traffic lights work

1 Paul crashed his car because he didn’t stop at the traffic lights.
2 Are there any good films this week?
3 Her train was terribly late – I spent hours waiting at Mike’s house on Saturday?
4 We had a really good meal in Park Street last night.
5 I saw my first Shakespeare play in a small town in Ireland.
6 The boss doesn’t let us take personal phone calls because she’s still asleep.
7 I’ll meet you downstairs at 6.00.
8 ‘Where’s the car park?’ Turn right.

We often use at with the top, the bottom, the side, the beginning and the end.

My room’s at the top of the house. Begin at the beginning.

Put in at the top, at the bottom etc.

1 Their house is down of the hill.
2 I never have any money of the month.
3 I stopped for a minute of the stairs to have a rest.
4 The best fruit is always of the tree, where you can’t get it.
5 Maria wasn’t there of the lesson; she came in late.

Sometimes in and at are both possible. We prefer at when we are thinking about the activity – what we do in the place – and in when we think about the place itself.

We had lunch at the station restaurant. It was very hot in the big dining room.

→ For expressions with no article like at breakfast, at work, see page 162.
other prepositions of place

above  against  behind  between  by  in front of  near  opposite  under

Anna is sitting between Tim and John.

Come and sit by me.

We camped by the lake.

Montreal is in eastern Canada, near Ottawa.

I left my bicycle against the shop window.

Joe's car is parked in front of our house.
There's a bus stop opposite our house.

Lucy is in front of Beth.
Beth is behind Lucy.

Andy is opposite Mike.

The dog is hiding under the table.

The plane is flying above the clouds.
1 Choose the correct prepositions.
   - I usually sit ... by a window in class, so I can look out if I get bored. (behind, by, in front of)
   1 There was a big bird flying high up ... the trees. (above, against, opposite)
   2 They live in a beautiful old house ... a river. (above, by, under)
   3 There's a big clock ... the door of the station. (above, against, between)
   4 I sat down ... Marion and looked into her eyes. (above, behind, by)
   5 You can park your car ... the house. (against, behind, between)
   6 I'll meet you at the station ... the clock. (against, between, under)
   7 The door wouldn't stay shut, so I put a chair ... it. (above, against, near)

2 Put in the correct prepositions.
   1 She put the money at the bottom of her suitcase, ... her clothes.
   2 Our house ... a bank and a supermarket, and just ... the police station.
   3 Please don't put your bicycle ... our wall.
   4 Sorry we're late - we were driving ... a slow bus all the way.
   5 I work in a small town ... Birmingham.
   6 In the theatre I couldn't see anything because there was a very tall man ... me.
   7 We usually have lunch in a little café ... the school, about five minutes' walk away.

3 Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.
   - above / near the travel agent
   - opposite / in front of the National Bank
   - against / between the two women
   - above / behind the child
   - near / by the travel agent
   - in front of / behind the restaurant
   - opposite / under the car
   - against / opposite the window
   - behind / between the banks
   - by / opposite the supermarket

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
Write the expressions under the correct photos. Use a dictionary if necessary.

across the river  along the yellow line  down the mountain  into the water
off the bike  over the fence  out of the shop  past the café
round the corner  through the gate  under the bridge  up the steps

1 ...........................................  2 ...........................................  3 ...........................................

4 ...........................................  5 ...........................................  6 ...........................................

7 ...........................................  8 ...........................................  9 ...........................................

10 .........................................  11 .........................................  12 .........................................
Cross out the words that are wrong.

- across the road / the church
- 1 along the corner / the road
- 2 up the mountain / the table
- 3 down the church / the stairs
- 4 over the corner / the wall
- 5 into the bank / the bridge
- 6 round the corner / the road

7 through the door / the railway line
8 off the police station / the table
9 out of the church / the stairs
10 under the bridge / the people
11 past the floor / the bank
12 across the river / the wall

Choose the correct prepositions and put them in the correct places.

- I went up the stairs and along the passage (along, into, out of, up)
- 1 Mrs Andrews got through Oxford Street (along, round, out of, over)
- 2 Alice walked down the steps to the river (along, down, through, over)
- 3 He walked slowly across the road (across, along, into, through)
- 4 Mandy went along the stairs and into her office (along, round, out of, over)
- 5 Go out of the supermarket (along, round, out of, over)
- 6 As soon as I got through the door, I walked into the passage (along, in, out of, past)
- 7 I got into the bed, walked into the bedroom, and looked into the window
- 8 It takes three hours to walk up the mountain (along, up)

We use to for movement, and at or in for position – where somebody/something is (see pages 278–279).

I went to the bus stop to meet Helen. I waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.

We can use from ... with to ...

He took five days to cycle from London to Edinburgh.

We get to a place, but we arrive at a place, or arrive in a big place (NOT arrive to).

It took three hours to get to Cambridge. I was tired when I arrived at the station.

We arrived in London very early in the morning.

Put in from, to, at or in.

1 Let's go to the country this weekend.
2 She spends hours in the bathroom.
3 Shall we drive to Scotland or go by train?
4 We flew directly to Berlin.
5 What time do we arrive in Paris?
6 After six days' walking, they got over a river.

7 I saw Annie standing at the bus stop.
8 When we arrived at her house she had already left.
9 Are there tigers in Africa?
10 It takes me about half an hour to get to work.

Write a few sentences about a journey that you have made, using from, to, at and in.

...}

NOTE: we get into and out of cars BUT on(to) and off buses/trains/planes/ships.
prepositions: more practice

1 Time. Circle the correct prepositions.

1 He phoned on / in Friday.
2 The party is at / on June 18th.
3 Are you at home at / on Christmas?
4 I'll be here during / for two months.
5 We get up late in / on Sunday mornings.
6 I often watch TV in / at night.
7 The film ends on / at 9.45.
8 You can't learn English in / by a month.

9 Hannah's birthday is on / in May.
10 What are you doing on / at Thursday?
11 Bring my bike back until / by Friday.
12 I'll work for / until 8.00 this evening.
13 I couldn't sleep for / during the night.
14 Stay here while / during I go shopping.
15 I play tennis at / in the weekend.

2 Expressions without prepositions. Today is Saturday August 13th 2011. Rewrite the expressions in italics using this, next, last and every.

I finished university in 2010. .................................................................
1 Joanne had a party on Saturday August 6th. ...........................................
2 I'm going to buy a new car in 2012. ...................................................
3 My holiday is in September 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 etc. ..........................
4 I've already bought too many clothes in August. ..............................
5 It was really hot from August 1st to August 7th. ...................................
6 Shall we go and see a film on August 14th in the evening? ..................
7 I'll be away on Saturday August 20th. .................................................
8 My brother was ill in July 2011. ...........................................................
9 We're going camping in September 2011. ...........................................
10 The new station will be ready in August 2012. ...................................

3 Movement. Cross out the wrong words.

across the river / the bank 6 up the mountain / the floor
1 along the church / the road 7 over the door / the wall
2 down the police station / the mountain 8 past the floor / the church
3 into the church / the table 9 round the corner / the railway line
4 off the corner / the table 10 through the door / the table
5 out of the church / the wall

4 Place and movement. Put in suitable prepositions.

He sat by/near the window, and looked out from time to time.
1 C comes ................. B and D in the alphabet.
2 I couldn't see the plane, because it was high ...................... the clouds.
3 I had to wait a long time at the post office, because the woman ............ me wanted a lot of different things.
4 There's a garage on the other side of the street just ................. our house.
5 Please don't put bicycles ..................... the shop window.
6 He turned round and walked away .................... the trees.
7 We cycled ..................... a little road ................... the river for about five kilometres.
8 Ann came .................... the church and walked slowly .................. the square.
9 I got ...................... the bus and went ................. the bank.
10 'Where's the swimming pool?' 'Drive ..................... the police station, .................
the railway bridge and ..................... the corner, and you'll see it on your left.'
5 **Place and movement. Write the opposites.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expressions</th>
<th>Opposites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on the train</td>
<td>off the train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 into the church</td>
<td>2 out of the church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 off the bus</td>
<td>3 on the bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 down the stairs</td>
<td>4 up the stairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 over the bridge</td>
<td>5 under the bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 out of the river</td>
<td>6 at the top of the stairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 in front of the door</td>
<td>7 behind the police station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 at the top of the stairs</td>
<td>8 up the mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 up the mountain</td>
<td>9 behind the police station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 behind the police station</td>
<td>10 at the beginning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 **Dates. Write these dates as you would say them.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dates</th>
<th>As you would say them</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006 two thousand and six</td>
<td>1 10.1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17th March the seventeenth</td>
<td>2 3/4/08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or March the seventeenth</td>
<td>3 October 4th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 23rd April</td>
<td>4 21st March, 1936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1st September</td>
<td>5 Oct 22, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 5th August, 2010</td>
<td>6 1/1/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 March 2, 1980</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 **GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: duration. Put in suitable expressions from the box.**

(Different answers are possible.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I feel as if I’ve known you</th>
<th>for ever</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I need to speak to you</td>
<td>for a couple of hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 The terrorists were sent to prison</td>
<td>for a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 We haven’t seen Peter</td>
<td>for a moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I’m going to rest</td>
<td>for an hour or so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 It’s been raining</td>
<td>for ever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I usually play tennis</td>
<td>for life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on Sundays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 We’ve lived in the same house</td>
<td>for years and years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Can you help me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 She went to sleep on the train just</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 I’m going out into the garden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 **Grammar in a text. Choose the correct prepositions.**

Dear Louise

I’m glad you can come 1 on / in Friday. You asked how to get to our house. It’s very easy. Get 2 in / on a No. 16 bus 3 opposite / along the police station, and get 4 off / out at the fourth stop just 5 above / by the new supermarket. Then walk 6 off / along Boston Street for about 300 metres, turn right 7 at / on the traffic lights, keep straight on 8 along / under the railway bridge, go 9 through / up the hill past the church, 10 round / across the corner by the pub, then 11 down / off the hill and 12 under / across the main road. That takes you into South Park. Walk 13 along / through the park and 14 out of / off the other side, turn left 15 round / in front of the school, and you’ll find yourself 16 on / in Green Road. Our house is the fourth on the left, just 17 out of / by the old railway station. You can’t miss it.

Love, Judy.

9 **Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“across the river”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“along the road”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“out of the church”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“off the table”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“up the mountain”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“over the wall”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“round the corner”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prepositions: revision test

1. Put in the correct words.
   1. Let's go to Cardiff ................. Tuesday. (in, at, while, on)
   2. The bridge ................. the river is closed. (along, over, up, through)
   3. The next meeting is ................. December 8th. (on, at, in, by)
   4. What do you usually do ................. the weekend? (on, at, in, by)
   5. Max fell ................. his bike and broke his leg. (down, on, out of, off)
   6. I need your answer ................. (in, by, at, until)
   7. I'm not free now, but I can talk to you ................. half an hour. (in, for, by)
   8. I slept ................. two hours this afternoon. (in, by, for, during)
   9. The quickest way to our house is ................. the park. (along, through, in, over)
  10. Let's go for a walk ................. the sun's shining. (while, during, for, along)

2. Put in suitable prepositions. (More than one may be possible.)
   1. I'm going to put this picture ................. my bedroom wall.
   2. I'll be away ................. June 1st ................. July 15th.
   3. Olivia lived in Cairo ................. three years.
   4. I didn't work very hard ................. my time at university.
   5. It says ................. the newspaper that there will be snow.
   6. Does this bus stop ................. the railway station?
   7. Your father's photo is ................. page 16.
   8. We're leaving ................. the 10.40 train.
   9. I always wear this ring ................. my little finger.
  10. Write your name ................. the top of the page.
  11. Can you clean this suit ................. 4 o'clock?
  12. A lot of people travel for a year ................. school and university.
  13. Pete met his girlfriend ................. a party.
  14. I'll be ready to go ................. ten minutes.
  15. I like walking ................. the river.

3. All these sentences are wrong. Correct the mistakes.
   ▶ I'll see you at Tuesday. .................
   1. She talked non-stop during three hours. .................
   2. Please let me have all the information until Saturday. .................
   3. Anna walked slowly out the room and down the stairs. .................
   4. There's a pub on the other side of the road in front of our house. .................
   5. Do you think you can swim through this river? .................
   6. There's a strange insect in the ceiling. .................
   7. It took a long time to drive over the town to the church. .................
   8. I'll see you on next Monday. .................
   9. Did you stay at home on Christmas? .................
  10. We have to get down the bus at the next stop. .................
grammar summary

We often leave words out if the meaning is clear. This is particularly common in spoken English. It often happens after auxiliary verbs.

- She said she would phone, but she didn't. (= ‘... she didn't phone!’)
- I'll finish the work as soon as I can. (= ‘... as soon as I can finish the work!’)

There are several common kinds of short spoken sentence made with subject + auxiliary verb:
- question tags: You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- short answers: ‘Did you see Patrick?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’
- reply questions: ‘I've got a headache.’ ‘Have you? I am sorry.’
- so do I, nor can I etc: ‘I was really cold on that bus.’ ‘So was I.’

We also often leave out infinitives (and other words) after to.

- I've never seen the Taj Mahal, but I'd like to. (= ‘... I'd like to see the Taj Mahal.’)

And we may leave out small words (pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginning of sentences.

- Don't know. (= ‘I don't know!’)
- Train's late. (= ‘The train’s late!’)
- Been waiting long? (= ‘Have you been waiting long?’)

'Forgotten your key again, George?'

'It's all coming back to me now. We were married once, weren't we?'

'Seen John?'

'Cold, isn't it?'

'Need any help?'

'Nor do I. '

'Don't think so.'

'No, we haven't.'

'Can't understand a word.'

'Do they?'
question tags  This music isn’t very good, is it?

Question tags are short questions that can follow sentences, especially in spoken English. We make question tags with auxiliary verb (have, can etc) or be + pronoun (I, you etc). We use question tags to ask if something is true, or to ask people to agree with us.

You haven’t got my keys, have you?  Louise will be here tomorrow, won’t she?  
This music isn’t very good, is it?  That child can run fast, can’t he?

Question tags are usually negative (isn’t) after affirmative (is) sentences, and not negative after negative sentences. We don’t put question tags after questions.

It is warm, isn’t it?  It isn’t cold, is it? (BUT NOT Is it cold; isn’t it?)

Negative tags are usually contracted (see page 301) – for example isn’t it? (NOT USUALLY is it not?)

The negative tag for I om isn’t aren’t l? (see page 301)

l’m late, aren’t I?

Question tag or nothing (−)? Circle the correct form.

I’m late, am I? / aren’t I? / −?
You can’t swim, can you? / can’t you? / −?
Has Anna phoned, has she? / hasn’t she? / −?
1 You’ll be here tomorrow, will you? / won’t you? / −?
2 The postman hasn’t come, has he? / hasn’t he? / −?
3 Are you ready, are you? / aren’t you? / −?
4 It’s dark in here, is it? / isn’t it? / −?
5 He can’t speak Greek, can he? / can’t he? / −?
6 The train’s late, is it? / isn’t it? / −?
7 The food wasn’t bad, was it? / wasn’t it? / −?
8 Have you done it, have you? / haven’t you? / −?
9 I’m too early, amn’t I? / aren’t I? / −?

If the sentence has an auxiliary verb or be, we use this in the question tag.

You would like coffee, wouldn’t you?  I’m not talking too fast, am I?
Sally doesn’t eat meat, does she?  You aren’t angry with me, are you?

If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the tag.

They went to Spain, didn’t they?  The lesson starts at 6.00, doesn’t it?

2 Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.

► You’re playing football tomorrow, aren’t you?
1 That’s the answer, ……………………
2 We’re seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, ……………………
3 She’s a lovely baby, ……………………
4 You’ll be OK, ……………………, Roger?
5 Your brother can tell us that, ……………………
6 Isabel likes brown bread, ……………………
7 This house gets hot in summer, ……………………

3 Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags.

► They weren’t at home, were they?
1 But he’s not at school now, ……………………
2 You can’t remember anything, ……………………
3 They don’t use much electricity, ……………………
4 She doesn’t look happy, ……………………
5 Those flowers don’t need much water, ……………………
6 That kid hasn’t done any work, ……………………
We can use there as a subject in question tags.

There's a letter for me, isn't there? There weren't any problems, were there?

4 Put in the question tags.
1 There was a phone call for me, ........................................
2 There are six more lessons this year, ................................
3 There's a meeting this afternoon, .....................................
4 There hasn't been any snow this year, ................................
5 There weren't many people at the party, ............................

5 Put in the correct question tags.
1 You don't know Alicia, .................................................... (do you?, don't you?, are you?)
2 Polly's looking well, ........................................................ (doesn't she?, isn't she?, is she?)
3 It's really cold today, ...................................................... (isn't it?, isn't there, doesn't it?)
4 You can't hear what she's saying, ...................................... (is she?, can you?, can't you?)
5 You'd like a drink, .......................................................... (wouldn't you?, don't you?, you would?)
6 They don't listen, ............................................................ (are they?, aren't they, do they?)
7 Carola's been away, .......................................................... (isn't she?, wasn't she?, hasn't she?)
8 I'm at the right address, .................................................... (am I?, aren't I?, amn't I?)
9 There's a problem, .......................................................... (isn't there?, isn't it?, is it?)
10 You like chocolate, .......................................................... (like you, aren't you?, don't you?)

6 Change these questions into statements with question tags.
   Do you work at Smith's? You work at Smith's, don't you?
1 Have they lived in France? They've ........................................
2 Did they all go home early? ................................................
3 Did it rain all last week? .....................................................
4 Does her brother write for the newspapers? ..............................
5 Do I need a visa? .............................................................
6 Would you like a holiday? ...................................................
7 Was the train late? ............................................................
8 Did Sarah forget your birthday? ............................................
9 Was there a letter for me? ..................................................
10 Am I in time for lunch? ....................................................

If a tag asks a real question, we say it with a rising intonation: the music of the voice goes up.
If a tag just asks for agreement, we use a falling intonation: the voice goes down.

7 Try to pronounce these tags.
1 The lesson begins at twelve, doesn't it? .................................
2 Your sister's gone to America, hasn't she? ............................
3 Bill's a good singer, isn't he? ..............................................
4 It's cold, isn't it? ...............................................................
5 You're from Scotland, aren't you? ........................................
6 She looks good in red, doesn't she? .....................................

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example Isn't, don't) and full forms (for example I don't) are possible. Normally both are correct.
short answers  Yes, I have. No, they didn’t.

To answer just ‘Yes’ or ‘No’ can be impolite.
We often prefer answers with pronoun (I, you etc) + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc).
The auxiliary verb in the answer is usually the same as the one in the question.

‘Are you ready?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ ‘Have you phoned home?’ ‘Yes, I have.’
‘Can Ellie speak Spanish?’ ‘No, she can’t.’ ‘Did you watch the match?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’

Note that the negative of I am is I’m not.

‘Are you happy?’ ‘No, I’m not.’ (NOT No, I am not.)

Negative (−) short answers are usually contracted (see page 301): can’t, didn’t etc.
Affirmative (+) short answers are not contracted: we don’t say Yes, I’m or Yes, she’s, for example.

1 Write short answers to these questions.

‘Do you like jazz?’ ‘Yes, I do.’
‘Are you coming home?’ ‘No, I’m not.’
‘Is it raining?’ ‘No, ......................’
‘Has Joe phoned?’ ‘No, ......................’
‘Do the children understand?’ ‘Yes, ......................’
‘Is this your coat?’ ‘No, ......................’

2 Give your own personal short answers to these questions.

‘Do you like coffee?’ ‘Yes, I do.’
‘Are you thinking in English now?’ ‘No, ......................’
‘Do you live in a town?’ ‘Yes, ......................’
‘Do you speak French?’ ‘Yes, ......................’
‘Is it raining now?’ ‘Yes, ......................’

We can use short answers to agree or disagree with things that people say.
‘It’s hot today.’ ‘Yes, it is.’ ‘You didn’t buy bread.’ ‘Yes, I did.’ ‘The train’s late.’ ‘No, it isn’t.’
If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the short answer.

‘Her hair looks nice.’ ‘Yes, it does.’

3 Write short answers to agree or disagree.

1 ‘You’re early.’ ‘No, ......................’
2 ‘It’s cold.’ ‘Yes, ......................’
3 ‘She sings really well.’ ‘Yes, ......................’
4 ‘The lesson starts at 5.00.’ ‘No, ......................’
5 ‘Simon didn’t phone.’ ‘Yes, ......................’
6 ‘He made a mistake.’ ‘Yes, ......................’

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that people can do

Give true answers with Yes, I can or No, I can’t.

1 Can you knit? ......................
2 Can you cook? ......................
3 Can you skate? ......................
4 Can you repair cars? ......................
5 Can you dive? ......................
6 Can you draw? ......................
7 Can you sing? ......................
8 Can you ride a horse? ......................
reply questions  Oh, yes? Did they really?

In conversation, we often ask short questions (auxiliary verb + pronoun) to show interest.

'I've just had a letter from Eric.' 'Have you?' 'Yes. He says he's coming back ….'

These 'reply questions' are not really questions: they mean 'Oh, yes? That's interesting.'

Some more examples:

'John's getting married.' 'Is he really? Who to?'

'Anna and Peter had a lovely time in Greece.' 'Did they?' 'Yes. They went ….'

We answer negative sentences with negative reply questions.

'I can't see very well with these glasses.' 'Can't you? Maybe you should get new ones.'

Choose the correct reply questions.

1. 'Your mother hasn't phoned.' 'Has she? / Hasn't she? I wonder why not.'
   1. 'I've just got married.' 'Have you? / Haven't you? Congratulations.'
   2. 'William had an accident last week.' 'Has he? / Did he? Is he OK?'
   3. 'There's a strange bird on the roof.' 'Is it? / Is there? Let me look.'
   4. 'I can't understand this.' 'Can you? / Can't you? Let me help you.'
   5. 'This coffee doesn't taste very nice.' 'Doesn't it? / Does it? I'm sorry.'
   6. 'Your sister's in trouble with the police.' 'Is she? / Isn't she? Oh, dear. Not again!'
   7. 'The children want computers for Christmas.' 'Do they? / Don't they? They think I'm made of money.'
   8. 'The students don't like your lessons.' 'Don't they? / Aren't they? Well, I don't like them either.'

2. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in reply questions.

| 0 | 'Oliver didn't eat much.' | A | 'Did he?' Perhaps he's ill. … |
| 1 | 'I don't like this bread at all.' | B | '………………. I hope they're having a good time.' … |
| 2 | 'The Smiths are in America.' | C | '………………. I'll get a different kind next time.' … |
| 3 | 'My French is getting very bad.' | D | '………………. When's he going to bring it back?' … |
| 4 | 'Ryan's taken the car.' | E | '………………. I'll have a look at them.' … |
| 5 | 'I can't understand these papers.' | F | '………………. You need to go to France. ….' |

3. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: showing our feelings

Complete the sentences with reply questions and expressions from the box.
Use a dictionary if necessary. Different answers are possible.

Congratulations!  Good luck!  I am sorry.  I don't believe it.  Say 'hello' to him/her for me.
That's interesting.  That's terrible.  That's a surprise.  What a nuisance!  What a pity!

> 'The Swiss have declared war on America.' 'Have they? I don't believe it.'

1. 'I've just passed my exams.' …
2. 'I'm seeing Katie next week.' …
3. 'My job interview is tomorrow.' …
4. 'Some trees can live for thousands of years.' …
5. 'Lewis didn't get into university.' …
6. 'My computer has crashed again.' …
7. 'I don't feel well.' …
8. 'Andy and Paula are getting married.' …
9. 'I haven't got enough money to buy food.' …
revision of spoken question and answer structures

1 Circle the best expression.
   ▶ Jemima can't sing at all (can she?/ she can't).
   1 'I'm worried about Peter.' 'You are?/' 'Are you?/' 'Aren't you?'
   2 'Joe didn't phone yesterday.' 'Joe phoned yesterday.' 'Didn't he?'
   3 'I'm feeling ill.' 'I'm not feeling well.' 'Are you?'
   4 'Does John need help?' 'John needs help.' 'Does he?'
   5 Do you remember David? / You don't remember David, do you?
   6 'I've got a headache.' 'You haven't.' / 'You have.' / 'Have you?'
   7 They can stay with us, can't? / can't they? / can they?

2 Read the conversation, and put in question tags (QT), short answers (SA) or reply questions (RQ).

   QT  'Hello, Carol. Lovely day,  ► isn't it?'
   SA  'Yes, it is.' How are you?
   'Well, I've got a problem.'
   RQ  'Have you? What's the matter?'
   QT  'You remember my brother's boy Theo, 1 ...............'
   SA; QT  '2 ......... He went to Australia, 3 ...............'
   SA  'No, 4 ............... He went to Canada. Anyway, he's coming back to England.'
   RQ  '5 ............... That's nice.'
   'Well, yes, but he wants to stay with me.'
   RQ  'Oh, 6 ............... Is that the problem?'
   SA  '7 ............... I'm not very happy about it.'
   RQ; QT  '8 ............... Why? You like Theo, 9 ...............'
   SA  '10 ............... very much.'
   QT  'And you've got a lot of room in that big house, 11 ...............'
   SA  '12 ............... But would you like to have a young man living in your house all the time?'
   'No, I suppose not.'
   'Well, I don't know what to do. I'm really very worried.'
   RQ  '13 ............... Would you like some advice?'
   SA  '14 ...............'
   'Tell him the truth. Say you like him a lot, but you don't want people in your house.'
   QT  'I can't say that, 15 ...............'
   SA  '16 ............... He'll understand. I'm sure of it.'
   RQ  '17 ............... I don't know. Anyway, I'll think about it. Thanks.'
leaving out words  Don’t know if she has.

We often use just an auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression, if the meaning is clear. This happens in question tags, short answers and reply questions (see pages 288–291), and in other sentences too.

‘Get up!’ I am. (= ‘I am getting up.’) Come round tomorrow evening, if you can.

I haven’t seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn’t really.

Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

You said it wasn’t raining, but it is raining.

He thinks I don’t understand, but I do understand.

You’d better eat something. ‘I have eaten something.

Come round tomorrow evening, if you can. I haven’t seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn’t really.

Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

You said it wasn’t raining, but it is raining.

He thinks I don’t understand, but I do understand.

You’d better eat something. ‘I have eaten something.

Come round tomorrow evening, if you can. I haven’t seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn’t really.

Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.

I’d like It’s starting I’m trying ✔ I used she didn’t want Sorry, I forgot They hope

‘Can’t you go faster?’ I’m trying to.
1 ‘Are Cathy and Dave getting married this year?’ ........................................
2 ‘Would you like to stay with us next weekend?’ I’d love to. (= ‘I’d love to stay with you.’)
3 ‘I don’t play tennis, but I used to.’ ........................................
4 ‘Are you going to Scotland this summer?’ ‘We hope to.’

Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.

I’d like It’s starting I’m trying ✔ I used she didn’t want Sorry, I forgot They hope

‘Can’t you go faster?’ I’m trying to.
1 ‘Are Cathy and Dave getting married this year?’ ........................................
2 ‘Would you like to stay with us next weekend?’ I’d love to. (= ‘I’d love to stay with you.’)
3 ‘I don’t play tennis, but I used to.’ ........................................
4 ‘Are you going to Scotland this summer?’ ‘We hope to.’

In conversation, people may leave out ‘small words’ (for example pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginnings of sentences.

Must go now. Can’t help you, sorry. Don’t know. Car’s not going well. Seen Billy? (= ‘Have you seen Billy?’) Nobody here. (= ‘There’s nobody here.’)

Write the complete sentences.

1 Couldn’t understand what he wanted from me. ........................................
2 Doesn’t know what she’s doing. ........................................
3 Bus is late again. ........................................
4 Speak French? ........................................
5 Haven’t seen them. ........................................
6 Don’t think so. ........................................

→ For sentences where we leave out that, see pages 257 and 264.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

SPOKEN GRAMMAR 293
so am I; nor do I etc

To say that A is/does the same as B, we can use so + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc) + subject (note the word order).

'I'm hungry.' So am I.' (NOT 'So I am:)
Sue's stopped her lessons, and so has George.

If there is no auxiliary verb to repeat, we use do/does/did.

'My brother works in the theatre.' So does my cousin.

Complete the sentences, using so.

- 'My job's boring.' (mine) So is mine.
- 'My room gets very cold at night.' (my) So does mine.
- 'Anna is very interested in history.' (Alice) So is Alice.
- 'My grandfather plays golf all day.' (my father) So does my father.
- 'I can swim under water.' (I) So can I.
- 'Peter wants a bicycle for Christmas.' (Carla) So does Carla.

In negative sentences we use neither or nor + auxiliary verb + subject.

'I'm not working today.' Neither am I. 'Mary can't drive.' Nor can Pat.
Bill doesn't like the boss, and neither does Jan.

Complete the sentences, using neither/nor.

- Max didn't play very well, and (the others) nor did the others. OR neither did the others.
1 The soup wasn't very good, and (the meat).
2 'Rob hasn't phoned yet.' (Gemma)
3 'This dictionary doesn't show pronunciation.' (this one)
4 'I can't cook.' (I)
5 His parents won't help him, and (his friends).

We can use short sentences (subject + auxiliary verb) to say that A is not the same as B.

'I'm not going to school today.' I am.' Some people don't like modern art, but I do.
'I like this music.' I don't.' The food was cheap, but the drinks weren't.

Complete the sentences with expressions from the box, to say that things are not the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>her second one</th>
<th>her sister</th>
<th>my car</th>
<th>my father</th>
<th>our dog</th>
<th>the back door</th>
<th>the green ones</th>
<th>the train</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- 'My father works too hard.' My father doesn't.
- 'The red apples aren't very sweet.' The green ones are.
1 'My car doesn't use a lot of petrol.'
2 'Mary has passed all her exams.' Yes, but
3 Most dogs can swim, but
4 'The bus takes a long time to get to London.'
5 The front door wasn't open, but
6 'Her first book didn't sell very well.'
4 Look at the table and write sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>LIKES DANCING</th>
<th>HAS BEEN TO AMERICA</th>
<th>PLAYS TENNIS</th>
<th>CAN SKI</th>
<th>IS TALL</th>
<th>LAUGHS A LOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERIC</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JULIE</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAUL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAN</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENISE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACHEL</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- (Eric, Dan, dancing)  Eric likes dancing, and so does Dan.
- (Julie, Rachel, ski)  Julie can't ski, and nor can Rachel.
- (Julie, Denise, laugh)  Julie laughs a lot, but Denise doesn't.
- (Eric, Julie, America)  Eric hasn't been to America, but Julie has.

1 (Eric, Dan, tennis)  
2 (Julie, Denise, tall)  
3 (Denise, Paul, laugh)  
4 (Dan, Rachel, ski)  
5 (Julie, Denise, America)  
6 (Eric, Paul, tall)  
7 (Julie, Dan, tennis)  
8 (Paul, Rachel, dancing)  

5 Here are some facts about Mike and Katy. Are you the same as them, or different? Write your answers, using So am I, Neither/Nor do I, I have, I can't etc.

- Katy has got blue eyes.  So have I. OR I haven't.
- Mike doesn't like fish.  I do. OR Nor do I.
1 Katy is interested in politics.  
2 Mike has been to Texas.  
3 Katy can sing.  
4 Mike likes old music.  
5 Katy speaks French.  
6 Katy isn't very tall.  
7 Mike hasn't got much hair.  
8 Katy can't drink milk.  
9 Mike doesn't like hot weather.  
10 Mike doesn't understand computers.  

We can also use too or not either to say that A is/does the same as B.

'I'm hungry.' 'I am too.'  Lucy hasn't written, and Carol hasn't either.

In informal conversation we often say Me too instead of So do I, I do too etc.

'I've got a headache.' 'Me too.' (NOT 'I also.)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
spoken grammar: more practice

1 Short answers. Complete the conversations.

- Do you like swimming? ‘Yes, I do.’
- ‘Was Emma at home when you went to see her?’ ‘No,’
- ‘Does Tom play a musical instrument?’ ‘Yes,’
- ‘Would your sister like some coffee or tea?’ ‘No thanks,’
- ‘The plane arrives at 6.45, I think.’ ‘No,’
- ‘Can you work next Saturday?’ ‘Yes,’
- ‘Does Tom play a musical instrument?’ ‘Yes,’
- ‘Would your sister like some coffee or tea?’ ‘No thanks,’
- ‘The plane arrives at 6.45, I think.’ ‘No,’
- ‘Can you work next Saturday?’ ‘Yes,’

2 Reply questions. Complete the conversations with reply questions and expressions from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Congratulations!</th>
<th>Good luck!</th>
<th>I am sorry.</th>
<th>I don’t believe it!</th>
<th>Say ‘hello’ to him for me.</th>
<th>That’s interesting.</th>
<th>That’s terrible.</th>
<th>That’s a surprise.</th>
<th>What a nuisance!</th>
<th>What a pity!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- ‘I didn’t get that job that I wanted.’ ‘Didn’t you? I am sorry.’
- ‘I’m seeing James on Tuesday.’
- ‘I’ve got excellent results in my exams.’
- ‘Scotland has declared its independence.’
- ‘I’ve got an important interview tomorrow.’
- ‘Light takes four years to travel here from the nearest star.’
- ‘Anna and Peter are getting divorced.’
- ‘My car has been stolen.’
- ‘I feel ill.’
- ‘Tim has decided to become a ballet dancer.’
- ‘I can’t come to your party.’

3 So am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.

- Arthur has gone home, and (Jane) so has Jane.
- Oliver can’t run very well and (Susan) neither can Susan.
- Dogs don’t eat tomatoes, and (cats) neither do cats.
- The 3.45 train hasn’t arrived yet, and (the 3.15) neither has the 3.15.
- ‘I wasn’t happy at school.’ (I)
- Ken didn’t come to the lesson, and (Sally)
- Roger likes travelling, and (his brother) neither does his brother.
- The meat is cold, and (the potatoes)
- Natasha doesn’t speak Russian, and (her brother)
- Our friends were late, and (we)
- ‘We don’t know why Teresa is unhappy.’ (her parents)
- ‘I’ll try to help Robert.’ (I)
4 Leaving out words. Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

You said you weren’t crying, but you were crying.
1 She says I don’t love her, but I do love her.
2 ‘You should phone Aunt Lucy.’ ‘I have phoned Aunt Lucy.’
3 Henry thought that he would get rich fast, but I don’t think he will get rich fast.
4 ‘Help me.’ ‘I’m trying to help you.’
5 ‘Will you forget me?’ ‘Of course I won’t forget you.’
6 Jasper can sing, but I can’t sing.
7 Andrew has asked me to go out with him, but I don’t want to go out with him.
8 She’s finished breakfast, but I haven’t finished breakfast.
9 ‘You broke that window.’ ‘No, I didn’t break that window.’
10 I haven’t been to America yet, but I hope to go to America soon.

5 Leaving out words. Write the complete sentences.

1 Have you been shopping?
2 The car won’t start.
3 Don’t know why.
4 Seen my mother today?
5 Don’t think so.
6 Sorry, can’t come in here.
7 Want some help?
8 Can’t understand a word.
9 House is cold.
10 Raining again.
11 Lost my keys.

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things from the office. What would you ask if you were not sure of the names of the things in the pictures?

1 They’re
2
3

“and so is” “and so are” “and so has” “and so have” “and so does” “and so do”
“and neither is” “and neither are” “and neither has” “and neither have”
“and neither does” “and neither do”

7 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.
spoken grammar: revision test

1 Correct (√) or not (×)?
   ▶ Daniela looks like you, looksn't she? √...
   ▶ You're Scottish, aren't you? √
   1 We didn't give you our address, did we? √ ...
   2 You can't speak Spanish, do you? √ ...
   3 There's a problem, isn't it? √ ...
   4 Jane doesn't smoke, doesn't she? √ ...
   5 You'll be at home tonight, won't you? √ ...

2 Put in the question tags.
   ▶ It's a nice day, isn't it?
   1 You can play the piano, ...........................................
   2 Lily will be here tomorrow, ......................................
   3 You haven't got the keys, ...........................................
   4 Stephen likes fishing, .............................................
   5 There wasn't much rain in the night, ..........................
   6 Petra went back home, ............................................
   7 George doesn't play golf, ........................................
   8 Dinner's ready, .....................................................
   9 It's not raining, ....................................................
   10 You won't be late, ............................................... 

3 Change these questions into affirmative (+) or negative (−) statements with question tags.
   ▶ Do you live in Dublin? + You live in Dublin, don't you?
   ▶ Do you know my friend Adrian? − You don't know my friend Adrian, do you?
   1 Have they gone home? − They haven't ................................
   2 Do we need tickets? + ..............................................
   3 Would you like some more coffee? + ................................
   4 Was Mike away yesterday? + .....................................
   5 Did Angela tell you her news? − ..................................
   6 Can Sophie play the piano? − ....................................
   7 Will there be room for everybody? + ...........................
   8 Does your father eat meat? − ....................................
   9 Do these books belong to the library? − ........................
   10 Are you tired? + ..................................................

4 Complete the conversations with short answers.
   ▶ ‘Do you play baseball?’ ‘Yes, I do.’
   1 ‘Was the exam difficult?’ ‘No, ......................................’
   2 ‘Would your little boy like to watch TV?’ ‘No, thanks, ..........................’
   3 ‘The lesson starts at 10.00.’ ‘No, ......................................’
   4 ‘Did the post come this morning?’ ‘Yes, ..............................’
   5 ‘Will it rain today?’ ‘No, ................................................’

Complete the conversations with reply questions.
   ▶ ‘I've just passed my exam.’ ‘Have you?’ Congratulations!
   1 ‘Joe and Suzy moved to London in March.’ ‘I didn’t know.’
   2 ‘I won’t be here next week.’ ‘Then come and see us the week after.’
   3 ‘I need some help.’ ‘I’ll see what I can do.’
   4 ‘The dog has brought a dead rat into the house.’ ‘Well, could you throw it out, please?’
   5 ‘You didn’t lock the door last night.’ ‘That was stupid of me.’

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.
### Appendix 1: Common Irregular Verbs

(These are the most common irregular verbs. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>read /riːd/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt</td>
<td>spelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone/been</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
appendix 2 active and passive verb forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE: TENSE OF BE + PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INFinitive</td>
<td>(to) watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ING FORM</td>
<td>watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE PRESENT</td>
<td>I watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>I am watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE PAST</td>
<td>I watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>I was watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>I have watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>I had watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL FUTURE</td>
<td>I will watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOING TO FUTURE</td>
<td>I am going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODAL VERBS</td>
<td>I can watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I must watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I should watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- For the use of the different tenses, see Sections 2-5.
- For the use of passives, see Section 7.
- For the spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.
- For the spelling of third-person present forms (writes, watches, sits, goes etc), see page 16.

appendix 3 capital letters (A, B, C etc)

We use CAPITAL LETTERS to begin the names of people, places, nationalities, languages, days, months and holidays.

Abraham Lincoln New York American Arabic Thursday September Christmas

We also use CAPITAL LETTERS for the most important words in the titles of books, films etc.

War and Peace Gone with the Wind

And we use a CAPITAL LETTER for the first word in a sentence, and for the pronoun I.

Yesterday I went for a long bike ride.
Contractions like he's, isn't show the pronunciation of informal speech. They are common and correct in informal writing (for example, friendly letters), but are unusual in formal writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE (①) CONTRACTIONS: PRONOUN + 'M, 'RE, 'S, 'VE, 'D, 'LL</th>
<th>NEGATIVE (②) CONTRACTIONS: BE, HAVE OR OTHER AUXILIARY + 'N'T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am → I'm</td>
<td>are not → aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are → we're</td>
<td>is not → isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is → she's</td>
<td>have not → haven't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he has → he's</td>
<td>has not → hasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have → I've</td>
<td>had not → hadn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you had → you'd</td>
<td>do not → don't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you would → you'd</td>
<td>does not → doesn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they will → they'll</td>
<td>did not → didn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will not → won't</td>
<td>shall not → shan't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• With be, two negative forms are common: you're not / you aren't, she's not / she isn't, etc. With have, had, will and would, the forms with n't are more common: we usually say I haven't, I hadn't etc, NOT I've not, I'd not etc.

• There is no contraction amn't, BUT am not → aren't in questions. I'm late, aren't I? (BUT I'm not late, NOT I aren't late.)

• The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, here and there.
  It's late. Your mother's gone home. Mary's got a headache.
  How's Joe these days? Here's your money. There's the telephone.

• We don't use affirmative (①) contractions at the ends of sentences.
  You're early.' You are.' (NOT Yes, we're.)
  I think she's gone home.' Yes, I think she has.' (NOT ... I think she's.)

• Negative (②) contractions are possible at the ends of sentences.
  'It's raining.' 'No, it isn't.'

• Don't confuse it's (= it is/has) with its (possessive – see page 188).
  The cat isn't hungry. It's only eaten half of its food.

• Don't confuse who's (= who is/has) with whose.
  Who's the woman in the green coat? Whose car is that?

• In very informal speech, going to, want to and got to are often pronounced like gonna, wanna and gotta. They are sometimes written like this, especially in American English.
This section summarises the most important rules of punctuation.

**the basic sentence**
We don't put commas (,) between the basic parts of a sentence (subject and verb, verb and object etc).

*My brother has found a really good job.*

(NOT *My brother, has found a really good job.*
OR *My brother has found, a really good job.*)

**before the basic sentence**
If we put long adverbial expressions (saying when, where etc) before the basic sentence, we often use a comma (,).

*Last year he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.*

*Between January 2010 and March 2011, he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.*

**after the basic sentence**
We don't usually use commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence.

*He followed a business studies course in Edinburgh between January 2010 and March 2011.*

**inside the basic sentence**
When adverbial expressions come between parts of the basic sentence, we usually put commas before and after them.

*She has, in the six months since she started her music studies, made remarkable progress.*

**noun phrases**
We don't usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it.

*those very nice people* (NOT *those very nice people*)

*those very nice people in the flat downstairs* (NOT *those very nice people, in the flat downstairs*)

*those very nice people who invited us to their party* (NOT *those very nice people, who invited us to their party*)

**sentences with conjunctions**
We often put commas in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. (See page 219.) Compare:

*Everything will be different when Mr Harris leaves.*

*Everything will be very different after April next year, when Mr Harris leaves.*

We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.

*When Mr Harris leaves, everything will be different.*

**indirect speech**
We don't put commas after verbs of saying, thinking etc in indirect speech.

*Jamie says that he has a problem.* (NOT *Jamie says, that …*)

*I don't know what I was going to tell the police.* (NOT *I don't know, what …*)

We don't put question marks (?) in indirect questions.

*I asked why he was late.* (NOT *I asked why he was late?*

**a useful rule: no comma before that**
We don't put commas before *that* (conjunction or relative pronoun).

*I know that she married a man that worked for her father.*
between separate sentences
Between separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;), but not a comma. Compare.
Robert phoned, and he asked to speak to the manager. (comma and conjunction)
Robert phoned. He asked to speak to the manager.
OR Robert phoned; he asked to speak to the manager.
BUT NOT Robert phoned, he asked to speak to the manager.

lists
We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not before and).
She gave presents to her brothers, her sister, her sister's husband, her secretary and all of her colleagues.

abbreviations (short forms of words)
We use full stops after some abbreviations, like e.g. (meaning 'for example'). Mr and Mrs have full stops in American English, but not usually in British English.
Some British cities have beautiful cathedrals, e.g. Salisbury. Everybody liked Mr Carter.

quotation marks ('...' or “...”)
Quotation marks are used to show direct speech (somebody's actual words).
His father said, 'Do what you want.' (NOT <Do what you want> OR – Do want your want.)

figures
We use commas after thousands and millions, and full stops in decimal fractions.
€ 5,500,000 (= ‘five million, five hundred thousand euros’)
€ 5.5m (= ‘five and a half million euros’)

apostrophes (’)
For apostrophes in contractions (e.g. isn't), see Appendix 4. For apostrophes in possessives (e.g. John's), see page 201.
This section summarises the most important rules of word order that you can find in other parts of the book.

sentences
The basic word order of English sentences is SUBJECT – VERB – OBJECT.
I play the piano. (NOT I the piano-play.)

questions
In questions we usually put an auxiliary verb before the subject.
Did you see the news last night? (NOT Saw you the news . . .?)  Can you swim?
For more details, see Section 8, pages 103–111.
This does not usually happen with indirect questions.
She asked me where I lived. (NOT She asked me where did I live.)
For more details, see page 266.

adjectives
Adjectives usually go before, not after, nouns.
an interesting film (NOT a film interesting)
Adjectives can go after be, seem and similar verbs.
I think she is tired.
For more details, see Section 15, pages 209–211.

adverbs
Different adverbs can go in different places in a sentence.
Yesterday I got up at 6.00.  I’ve just seen a rabbit.  You’re driving very slowly.
They do not usually go between the verb and the object.
I bought a bike yesterday. (NOT I bought yesterday a bike.)
She speaks Spanish very well. (NOT She speaks very well Spanish.)
For more details, see Section 15, pages 212–215.

prepositions
Prepositions often go at the ends of questions, especially in spoken English.
Who did you go with?  What did you do that for?
For more details, see Section 8, page 111.
Prepositions can also go at the ends of relative clauses, especially in spoken English.
There’s the man that I told you about.  The train that I usually travel on wasn’t running.
For more details, see Section 19, page 258.

phrasal verbs
The objects of phrasal verbs (but not prepositional verbs) can often go between the two parts of the verb.
I turned the light out. (OR I turned out the light.)
Pronoun objects always go between the two parts of a phrasal verb.
I turned it out. (NOT I turned out it.)
For more details, see Section 10, pages 142–143.

ago
Ago follows an expression of time.
We arrived two hours ago. (NOT . . . ago two hours)

enough
Enough usually goes before nouns but after adjectives and adverbs.
Have you got enough soup? (NOT . . . soup enough?)
Is the soup hot enough? (NOT . . . enough hot?)  I didn’t get up early enough.
appendix 7 expressions with prepositions

prepositions after verbs, adjectives and nouns

We use prepositions (at, in etc) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns. This is a list of the most common examples.

afraid of
She's afraid of dogs.

agree with
I don't agree with you.

angry about something
We're all angry about the new working hours.

angry with somebody
Mary's very angry with you.

arrive at/in a place
I usually arrive at school at 8.30.
What time do we arrive in London?

ask for
If you want anything, just ask for it.

bad at
I'm bad at games.

believe in (= 'believe that something is real')
Do you believe in ghosts?

belong to
This book belongs to me.

depend on
We may arrive late this evening. It depends on the traffic.

different from/to
You're different from (OR to) your sister.

difficulty in doing something
I have a lot of difficulty in understanding her.

discuss something with somebody
We discussed our plans with the manager.

divide into
I divided the cake into four parts.

dream about something or somebody;
dream of doing something
I often dream about horses.
When I was young, I dreamt of becoming a pilot.

dressed in
She was dressed completely in black.

dream of doing something

explain something to somebody
Can you explain this word to me?

get into/out of a car;
get on(to)/off a bus, train, plane, ship
I picked up my case and got into the taxi. She got off the bus at the wrong stop.

get to a place
How do you get to Southport from here?

good at
He's good at tennis.

happen to
What's happened to Alice? She's an hour late.

the idea of doing something
We had the idea of starting a small business.

interested in
Are you interested in animals?

kind to
They have always been very kind to me.

laugh at
Please don't laugh at my French pronunciation.

look after children etc
Can you look after the children for half an hour?

look at
Look at that wonderful old car!

look for (= 'try to find')
'What are you looking for?' 'My keys.'

married to
He's married to Jane Gordon, the novelist.

nice to
You weren't very nice to my mother.

pay somebody for something; pay a bill
Have you paid John for the tickets?
I forgot to pay the electricity bill.

pleased with
We are very pleased with his work.
polite to
It's best to be polite to policemen.

typical of
She went out without saying 'Thank you'. That's just typical of her.

reason for
What was the reason for his change of plans?

wait for
I waited for her for half an hour, and then went home.

write to
We write to each other every week. (BUT We phone each other … – no preposition)

correct with
What's wrong with the car?

think about/of
I think about you all the time.
We're thinking of going to America.

translate into/from
I've got to translate this letter from French into German.

→ For more about prepositions, see Section 21.
→ For more about prepositions with verbs, see page 141.

common expressions beginning with prepositions

at a party at the cinema at the theatre
at the top at the bottom at the side
at the beginning at the end of something in the end (= 'finally', 'after a long time')

by car/bus/train etc (BUT on foot)
a book by Dickens an opera by Mozart

for example
in a raincoat/dress/hat
in the rain/snow
in the sky in the world
in a picture
in the middle
in a loud/quiet voice
write in pen/pencil
in my opinion
in time (= 'not late') on time (= 'at just the right time; not late or early')
on the phone on the radio on TV

→ For expressions without articles like in hospital, at university, see page 162.
appendix 8  word problems

This section tells you about some words that are difficult to use correctly. We explain some other word problems in other sections of the book: see the Index.

after  We don't usually say and after. X happened. We prefer afterwards or after that.
  We had a pizza, and afterwards / after that we went skating. (NOT … and after, we went …)

ago  Ago goes after a time expression. Compare ago with for and since (see page 65).
  It's August 1st. I came here three months ago. I've lived here for three months, since May.

another  is one word.
  Would you like another glass? (NOT … an-other-glass.)

as and like (similarity)  To say that things are similar, we normally use like. But before subject + verb, we prefer as in a formal style.
  Your sister looks like you.  Pronounce it like I do (informal) / as I do (formal).

as, not like (jobs)  To talk about the jobs that people or things do, use as, not like.
  He's working as a waiter. (NOT He's working like a waiter.)  I used my shoe as a hammer.

born  We say that somebody is/was born (passive).
  I was born in London.  Thousands of deaf children are born every year.

do and make  Common expressions with do and make:
  do work, a job, shopping, washing, ironing, business; do something, nothing, anything, everything
  make a suggestion, a decision, a phone call, a noise, a journey, a mistake, money, a bed, a fire, love

do + …ing  Common expressions:
  do the shopping; do some (a lot of / a bit of) walking, swimming, reading, climbing, sailing, skiing

else  We use else to mean other after something, anything, somebody, nobody etc.
  Something else to drink?  Nobody else cooks like you.

ever  is used mostly in questions, or with present perfect + superlative.
  Do you ever play golf?  Have you ever been to Ireland?
  This is the best film I've ever seen.  She says he's the nicest boy she's ever met.

explain  is not used with two objects (see page 144).
  Can you explain this word to me? (NOT Can you explain me this word?)

forget  see remember.

hear and listen to  We can hear something without trying. When we listen to something, we want to hear it.
  Suddenly I heard a noise in the garden.  Are you listening to me? (NOT … listening me?)

We often use can with hear.
  I could hear Mary and John talking in the kitchen.

home  We leave out to before home.
  Well, goodnight, I'm going home. (BUT Is anybody at home?)

hope  We often use so and not after hope.
  'Is David coming tomorrow?' 'I hope so.'  'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope not.'

if and when  We use if for things that may happen, and when for things that will happen.
  If I live to be 100 …  If it rains today …  When I die …  When it gets dark …

just  has several meanings: 1) right now  2) a short time ago (with present perfect, see page 64)
  3) exactly  4) really   5) only
  1) I'll phone you later. We're just having lunch.  2) Aunt Daphne has just arrived.  3) It's just four o'clock.
  4) I just love your dress.   5) 'Put those chocolates down!' 'I was just looking at them, Mum.'

let and make  If I let you do something, I say that you can do it. If I make you do it, I say that you must.
  After let and make, we use object + infinitive without to.
  Her parents let her go to the party. But they made her come home at midnight.
**remember and forget + infinitive (with to)** look towards the future: things that one has to do.
**remember and forget + -ing form** look back to the past: things that one has done.
  
  I must **remember to buy** bread. She always **forgets to close** the door.
  I **remember seeing** the Queen when I was six. I'll **never forget meeting** you.

**same** We normally use the with same; and we say the same as ... (NOT the same like ...).
We had the same idea. (NOT ... a same idea OR ... same idea) Her shoes are the same as mine.

**see and hear + object + infinitive (without to)/-ing** If you see/hear somebody do something, you see/hear a complete action. If you see/hear somebody doing something, they are in the middle of doing it.
  I **saw her go** into John's house. I heard her play Beethoven's violin concerto on the radio.
  I looked up and **saw Leo talking** to Zoe. I walked past Anna's room and **heard her crying**.

**see, look and watch** We can see something without trying. When we look at something, we want to see it.
  I saw Bill in the supermarket yesterday. Look at that bird! (NOT Look that bird!)

We often use can with see.
  On the left of the photo you can see my grandmother.

**We watch** things that move, change or happen.
  We watch TV most evenings. Did you watch the football match?
  The police are watching him to see where he goes.

**so and such** We use so + adjective without a noun, and such when there is a noun.
  so kind  so big  such kind people  such a big mistake  such a fool

**still, yet and already** We use still to say that something is continuing; yet to ask if it has happened (or to say it hasn't); already to say it has happened earlier than we expected.
  Granny's still on the phone. 'Has the postman come yet?' 'No, not yet.'
  I've already spent the week's money, and it's only Tuesday.

**than, as and that** Use than after comparatives (see page 223); as in the structure as ... as (see page 228); that after say, think etc and as a relative pronoun (see page 256).
  She's taller than me. It's as cold as ice. The boss says that you're right.
  Who's the woman that just came in?

**think** We often use so after think. Don't use an infinitive after think.
  'Are you coming to the party?' 'I think so.' 'Is it raining?' 'I don't think so.'
  I'm thinking of going to America. (NOT I'm thinking-to-go ...)

**try** After try we can use an infinitive (with to) or an -ing form. We prefer an infinitive when we are talking about trying difficult things.
  Try to stop smoking – it's bad for you. 'It's really hot in here.' Try opening a window.'

**very and too** Too means 'more than we want'; very doesn't.
  'It's very warm today.' 'Yes, a bit too warm for me.' 'Oh, it's OK for me.'

**wait** We often use wait for with object + infinitive (with to).
  I'm waiting for the postman to come.

**which? and what?** We prefer which when we are choosing between a small number of things, and what when there is a wider choice.
  'I'd like a pair of those shoes.' Which ones – the blue or the red? And what size?'

**whom** In a very formal style, we use whom as an object in questions and relative clauses.
  Whom did they elect? With whom did she go? She hated the man for whom she worked.

In an informal style, who is more normal in questions, and that (or nothing) in relatives.
  Who did they elect? Who did she go with? She hated the man (that) she worked for.

**why and because** Why asks for a reason. Because gives a reason.
  'Why are you late?' Because I missed the train.'
answer key

page 2

1 1 are 2 is 3 are 4 am 5 are 6 is 7 am

2 1 We're all tired. 2 They're here. 3 I'm sorry.
4 My name's Peter. 5 You're early.
6 The shop's closed. 7 She's at home.

3 1 Is Marie from Paris? 2 Are we very late?
3 Is John in bed? 4 Is the boss here?
5 Is your car fast? 6 Is Luke here?
7 Are we all ready? 8 Am I early?
9 Are they at home? 10 Are you happy?
11 Is Joe married? 12 Is this your house?
13 Is that Jane?

4 1 What's 2 Where are 3 Who's 4 When are
5 Why are 6 How's 7 Where's 8 Who are
9 How are 10 When's

2 1 Was the party good?
2 Were the people interesting?
3 Was your father a teacher?
4 Was everybody late?
5 When was your driving test?
6 Where were you on Tuesday?
7 Why were all the windows open?
8 Was John's brother at school with you?

page 5

1 It will be hot in Rio. It will be warm in Paris.
   It will be cold in London. It will be very cold in Moscow.

2 1 I won't be sorry.
2 It will be hot.
3 We will be at home.
4 The shops won't be closed.
5 He won't be in Scotland.
6 Lisa won't be at school.

3 1 When will your father be in England?
2 Will Ann be at the party with John?
3 Will everybody be here at 8.00?
4 Will the train be late again?
5 When will Joe and Mary be in the office?
6 Will the weather be good tomorrow?
7 Where will you be on Tuesday?

page 6

1 1 were; was 2 was; were 3 were
4 was; were 5 was; were 6 were; was
7 was; was 8 were; was

2 1 Is there a doctor here?
2 Are there any trains to London from this station?
3 Was there a special price for students?
4 Were there any mistakes in my letter?
5 Is there much money in your bank account?
6 How many students are there in your class?
7 Were there many children at the swimming pool?
8 How many people were there at the party?

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't)
or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
page 7
1 1 there will be sun 2 there will be two
3 there will be ten people 4 there will be (enough) food 5 There will be fish
6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers
2 1 There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
2 There will not be any trains on Sunday.
3 There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.
4 If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.
5 There will not be anybody at home tomorrow evening.
6 There will not be any children at the party.
7 There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.
8 There will not be time to have lunch today.
3 1 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

page 8
1 1 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul
6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick
3 1 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children?
3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money.
7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

page 9
1 1 She didn't have a computer. 2 She had very fair hair. 3 She didn't have lots of friends.
4 She didn't have many nice clothes.
5 Did she have her own room?
3 1 He will have a job.
2 He won't have a bicycle.
3 He will have a car.
4 Will he have a house?
5 Will he have a girlfriend?
6 He won't have old clothes.
7 He will have a suit.
8 Will he have a guitar?

page 10
1 1 had dinner 2 has coffee
3 have a baby 4 have a shower
5 have toast 6 have a game
2 1 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip.
3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 ‘Did you have a good game?’
1 don't have coffee

page 11
1 1 He's got two brothers. 2 He hasn't got a car.
3 He's got three dogs. 4 He's got a dictionary.
5 He hasn't got long hair. 6 He hasn't got any sisters.
3 1 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

page 12
1 1 They weren't ready. 2 We're all here.
3 I'm not a student. 4 Where's your house?
5 She won't be late. 6 You've got my keys.
7 I haven't got much time. 8 Franz doesn't live here.
2 1 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.
3 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed.
3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big.
5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office.
7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.
4 1 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do
6 does 7 do 8 Does
5 1 there will be 2 Is there 3 There was
4 are there 5 there weren't
6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
9 Was there 10 Will there be
page 7

1 1 there will be sun  2 there will be two
3 there will be ten people  4 there will be (enough) food  5 There will be fish
6 There will be (a new) hospital  7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers

2 1 There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
2 There will not be any trains on Sunday.
3 There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.  4 If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.  5 There will not be anybody at home tomorrow evening.
6 There will not be any children at the party.
7 There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.  8 There will not be time to have lunch today.

3 1 Will there be trains?  2 Will there be computers?  3 Will there be good food?  4 Will there be different countries?  5 Will there be governments?  6 Will there be a lot of problems?

page 8

1 1 My father  2 we all  3 have  4 has  5 Paul  6 have  7 has  8 Susie and Mick

3 1 have a garden.  2 Do they have any children?
3 Does Peter have a cold?  4 My aunt doesn't have a dog.  5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters?  6 I don't have enough money.
7 Does Laura have a boyfriend?  8 Why do you have two cars?

page 9

1 1 She didn't have a computer.  2 She had very fair hair.  3 She didn't have lots of friends.
4 She didn't have many nice clothes.  5 Did she have her own room?

3 1 He will have a job.
2 He won't have a bicycle.  3 He will have a car.
4 Will he have a house?  5 Will he have a girlfriend?
6 He won't have old clothes.
7 He will have a suit.
8 Will he have a guitar?

page 10

1 1 had dinner  2 has coffee  3 have a baby  4 have a shower  5 have toast  6 have a game

2 1 do you have lunch  2 She didn't have a good trip.  3 didn't have a shower.  4 Did you have a good flight?  5 'Did you have a good game?'

3 I don't have coffee

page 11

1 1 He's got two brothers.  2 He hasn't got a car.
3 He's got three dogs.  4 He's got a dictionary.
5 He hasn't got long hair.  6 He hasn't got any sisters.

3 1 Have they got a big garden?  2 Has Ann got a good job?  3 Has Bill got a big car?  4 Have they got a plane?  5 Have they got any horses?

page 12

1 1 They weren't ready.  2 We're all here.
3 I'm not a student.  4 Where's your house?
5 She won't be late.  6 You've got my keys.
7 I haven't got much time.  8 Franz doesn't live here.

2 1 Tom is late.  2 I will not have time.
3 Anna is hungry.  4 He does not have a car.
5 She has got two sisters.  6 She is right.
7 Emma has got beautiful eyes.  8 There is a letter for you.

3 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing.  2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed.  3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late.  4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big.  5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university.  6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office.  7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee.  8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.

4 1 do  2 Does  3 does  4 Do  5 do  6 does  7 do  8 Does

5 1 there will be  2 Is there  3 There was
4 are there  5 there weren't  6 Were there  7 There are  8 There won't be  9 Was there  10 Will there be
**page 13**

1. true 2. false 3. true 4. true 5. false 6. true 7. false 8. true 9. false 10. true

**page 14**

1. Where 2. I 3. Are 4. has 5. is 6. am 7. won’t 8. am 9. is 10. is 11. have 12. Does 13. Have 14. Will you be 15. I’m not 16. How 17. have 18. will be 19. have 20. are

2. \( \checkmark, \checkmark, \checkmark \) 2. X 3. X 4. \( \checkmark \) 5. X 6. X 7. X 8. X 9. \( \checkmark \) 10. X

3. 1. Is there a taxi outside? 2. Has Chris got a headache? 3. Joe doesn’t have a car.
4. Did Ann have a meeting yesterday?
5. I didn’t have coffee for breakfast.
6. Will there be an English lesson tomorrow?
7. I’m not hungry.
8. Petra hasn’t got a new car.
9. Did she have a nice time at the party?
10. Has the house got a big garden?

6. Will the manager be in America? 7. Were Tim and Anna students?
8. What time will you have lunch today?
9. Will you be here tomorrow?
10. Were those people American?

**page 16**

1. + -s: cooks, drinks, lives, reads, runs, smokes, stands, starts, writes  
   + -es: fetches, fixes, misses, pushes, touches, watches, wishes

2. + -s: enjoys, plays, stays, tries  
   + -es: copies, fries, marries, studies

3. 1. I live in that house. 2. Kim works in a bank.
   3. Claire plays the violin very badly.
   4. Those children come from Scotland.
   5. You look very young.

   5. Sophy and Ian 6. You 7. Our cat
   8. That child 9. All those buses 10. My father

**page 17**


3. 1. You do not speak very good Chinese.
2. Bill / He does not play the guitar very well.
3. We do not agree about holidays.
4. George and Andrew do not live near me.
5. My father / He does not write poetry.
6. Barbara / She does not live in London.
7. Henry / He does not like parties.

2. 1. doesn’t stop at Cardiff. 2. I don’t like pop music. 3. He / Peter doesn’t remember faces very well. 4. We don’t know his wife. 5. She / Alice doesn’t teach mathematics. 6. They / The children don’t play hockey on Mondays. 7. They / The shops don’t open on Sunday afternoons.

3. 1. Our cat doesn’t / does not like fish.
2. Melinda doesn’t / does not speak Russian.
3. I don’t / do not remember your phone number.
4. Oranges don’t / do not grow in Britain.
5. The postman doesn’t / does not come on Sundays.
6. We don’t / do not play much tennis.

**page 19**

1. 1. don’t like 2. doesn’t speak 3. don’t remember 4. don’t know 5. doesn’t want 6. don’t want 7. doesn’t work 8. don’t think

**page 20**

2 1 Does the Oxford bus stop here? 2 Do the teachers know her? 3 Do you play the piano? 4 Does John work in a restaurant? 5 Does this train stop at York? 6 Do we need more eggs? 7 Does Fatima like parties? 8 Does Peter speak Spanish well?
3 1 your children 2 the lesson 3 you 4 the holiday 5 those women 6 you

page 21
4 1 Where do 2 What does 3 When do 4 Why does 5 How many ... does 6 How do
5 1 What do you want? 2 What does this word mean? 3 What time does the film start? 4 How much do those shoes cost? 5 Why does she need money? 6 How does this camera work? 7 Where do you buy your meat? 8 Who do you want to see?
6 1 How do you spell that? 2 What do you do? 3 What does this word mean? / How do you pronounce this word? 4 What time does the train arrive? 5 How much does it cost / do they cost? 6 Do you know Anna? 7 How do you do? 8 What time does the film start?

page 22
1 1 does 2 My cats 3 doesn't 4 stops 5 do English people 6 open 7 your holiday start 8 play 9 That café 10 say
2 1 I don't like getting up early. 2 Do you want something to drink? 3 Dan plays football on Saturdays. 4 Do you remember her phone number? 5 That clock doesn't work. 6 She often flies to Paris on business. 7 It doesn't rain much here in summer. 8 Do elephants eat meat? 9 Does he think he can sing? 10 We need a new car.

page 23
1 1 are talking 2 is eating 3 is cooking 4 am not enjoying 5 am reading 6 is not raining 7 are not listening 8 am feeling 9 is not going 10 are learning 2 cleaning, coming, dying, enjoying, going, living, making, playing, singing, starting, washing, writing 3 getting, feeling, putting, hitting, jumping, raining, robbing, shopping, shouting, sitting, slimming, dreaming, standing, talking, turning, answering, opening, visiting, forgetting

page 24
1 1 The baby's crying again. 2 It's snowing hard. 3 You're looking very beautiful today. 4 Your coffee's getting cold. 5 I'm playing a lot of football this year. 6 We're waiting for a phone call. 7 Chris and Helen are spending a week in France.
2 1 She's washing 2 She's brushing 3 She's listening 4 She's drinking 5 She's reading 6 She's brushing 7 She's reading 8 She's opening 9 She's going

page 25
1 1 He's not / He isn't listening to me. 2 I'm not working today. 3 It's not / It isn't raining now. 4 She's not / She isn't wearing a coat. 5 John's students aren't learning very much. 6 We're not / We aren't enjoying this film. 7 You're not / You aren't eating much these days. 8 I'm not expecting to pass the exam. 9 My computer's not / My computer isn't working. 10 I'm not playing much tennis these days.
2 1 he's not / he isn't playing well today. 2 they're not / they aren't living in London. 3 it's not / it isn't running well. 4 I'm not enjoying it. 5 the sun's not / the sun isn't shining. 6 I'm not studying at university. 7 she's not / she isn't singing just now. 8 I'm not sleeping well these days. 9 we're not / we aren't having a good time. 10 I'm not crying because of you.
3 1 The train's not / The train isn't moving. 2 The children aren't listening. 3 It's not / It isn't raining. 4 The cat's not / The cat isn't eating. 5 John's not / John isn't working.
1. Are you waiting for somebody?  
2. Is your boyfriend enjoying the concert?  
3. Are those men taking our car?  
4. Are you talking to me?  
5. Is it snowing?  
6. Are we going too fast?  
7. Is your computer working?  
8. Are you reading that newspaper?  
9. Is the bus coming?  
10. Is somebody cooking lunch?

2.  
1. "... what is he writing?"  
2. "Why is it stopping?"  
3. "What are they studying?"  
4. "What game are they playing?"  
5. "... Where are you going?"  
6. "Who is she telephoning?"  
7. "What is it/he/she eating?"  
8. "Where is she working?"  
9. "What are you cooking?"  
10. "Where are you living?"

3.  
1. Where are you going now?  
2. Why is Anne crying?  
3. What/Why is he writing?  
4. Who/Why are you telephoning?  
5. Where are they living?  
6. Where/Why is your brother studying English?  
7. What/Why are you cooking?  
8. Why are those people laughing at me?  
9. What is the dog eating?  
10. What are the children doing?

page 28

1. SIMPLE PRESENT: nearly always, on Fridays, very often, when I'm tired  
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: just now, these days, this afternoon, today

2.  
1. eat; is not eating grass.  
2. fly; plane is not flying.  
3. rains; it is not raining.  
4. works; he/John is not working hard  
5. plays; she/Ann is not playing tennis  
6. speaks; he/John is not speaking English now.  
7. drives; he/Bill is not driving a bus now.  
8. sells; this shop / it is not selling books now.  
9. plays; is not playing the piano now.  
10. writes; he/Simon is not writing poetry now.  
11. chase; dog is not chasing cats now.

page 29

3.  
1. is she working  
2. Does it rain  
3. don't speak  
4. is getting  
5. Do you play  
6. are you writing  
7. She's coming  
8. I'm going  
9. boils  
10. Is that water boiling  
11. Is the bus coming  
12. talks; never listens.  
13. He writes  
14. it's getting  
15. do you see your parents  
16. He's coming back  
17. Does John drive  
18. I'm waiting for  
19. are you looking  
20. do you like.

page 30

1.  
1. What does this word mean?  
2. Rob doesn't want to see the doctor.  
3. She loves me.  
4. Peter seems tired.  
5. We don't need a new car.  
6. Do you know that man?  
7. I hate this cold weather.  
8. Do you like this music?  
9. I don't remember her address.  
10. Do you understand this letter?

2.  
1. don't understand.  
2. prefer  
3. like  
4. Do (we) need  
5. doesn't matter.  
6. hope  
7. don't remember  
8. Do (you) believe  
9. don't know  
10. Do (you) think  
11. see.  
12. do (you) mean  
13. love  
14. hates.
page 31

3 1 'I don't understand.' 2 'I see.' 3 'I hope not.' 4 'I think so.' 5 'I don't think so.' 6 'I don't know.' 7 'I know.' 8 'It depends.' 9 'It doesn't matter.' 10 'I don't remember.' 11 'I don't mind.' 12 'I hope so.' 13 'I don't think so.' 14 'I hope not.' 15 'I think so.'

page 32

1 1 What 2 When 3 Where 4 How many 5 What time 6 How much 7 Why 8 How

2 1 What language do Brazilians speak? 2 Felix drives fast cars. 3 Annemarie doesn't read newspapers. 4 My two brothers both work in London. 5 Dogs don't eat vegetables. 6 Maria doesn't play the piano. 7 Does Peter work at weekends? 8 My husband cooks very well. 9 Roger wants to work with animals. 10 Does this bus go to Belfast?

4 1 ✓ 2 x 3 x 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 x 7 x 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 ✓

page 33

5 1 looks after 2 gets up 3 has 4 goes 5 likes 6 likes 7 does not like 8 lives 9 works 10 does not want 11 is not working 12 is sitting 13 is reading 14 is crying 15 want 16 do not want 17 does not know 18 loves 19 is doing 20 do you think

6 (possible answers)
Cathy is wearing a black skirt, a red blouse, a green cardigan, black boots and a raincoat. She is not wearing a hat. Sandra is wearing a long green dress, a black coat, black shoes, and a black hat. She is not wearing glasses. David is wearing a blue shirt with a pink tie, a grey suit, a black belt, black shoes and glasses. He is not wearing a coat. (Other answers are possible.)

page 34

1 catches, costs, does, enjoys, flies, has, hopes, knows, lives, mixes, passes, plays, stands, teaches, thinks, tries, washes, wears, wishes, works

2 beginning, crying, dying, enjoying, flying, forgetting, getting, happening, holding, hoping, learning, looking, making, opening, playing, sending, sitting, sleeping, stopping, taking

3 1 Do you work in London? 2 I don't like pop music. 3 Where does James live? 4 Do you want some coffee? 5 It rains a lot here. / It rains here a lot. 6 I wash my car every week. 7 Luke doesn't speak Spanish. 8 Do all your friends play football? 9 I don't wear a suit to the office. 10 How do you make spaghetti carbonara?

4 1 My sister is travelling in Spain. 2 Alice isn't looking very happy. 3 Why is the baby crying? 4 Are you waiting for the bus? 5 I'm not playing much tennis these days. 6 Tim's wearing a very nice raincoat. 7 Are you talking about me? 8 You're walking too slowly. 9 What's that child eating? 10 I'm not enjoying this concert.

5 1 ✓ 2 x 3 x 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 x 7 ✓ 8 x 9 ✓ 10 ✓ 11 ✓ 12 x 13 ✓ 14 x 15 x

page 36

1 1 The woman is going to have breakfast. 2 He is going to read a letter. 3 She is going to play the piano. 4 The cars are going to crash. 5 He is going to drink coffee. 6 The ball is going to break the window.

2 1 Is Jane going to change her school? 2 Where are you going to put that picture? 3 What are you going to buy for Felix's birthday? 4 Is Ethan going to play football tomorrow? 5 When are you going to stop smoking? 6 Is Alice going to go to university? 7 Are you going to phone the police? 8 Is your mother going to come and stay with us? 9 Is she going to buy that coat? 10 What are you going to tell the boss?

page 37

3 1 I'm going to stay in a nice hotel. 2 I'm going to swim a lot. 3 I'm not going to swim a lot. 4 I'm going to take photos. 5 I'm not going to read English newspapers. 6 I'm going to learn some Italian. 7 I'm not going to write postcards. 8 I'm not going to visit museums.
4 1 How are you going to get to London?  
   2 When is Monica going to come and see us?  
   3 It's not going to snow.  
   4 I'm going to cook fish for lunch.  
   5 When are you going to see the doctor?  
   6 Angela is going to marry her secretary.  
   7 Is John going to call this evening?  
   8 I'm going to stop playing poker.  
   9 Everybody is going to watch the football match.  
  10 Sally is not going to get the job.

page 38

1 1 I'm not playing baseball tomorrow.  
   2 I'm not going to Canada next year.  
   3 We're staying with Paul and Lucy next week.  
   4 Are you working this evening?  
   5 What time are your friends arriving?  
   6 My company is moving to Scotland next year.  
   7 How is your mother travelling to France?  
   8 I'm seeing the dentist on Thursday.  
   9 I'm going to a concert tonight.  
  10 Gary is not marrying Cathy after all.

2 1 No, he's seeing John Parker on Sunday morning.  
   2 No, he's going to the Birmingham office by train.  
   3 No, he's having lunch with Stewart on Tuesday.  
   4 No, he's going to the theatre on Wednesday evening.  
   5 No, his new secretary is starting on Thursday.  
   6 No, he's going to Berlin on Friday.  
   7 No, he's going to Phil and Monica's wedding on Saturday.

3 1 Where are you going?  
   2 Why are you going there?  
   3 How long are you staying?  
   4 Are you staying in one place?  
   5 Are you staying with friends?  
   6 How are you travelling?  
   7 Are you taking the dog?  
   8 Who is going with you?  
   9 When are you coming back?

page 39

1 1 The class will begin at 9.30.  
   2 They'll be home soon.  
   3 The examination will be difficult.  
   4 We'll walk to the party.  
   5 She will not speak to me.  
   6 John will answer your questions.  
   7 Emily will be ten years old on Sunday.

2 1 What time will tomorrow evening's concert start?  
   2 When will you and the family get back from Paris?  
   3 Will you be here tomorrow?  
   4 Will you and your mother be here tomorrow?  
   5 Where will you be this evening?  
   6 Will the children have enough money for the journey?  
   7 How soon will you know the answer?

3 1 won't be; will she be  
   2 won't have; Will you have  
   3 won't find; will I find  
   4 won't go; will they go?  
   5 won't get; will he get?  
   6 won't be; will it be  
   7 won't know; will you know

page 40

1 1 'll wash  
   2 'll do  
   3 won't start  
   4 'll tell  
   5 won't stop  
   6 'll go shopping.  
   7 'll help  
   8 won't open.

3 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B

page 41

1 1 The next lesson starts at 2.00.  
   2 This term ends on March 12th.  
   3 When does the concert finish?  
   4 We don't have a lesson next Thursday.  
   5 Does this bus stop at the post office?  
   6 The play starts at 8.00.  
   7 What time do you arrive in Rome?  
   8 The banks close at 3.00 tomorrow.  
   9 The next train stops at every station.  
  10 When do the school holidays start?

2 1 will be; pass  
   2 leave; will catch  
   3 will work; needs  
   4 'm not / won't be; will see  
   5 will study; stops  
   6 will drive; find  
   7 marries; will change  
   8 Will (you) stop; tells  
   9 talk; will (he) listen  
  10 will phone; get

page 42

1 1 He's going to write a letter.  
   2 She's going to play the violin.  
   3 They're going to get on a bus.  
   4 The car's going to crash.  
   5 He's going to sing.  
   6 He's going to go skiing.  
   7 He's going to start running.  
   8 He's going to go swimming.  
   9 They're going to have dinner.  
  10 She's going to drink a glass of water.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example /m, don't)  
or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
2 1 She's seeing her bank manager on Monday.
2 She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
3 She's seeing her dentist on Wednesday.
4 She's seeing her accountant on Thursday.
5 She's seeing her solicitor on Friday.

3 1 I'll start 2 will change 3 won't snow 4 I'll go to sleep soon. 5 I'll tell

page 43

4 1 I'm going to stop smoking. 2 I'm seeing Andrew tonight. 3 It's not going to rain.
4 Peter's going to marry his boss. 5 Oliver won't pass his exams. 6 You'll like this film. 7 What
time does the bus from London arrive? 8 I'm not using the car tomorrow. 9 I'm going to cook
steak this evening. 10 How are you going to travel to Ireland? 11 I'll phone you when I get
home. 12 Are you working on Saturday?
13 Will you need a room for the night? 14 Are you going to write to your father? 15 We won't
have enough money for a good holiday.
16 Where will I find the key? 17 Will you go to university after you leave school? 18 John and
Sylvia are staying with us next week. 19 When are you going to have a haircut? 20 Are you going to
get up soon?

5 1 old house 2 'll come to 3 bridge 4 'll come to 5 'll see 6 house 7 'll recognise 8 door 9 apple trees.
10 'll find 11 key 12 'll have 13 great time.

page 44

1 1 I'll 2 She'll 3 It won't 4 They're going to
5 They'll 6 They won't 7 She's not going to
or She isn't going to 8 I'm not going to

2 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 ✗ 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✗ 8 ✓
9 ✗ 10 ✗

3 1 The concert is tonight. 2 Will I 3 will move
4 are not 5 am going 6 won't 7 I'll phone
... I get 8 will give 9 are you 10 will the
meeting be

4 1 Is Melanie seeing Martin on Monday? Tessa
isn't / Tessa's not seeing Tom on Tuesday.
2 Is Mr Andrews going to study Arabic in Algiers?
Mrs Roberts is not going to study Russian in
Rome.
3 Will Derek cook duck for Dorothy? Sally won't
cook spaghetti for Sam.
4 Is Harry going to take a holiday in Hungary?
Steve is not going to study in Siberia.
5 Is Oliver travelling to Oslo in October? Monica
is not travelling to Madagascar in May.

page 46

1 arrived, changed, cooked, hated, lived, passed,
shaved, watched

2 stayed, studied, cried, annoyed, carried, hurried,
prayed

3 shopped, rained, started, robbed, slimmed,
jumped, shouted, slipped, fitted, turned, visited,
regretted, developed, galloped, opened,
answered, referred

page 47

1 1 I forgot my girlfriend's birthday on Monday.
2 That's a really good book. I read it last year.
3 When we were children we always spoke
French at home.
4 I didn't like my piano teacher, so I stopped my
lessons last week.
5 Where did you learn to speak Spanish so well?

3 1 stood 2 heard 3 opened 4 came
5 did not see 6 said 7 took 8 gave
9 held 10 did not read 11 said
12 did not speak 13 wrote 14 ran 15 turned

page 48

1 1 worked 2 know 3 feel 4 came 5 see
6 write 7 arrive 8 like

2 1 We didn't speak Arabic. 2 He / My uncle
didn't teach science. 3 He / Bill didn't cook
the fish. 4 I didn't take my father (to the
mountains). 5 We didn't tell the police
everything. 6 I didn't write to my brother.
7 I didn't like the music. 8 We didn't know her
phone number.
3 1 he changed his shirt. 2 she didn't answer the others. 3 he didn't go to her house.
4 I brought some chocolates. 5 she bought a very nice dress. 6 I didn't eat the meat.
7 we didn't keep the letters. 8 they spoke German. 9 he didn't shave at weekends.

page 49

1 1 bring 2 start 3 saw 4 began 5 break
6 leave 7 speak 8 keep 9 learnt
10 forgot 11 come 12 say

2 1 did she remember it? 2 did you pay the others? 3 did you like the film? 4 did he play well?
5 did you give them any money? 6 did she write to her mother? 7 did he learn English?
8 did she get up early enough? 9 did you shut the front door? 10 did they take the dog?
11 did she feel OK yesterday? 12 did he forget the address as well?

3 1 Where did he go? 2 What did he buy?
3 Who did she marry? 4 What did she break?
5 Where did he stay? 6 What did he study?
7 Where did he study? 8 What did she write?
9 Who did she hear? 10 What did he understand? 11 What did she forget?
12 Where did she go (on holiday)?

page 50

1 1 I learnt a lot of Latin. 2 I didn't remember to buy the milk. 3 I didn't speak to her mother.
4 'Did he phone this morning?' 5 I took the train.
6 did you go to Malaysia? 7 it didn't stop at Glasgow.
8 'They saw two films.' 9 'Did you eat my chocolates too?'
10 I didn't study enough.

2 1 Where did they go? 2 Why did they give him it / a bicycle? 3 What did she say? 4 What did they buy?
5 Who did you invite? 6 What did she drop? 7 Who did he beat? 8 Why did he write (to the police)?
9 Who did she ask (to marry her)? 10 When did he live there / in India?

3 did you remember

page 51

1 1 were dancing. 2 was cooking supper.
3 was driving home. 4 was not watching TV.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example 'I'm, don't')
or full forms (for example 'I am, do not'). Normally both are correct.
3  1  went; was raining.  2  read  
  3  Did (you) watch  4  walked; were talking 
  5  was swimming  6  looked; was talking; was 
  listening.  7  rang; was having  8  was lying 
  9  did (you) go  10  met; was travelling 

4  1  looked  2  was raining  3  washed  
  4  got dressed  5  gave  6  made  7  didn't 
  eat  8  went  9  waited  10  didn't arrive 
  11  walked  12  was walking  13  arrived 
  14  was working  15  was talking 
  16  came in  17  told  18  didn't make 
  19  sat down  20  started 

5  1  Mozart composed 'The Marriage of Figaro.' 
  2  Leonardo da Vinci painted the 'Mona Lisa.' 
  3  Shah Jehan built the Taj Mahal. 
  4  Alfred Nobel invented dynamite. 
  5  Sergei Eisenstein directed 'Ivan the Terrible.' 
  6  Gustave Eiffel built the Eiffel Tower. 
  7  Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay first climbed 
  Mount Everest. 
  8  Marie Curie discovered radium. 
  9  John Lennon and Paul McCartney wrote the song 
  'Help.' 
  10  The novelist Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and 
  Prejudice.' 

page 58

2  1  She has forgotten my address.  2  I have made 
  a mistake.  3  You have not shut the door. 
  4  Alan has worked very hard.  5  I have not 
  heard from Mary.  6  John has not learnt 
  anything.  7  I have broken a cup.  8  We have 
  bought a new car.  9  The rain has stopped. 
  10  I have not seen a newspaper today. 

page 59

3  1  Have we paid?  2  Has Tim phoned? 
  3  Have you heard the news?  4  Have the dogs 
  come back?  5  What has Barbara told the police? 
  6  Why have Andy and Sarah brought 
  the children?  7  What have you said to Mike? 
  8  Why has everybody stopped talking?  9  Have 
  you seen Martin anywhere?  10  Who has taken 
  my coat?  11  What has happened?  12  Where 
  has my brother gone?  13  Why has Peter closed 
  the window?  14  Has Judith passed her exam? 
  15  Has the postman come? 

4  Have you seen a lady without me?  No, sorry, I 
  haven't seen your ball. OR No, I haven't seen your 
  ball, sorry. 

page 60

1  1  PROBABLY NOT  2  YES  3  DON'T KNOW  4  YES 
  5  DON'T KNOW  6  YES  7  NO  8  DON'T KNOW 
  9  DON'T KNOW  10  NO 

2  1  never travelled  2  studied  3  has lost 
  4  met  5  've bought  6  left  7  've told 
  8  've made  9  've forgotten  10  built 

page 61

3  1  has sent  2  have bought  3  have cut 
  4  has stopped  5  has given  6  have sold 
  7  have eaten  8  have found  9  have passed 
  10  have broken 

4  1  ... because she has lost her keys.  2  ... 'Yes, 
  his girlfriend has left him.'  3  ... 'Sorry. I know 
  him, but I have forgotten his name.'  4  ... 'No, 
  I've seen it.'  5  ... 'I think she's gone to Ireland.' 
  6  ... 'Sorry, I've lent it to Maria.'  7  Luis has found 
  a new job. He's working in a bank now. 
  8  ... 'We can't. It's closed.'  9  ... 'Yes, she's 
  changed her hair-style.'
In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
3 1 She has been playing the piano. 2 He has been playing football. 3 She has been teaching. 4 He has been writing letters. 5 She has been swimming.

1 had worked 2 had not rained. 3 had happened? 4 had seen 5 had not got 6 had they been? 7 had paid 8 had not done

2 understood; had got 2 didn't play; had hurt 3 had locked; started 4 had never travelled; went 5 arrived; had already closed 6 didn't have; had paid

1 got; had eaten 2 met; had been 3 started; remembered; had not closed 4 found; had not opened 5 had already told; bought

When George had eaten all the chocolate biscuits, he started eating the lemon ones.

When I had turned off the lights in the office, I locked the door and left.

I borrowed Karen's newspaper when she had read it.

Mark had a long hot shower when he had done his exercises.

When Barry had phoned his mother with the good news, he went to bed.

1 Have all those people gone home? 2 Peter hasn't told us everything. 3 Has the postman been? 4 Has Pat spoken to Robert? 5 Tim and Angela haven't bought a house. 6 Has Emma's boyfriend forgotten her birthday? 7 Has Monica been working in London all this week? 8 I haven't phoned Joseph. 9 Have Robert and Sally moved to Ireland? 10 We haven't been working all day.
I have just had 4 has been snowing 5 studied 6 have just passed 7 have you known 8 Have (you ever) written 9 lost 10 have not started

I can not 5 mustn't 6 don't have to 3 mustn't 4 don't have to 5 mustn't 7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to

1 You mustn't wash 2 You mustn't play 3 You mustn't let 4 You mustn't smoke 5 You mustn't play 6 You mustn't make

1 You don't have to make breakfast for me; I'll just have coffee. 2 You don't have to make lunch for me; I'll have lunch in the canteen. 3 You don't have to drive me to the station; I can walk. 4 You don't have to give me your newspaper; I'll buy The Times at the station. 5 You don't have to post those letters; Cathy's going to the post office. 6 You don't have to speak French; everybody here understands English.

1 mustn't 2 don't have to 3 mustn't 4 don't have to 5 mustn't 6 mustn't 7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to 10 mustn't 11 mustn't 12 don't have to

1 He didn't have to learn Russian. 2 He had to learn maths. 3 He didn't have to learn music. 4 He had to play football. 5 He didn't have to write poems. 6 He had to write stories.

1 Did Adam have to pay for his lessons? 2 Did Tina have to take an exam last year? 3 Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train? 4 Did you have to show your passport at the airport? 5 Did the children have to walk home? 6 Did Peter have to cook supper?

1 'I have to get 2 won't have to go 3 Will (you) have to learn 4 'I'll have to play 5 'I'll have to ask 6 won't have to work 7 Will (she) have to get 8 'I'll have to tell

1 should keep 2 should learn 3 shouldn't believe 4 should eat 5 shouldn't smoke 6 should tell 7 shouldn't play 8 shouldn't read 9 shouldn't drive 10 should(n't) (always) say

1 'What time should I arrive?' 2 Who should I phone 3 'What should I wear?' 4 'Where should I sit?' 5 Where should I put 6 What time should I wake

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
### page 80

1. He can't play tennis, but he can play baseball.
2. He can play the piano, but he can't play the violin.
3. He can't remember names, but he can remember faces.
4. He can eat oranges, but he can't eat cherries.
5. Can he cook?  
6. How much can they pay?  
7. Can you see the sea?  
8. Can you read music?  
9. What can he do?  
10. Can she talk?

### page 81

1. Little Tim will be able to talk soon.  
2. I will be able to pay you next week.  
3. I hope that I will be able to go to America one day.  
4. The doctor will be able to see you tomorrow.  
5. We will be able to buy a car next year.

### page 82

1. It may not rain.  
2. We may buy a car.  
3. Joe may not be at home.  
4. Anna may need help.  
5. The baby may be hungry.  
6. I may not change my job.  
7. She may be married.  
8. He may not want to talk to you.  
9. You may not be right.  
10. I may not be here tomorrow.

2. … ‘Perhaps, I may not have enough money,’  
   … ‘Not sure. They may stay at home.’  
   … ‘It’s early. He may not be out of bed yet.’  
   … ‘Yes. I think it may snow.’  
   … ‘We may go round to Sophie’s place.’  
   … ‘No. I may decide to study physics.’  
   … ‘I don’t know. I may give him a sweater.’

### page 83

3. may not  
4. can’t  
5. may not  
6. can’t  
7. may not  
8. can’t  
9. may not  
10. may not

### page 84

1. Can I have a glass of water (, please)?  
2. Can I use your pencil (, please)?  
3. Can I have some more coffee (, please)?  
4. Can I put my coat here (, please)?  
5. Can I have some bread (, please)?  
6. Can I look at those photos (, please)?  

2. Could I use your calculator, please?  
3. Could I leave early today, please?  
4. Could I take your photo, please?  
5. Could I borrow your newspaper, please?  
6. Could I open a window, please?

3. The children can play in the garden.  
4. Tell the boys that they can eat the cake in the kitchen.  
5. If you’re cold, you can turn on the heating.  
6. If you’re bored, you can watch television.  
7. Only teachers can park in this car park.

### page 85

4. You can't smoke here.  
5. You can't take photos here.  
6. You can't cycle here.  
7. You can't use mobile phones here.

5. Can I make a cup of tea for you / make you a cup of tea?  
6. Can I help you?  
7. Can I drive you to the station?  
8. Can I get some aspirins for you / get you some aspirins?

6. may not talk  
7. may not leave  
8. may use  
9. may take  
10. may do

### page 86

1. pass  
2. clean  
3. tell  
4. drive  
5. hold  
6. babysit  
7. lend  
8. put  
9. speak / drive  
10. wait
2 1 Can you open the door?  
2 Could you give me an envelope?  
3 Can you pass me the sugar?  
4 Could you watch my children for a minute?  
5 Could you tell me the time?  
6 Could you possibly change some dollars for me?  
7 Could you tell me the time?  
8 Could you possibly translate this letter for me?  
9 Can you come back tomorrow?  
10 Could you say it in English?  

page 3  
‘Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?’  

page 87  
1 1 What shall I buy for Sandra’s birthday?  
2 When shall I phone you?  
3 Shall I pay now?  
4 Shall I clean the bathroom?  
5 How many tickets shall I buy?  
6 Where shall I leave the car?  
7 What time shall I come this evening?  
8 Shall I shut the windows?  
9 When shall I go shopping?  
10 Shall I get your coat?  

2 1 Shall we go out this evening?  
2 Shall we have a game of cards?  
3 How shall we travel to London?  
4 What shall we do at the weekend?  
5 Where shall we go on holiday?  
6 Shall we look for a hotel?  
7 What time shall we meet Peter?  
8 How much bread shall we buy?  
9 Shall we have a party?  
10 When shall we have the next meeting?  

3 1 Shall I post your letters?  
2 Shall I do your shopping?  
3 Shall I make your bed?  
4 Shall I read to you?  
5 Shall I drive you to the station?  
6 Shall I make you a cup of tea?  
7 Shall I clean your car?  
8 Shall I phone your secretary?  
9 Shall I cut your hair?  
10 Shall I bring you an aspirin?  

page 88  
1 I’d like a black T-shirt, please.  
2 Would you like an aspirin?  
3 Would you like the newspaper?  
4 I’d like an ice cream, please.  
5 Would you like some more toast?  
6 I’d like a receipt, please.  

3 1 Would  
2 Yes, please.  
3 like  
4 Would  
5 ’d like  
6 Yes, I do.  
7 would like  
8 don’t  
9 wouldn’t  
10 ’d like.  

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
3 1 ... You should make her a cup of tea. 2 ... You should take more exercise. 3 ... You should tell her you love her. 4 ... You should give her a saucer of milk. 5 ... You should change your shampoo. 6 ... You shouldn't go to bed so late. 7 ... You shouldn't tell her. 8 ... You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets. 9 ... You should practise your service. 10 ... You should buy a new one. 11 ... You should buy some new clothes. 12 ... You should study grammar.

page 91

4 (possible answers)
1 Could I have a cup of coffee? 2 May I take a photograph of you? 3 Could you close the door, please, John? 4 Could you possibly help me? 5 Can you give me that newspaper, please? 6 Could you clean my bicycle, please? 7 Could I possibly borrow some money from you? 8 Can I use your phone? 9 Could you hold this, please? 10 Could you wash all my clothes before tomorrow, please? (Other answers are possible.)

5 1 With a scanner you can make copies. 2 With a freezer you can keep food very cold. 3 With a washing machine you can wash clothes. 4 With a fridge you can keep food cool. 5 With a mobile phone you can make phone calls. 6 With a dishwasher you can wash plates, cups etc. 7 With a camera you can take photos.

6 1 She might be a pilot. 2 He might be a businessman. 3 She might be an opera singer. 4 He might be a politician. 5 She might be a lawyer. 6 He might be a chef. 7 She might be a gardener.

page 92

1 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 X 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 X 10 X

2 1 must 2 shouldn't 3 must not 4 should 5 don't have to 6 have to 7 don't have to 8 may not 9 can't 10 should

3 1 You must phone Martin tonight. 2 Ann might be here this evening. 3 You don't have to wait. 4 People shouldn't watch TV all the time. 5 Shall I open a window? 6 People should cooperate. 7 John used to smoke. 8 It may rain. 9 Alan can speak Spanish. 10 Can you help me?

4 1 can; can't 2 must 3 must 4 may; can; can't

page 94

1 1 B 2 E 3 H 4 C 5 F 6 G 7 D

2 1 is spoken 2 studied 3 spent 4 was broken 5 are made 6 was written 7 will be opened 8 was driving; was stopped 9 was built 10 had

page 95

1 1 is 2 is 3 am 4 Are' 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 Are

2 1 is written 2 are watched 3 are sold 4 is known 5 is pronounced 6 is spoken 7 is played 8 are cleaned

3 1 is not spelt; is it spelt? 2 is not seen; is it seen? 3 is not pronounced; is it pronounced? 4 are not found; are they found? 5 is not paid; is she paid?

page 96

1 1 will be opened 2 will be spoken 3 will be finished 4 will be cleaned 5 will be sent

2 1 won't be taken; will they be taken 2 won't be built; will it be built? 3 won't be spoken; will be spoken?

page 97

1 1 was 2 were 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was

2 1 were taken 2 were left 3 was cleaned 4 were met 5 was told 6 was sent
3 1 was not educated; was he educated?
2 were not posted; were they posted?
3 was not cooked; was it cooked?
4 was not made; was it made?
5 was not paid; was it paid?

Page 98

1 1 it's being cleaned. 2 she's being interviewed
3 My watch is being repaired. 4 I'm being sent
5 my hair is being cut. 6 we are being followed
7 The engine is being repaired. 8 it's being rebuilt.
9 he is being watched. 10 it is being painted.

2 1 Bills are being paid. 2 Coffee is being made.
3 Drinks are being served. 4 Food is being prepared.
5 Baggage is being brought down. 6 Money is being changed.
7 New guests are being welcomed. 8 Reservations are being taken.
9 Phones are being answered. 10 Rooms are being cleaned.

Page 99

1 1 has been arrested 2 has been bought
3 has been killed 4 have been found
5 has been chosen 6 has been closed.
7 has been stolen. 8 have been asked
9 have been lost. 10 has been invited

2 1 It's never been ridden. 2 It's never been worn.
3 It's never been opened. 4 It's never been used.
5 It's never been played.

Page 100

1 1 is made 2 were killed 3 will be done
4 is spoken 5 was made 6 were examined
7 is cleaned 8 will be informed 9 will be opened
10 are found

2 (possible answers)
Baggage is not being brought down. Bills are not being paid. Coffee is not being made.
Drinks are not being served. Food is not being prepared. Money is not being changed.
New guests are not being welcomed. Reservations are not being taken.
Rooms are not being cleaned. Telephones are not being answered.

Page 101

3 (possible answers)
Arriving passengers are being met. Boarding passes are being printed. Cars are being parked.
Departures are being announced. Passports are being checked. Reservations are being made.
Tickets are being sold.

Page 102

1 1 posted 2 weren't paid 3 speaks
4 isn't pronounced 5 will be built 6 is being cleaned
7 have been invited 8 is made
9 is spoken 10 broke

2 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 5 6 X
7 X 8 9 X 10

3 1 has been moved. 2 will be opened
3 has been taken. 4 is being washed.
5 will be told 6 has been stolen.
7 was made 8 is spoken 9 are cleaned
10 have been asked 11 was killed.
12 will be done 13 will (the match) be played
14 have been stolen 15 were sent
16 is made 17 was hit; was broken
18 is being translated 19 has been found
20 will be finished

Page 104

1 1 Are you tired?
2 Is he at home?
3 Must you go now?
4 Can they speak Spanish?
5 Will Derek be here tomorrow?
6 Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
7 Has she forgotten her keys?
8 Is your sister playing tennis?
9 Would you like some coffee?
10 Has your secretary gone home?

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't)
or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
2 1. Do you drink coffee at bedtime?  
   2. Do you like classical music?  
   3. Do you know my friend Andrew?  
   4. Did you go skiing last winter?  
   5. Do you work in London?  
   6. Do you live in a flat or a house?  
   7. Do you watch a lot of TV?  
   8. Did you remember to buy bread?  
   9. Did you see Barbara last weekend?  
   10. Do you play tennis?  

---

page 106

1. 'Why are you here?'  2. 'Where have you been today?'  3. 'When are you going to Glasgow?'  
   4. 'How do you like Scotland?'  5. 'How did you come here?'  6. 'Why did you come by car?'  
   7. 'Where do you live?'  8. 'When are you leaving?'  9. 'When will we see you again?'  

2. 1. How far is  2. How tall is  3. How fast was  
   4. How often do you  5. How big is  
   6. How long did you  7. How well do you

---

page 107

3. 1. What colour  2. What sort/kind of  
   3. What size  4. What colour  5. What sort/kind of  
   6. What time  7. What size

4. 1. 'What's your new girlfriend like?'  
   2. 'What are you new neighbours like?'  
   3. 'What's your new car like?'  
   4. 'What's your new house like?'  
   5. 'What's your new job like?'  
   6. 'What's your new school like?'

---

page 108

1. 1. plays 2. made 3. did she marry?  4. does this word mean?  5. did she say?  6. told

2. 1. How many people came to her party?  
   2. Which train did Peter catch?  
   3. Which bus goes to the station?  
   4. How many languages does Douglas speak?  
   5. What sort of music does Alice like?  
   6. What sort of music keeps the baby quiet?


---

page 109

5. 1. (a) What did Melissa buy? (b) Who bought a coat?  
   2. (a) What did the bus hit? (b) What hit that tree?  
   3. (a) Who lost the office keys? (b) What did Rose lose?  
   4. (a) What does Paul teach? (b) Who teaches Arabic?  
   5. (a) Who hates computers? (b) What does Mike hate?

6. 1. Who first reached the North Pole?  
   2. Who wrote War and Peace?  
   3. Who built the Great Wall of China?  
   4. Who painted Sunflowers?

---

page 110

1. 1. Is your sister Caroline talking to the police?  
   2. Do all the people here understand Spanish?  
   3. Did most of the football team play well?  
   4. Is the man at the table in the corner asleep?
2 1 How much does a ticket for Saturday's concert cost? 2 What time does the film about skiing in New Zealand start? 3 What does the second word in the first sentence mean? 4 Why does the man in the flat downstairs want to change his job?

3 1 Why are all those people laughing? 2 What is that big black dog eating? 3 Is everybody in your family going to Scotland for Christmas? 4 What game are those children playing? 5 Where are Lola and her friends studying? 6 Are those people over there speaking French?

page 111

1 to 2 from 3 about 4 about 5 in 6 from 7 with 8 for 9 to 10 with 11 to 12 on

2 1 'What are you thinking about?' 2 'Who does Alice work for?' 3 'Who/What were you talking about?' 4 'What are you interested in?' 5 'What are you looking at?' 6 'Who did you stay with?' 7 'Who do you work with?' 8 'What did you spend the money on?' 9 'What was the film about?' 10 'Where can I get tickets from?'

3 1 What 2 Who 3 What 4 Who 5 Who 6 What 7 to 8 for 9 Where 10 What 11 to 12 for

page 112

1 Milk's not red. Milk isn't red. 2 The children aren't at home. 3 Max hasn't been to Egypt. 4 You mustn't give this letter / it to her mother. 5 I won't be in the office tomorrow. 6 I couldn't swim when I was two years old. 7 We weren't in Birmingham yesterday. 8 I'm not English.

page 113

4 1 Shakespeare didn't live in New York. 2 Phone books don't tell you about words. 3 The earth doesn't go round the moon. 4 Most Algerians don't speak Russian. 5 Cookers don't keep food cold. 6 The Second World War didn't end in 1955. 7 John doesn't know my sister.

6 1 don't 2 wasn't 3 doesn't 4 haven't 5 aren't 6 won't 7 didn't/couldn't 8 didn't/couldn't 9 hasn't 10 'm not

page 114

1 1 not 2 not 3 no 4 not 5 no 6 not 7 not 8 Not 9 no 10 not

2 1 There are no newspapers. 2 There's no time. 3 There were no letters. 4 I saw no light. 5 He gave no answer.

page 115

1 1 Nobody lives in that house. 2 I'll never understand my dog. 3 The children told me nothing. 4 I have no money. 5 I could hardly see the road.

2 1 I saw nobody. 2 We had no trouble. 3 My parents never go out. 4 I looked for the dog, but it was nowhere in the house. 5 I ate nothing yesterday. 6 It hardly rained for three months. 7 Nobody spoke.

3 1 My grandmother never drives fast. 2 Andrew doesn't play the guitar. 3 When she talked, I understood nothing. 4 I don't like Ann's new shoes. 5 Nothing happened this morning. 6 There's nowhere to sit down in the station. 7 I hardly watch TV. 8 Nobody wants to play tennis.

page 116


2 1 Who did you go with? 2 Who are you writing to? 3 Who did you buy it for? 4 Who is the letter from? 5 What were you talking about? 6 What did you carry it in? 7 How much did you sell your car for? 8 What did she hit him with? 9 Who did you send the flowers to? 10 Where does she come from?
3 1 Why are all those people looking at me? 2 Did Anna and Oscar have lunch together yesterday? 3 Does that man in the dark coat work for the government? 4 Is/Are the football team playing in Scotland next Saturday? 5 What are those children doing in the garden? 6 What does the first word in this sentence mean? 7 Are Tom and his sister staying at your house this week? 8 When are Emma’s teacher and her class going to Paris? 9 What did that strange woman say to you? 10 When did/will Mary and Phil get married?

page 117

4 1 My father never eats meat. 2 Peter doesn’t like jazz. 3 There’s nothing to do in this town. 4 I understood nothing. 5 Sally doesn’t play the piano. 6 I hardly go to the cinema. 7 Nothing happened. 8 Nobody wants to talk to you. 9 I’ve got no money. 10 I haven’t got enough money.

6 1 Adult grizzly bears can’t climb trees. 2 Tigers don’t live in Africa. 3 The first people didn’t hunt dinosaurs. 4 Spiders aren’t insects. 6 Cats can’t see when there is no light.

page 118

1 1 live 2 Are all your friends coming ... 3 Correct. 4 Do you play 5 are you 6 Correct. 7 Correct. 8 can I 9 told you 10 phone 11 don’t speak 12 anywhere 13 not 14 Correct. 15 What are you looking at? 16 Correct. 17 anything 18 not 19 helped 20 not

2 1 Who 2 Why 3 Where 4 How old 5 What colour 6 How tall 7 What sort/kind of 8 How fast 9 What size 10 What ... like

3 1 Kelly/She isn’t at work. 2 I haven’t forgotten your face. 3 Peter/He doesn’t drive taxis. 4 We didn’t go to Portugal. 5 You mustn’t use that one. 6 Henry/He doesn’t eat meat. 7 These people / They don’t play soccer. 8 Luke/He didn’t break his leg. 9 I won’t be at home in the afternoon. 10 Elisabeth/She doesn’t read books.

4 1 Have she and her sisters been to America? 2 Do she and her sisters like dancing? 3 Can she and her sisters swim? 4 Will she and her sisters be here tomorrow? 5 Did she and her sisters go to the party yesterday? 6 Have she and her sisters ever studied history? 7 Can she and her sisters drive? 8 Did she and her sisters phone last night? 9 Were she and her sisters talking to Philip when you saw them? 10 Will she and her sisters get married soon?

page 120

1 1 to 2 to 3 to 4 - 5 - to 6 - to 7 to 8 to

2 1 to learn 2 help 3 see 4 buy 5 to hear 6 to go 7 send 8 stop

3 1 not to have 2 not to break 3 not to go to sleep 4 not to make 5 not to have 6 not to talk 7 not to wake 8 not to tell 9 not to see 10 not to play

page 121

1 1 to drive 2 to catch 3 to ask for 4 to wait for 5 to meet 6 to buy 7 to finish 8 to learn 9 to hear 10 to relax.

2 1 to clean 2 to buy 3 to get 4 to open 5 to tell 6 to earn 7 to go 8 to wish 9 to make 10 to get up

3 1 E to cut 2 F to see 3 B to buy 4 C to open 5 D to dry

page 122

1 1 refuse to 2 start to 3 promise to 4 expect to 5 try to 6 decide to 7 want to 8 learn to 9 plan to 10 need to 11 forget to 12 seem to 13 begin to 14 continue to 15 prefer to

page 123

2 1 needs to 2 agreed to 3 decided to 4 tried to 5 learnt to 6 promised to 7 forgot to 8 refused to 9 want to 10 started to 11 prefers to 12 continued to 13 hopes to 14 seemed to 15 began to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 124</th>
<th>Page 126</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1  1 Sarah would like John to cook (tonight).  2 The policeman wants</td>
<td>1  1 It wasn’t necessary to phone John.  2 It’s impossible to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 telephone.  3 Helen’s mother wants her to wash her face.  4 Bill</td>
<td>understand that woman.  3 It’s nice to stay in bed late on Sundays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would like Andy to help him.  5 Roger would like Karen to lend him</td>
<td>4 It’s sometimes difficult to say ‘No’.  5 It was easy to make our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some money.  6 Jessie wants Peter to be quiet for a minute.  7 David</td>
<td>children happy.  6 It’s sometimes dangerous to tell the truth.  7 It’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would like Alice to have dinner with him.  8 Mike would like the</td>
<td>expensive to eat out in restaurants.  8 It’s almost impossible to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government to put more money into schools.  9 Lucy wants Bill to</td>
<td>learn a foreign language perfectly.  9 It’s nice to travel.  10 It was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop playing that terrible music.  10 Mary would like Gordon to</td>
<td>good to visit my parents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the bed for once.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2  1 Her boss wants her to work harder.  2 Her little brother wants</td>
<td>2  1 It was nice to have   2 It was interesting to see  3 it was a bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her to buy him a bicycle.  3 Her dog wants her to take him for a</td>
<td>hard to understand  4 It was very easy to make  5 It was expensive to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk.  4 Her boyfriend wants her to go to America with him.  5 Her</td>
<td>eat  6 it was dangerous to swim  7 it was impossible to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend Martha wants her to lend her a blue dress.  6 Her guitar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher wants her to buy a better guitar.  7 Her mother wants her to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend every weekend at home.  8 Her sister wants her to go to Russia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with her.  9 The people downstairs want her to stop playing loud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music at night.  10 Her father wants her to study economics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3  1 I didn’t tell Alan to go home.  2 I asked Fred to be quiet.  3</td>
<td>4 (our answers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you expect her to phone?  4 I helped Joe to carry the books.  5</td>
<td>1 It’s important to practise grammar.  2 It’s important not to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence.  6 Ann</td>
<td>translate everything.  3 It’s important to read a lot.  4 It’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helped me to finish the work.  7 I asked the shop assistant to help</td>
<td>important to read things that interest you.  5 It’s not important to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me.  8 I need you to stay with me.  9 I expect her to pass her exam.</td>
<td>have perfect pronunciation.  6 It’s important to have good enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 I need some people to help with the party.</td>
<td>pronunciation.  7 It’s important not to make too many mistakes.  8 It’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not necessary to speak without mistakes.  9 It’s important to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have good English-English dictionary.  13 It’s important to have a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>good bilingual dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4  1 His father wanted him to get rich.  2 His sister Isabel wanted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him to be good at sport.  3 His brother Andy wanted him to go to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university.  4 His sister Nicole didn’t want him to go to university.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 His brother Henry wanted him to be a racing driver.  6 His</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother wanted him to be a doctor.  7 His friend Anthony wanted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him to have an easy life.  8 His maths teacher wanted him to study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maths.  9 His literature teacher wanted him to study literature.  10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His music teacher didn’t want him to study music.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
page 129

1 1 is old enough to work 2 isn't old enough to leave 3 isn't old enough to leave 4 is old enough to leave 5 isn't old enough to 6 is old enough to change 7 is old enough to drive

2 1 He's not tall enough to play basketball. 2 She's not old enough to vote. 3 I'm not strong enough to open this bottle. 4 My French is good enough to read a newspaper. 5 He isn't old enough to go out by himself. 6 He's intelligent enough to do well at university.

3 1 Helen's too ill to work. 2 My grandfather's too old to travel. 3 I'm too bored to listen any longer. 4 Cara's too hot to play tennis. 5 I'm too hungry to work. 6 I'm too tired to drive. 7 I was too afraid to move. 8 Molly was too ill last week to go to school. Or ... too ill to go to school last week. 9 Our dog's too fat to run. 10 My mother's too deaf to understand what people say.

page 130

1 1 homework to do. 2 letters to post? 3 film to watch 4 dress to wear 5 shopping to do 6 friend to see

2 1 anything to wear. 2 somewhere to work. 3 nothing to do 4 nobody/no one to teach. 5 something to finish. 6 nowhere to go. 7 somebody/someone to love. 8 anywhere to stay 9 somebody/someone/anybody/anyone to help 10 something to carry.

page 131

1 1 Skiing; reading. 2 Flying; going by train. 3 Eating; washing. 4 Speaking; writing or Writing; speaking. 5 Understanding; listening. 6 Shopping; shaving. 7 Working; resting. 8 Smoking; driving.

4 2 NO CAMPING 3 NO SMOKING 4 NO CYCLING 5 NO FISHING

page 132

1 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 I 6 J 7 G 8 H 9 F

2 1 hearing 2 smoking 3 going 4 watching 5 washing 6 closing 7 working 8 getting 9 skiing 10 asking.

page 133

3 1 Bob is quite good at running, but not very good at cycling. 2 Sue is not very good at drawing, but very good at running. 3 Mark is quite good at swimming, and very good at cycling. 4 Bob is bad at swimming, but quite good at singing. 5 Jane is very good at running, and quite good at cycling. 6 Mark is not very good at swimming, but quite good at drawing. 7 Jane is not very good at drawing, but quite good at singing. 8 Sue is quite good at swimming, and very good at swimming.

5 1 Ellie stayed awake by drinking lots of coffee. 2 Paul drank three glasses of water without stopping. 3 Charles woke us up by turning the TV on. 4 You can find out the meaning of a word by using a dictionary. 5 Mike paid for his new house without borrowing any money. 6 Helen lost her driving licence by driving too fast, too often. 7 Carl did all his homework without asking for any help. 8 Teresa cooks all her food without using any salt.

page 134

1 1 taking 2 eating 3 shopping 4 driving 5 stopping 6 working

2 1 They've just finished playing tennis. 2 All that week, it kept raining. 3 It's just stopped snowing. 4 He's given up smoking. 5 He can't help thinking of/about Annie. 6 They're going shopping. 7 She's practising writing.

page 135

3 1 washing 2 watching 3 working 4 playing 5 wearing 6 studying 7 watching 8 shopping 9 cooking; eating
1 1 I was surprised to find a cat in my bed. 2 She was wrong to leave her job. 3 I’ve got no money to buy a car. 4 I was crazy to give Peter money. 5 We were glad to say goodbye to Aunt Emma. 6 I was sorry not to have time to phone you. 7 I was too tired to work. 8 Here are some letters to post. 9 I’ve got no time to wash the dishes. 10 I need something to drink.

2 1 D to learn 2 E to watch 3 F to stop 4 B to make 5 C to keep 6 H to pay 7 G to cut 8 J to impress 9 K to catch 10 I to look for

3 1 They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane. 5 They want me to buy a motorbike.

4 1 sorry to say 2 unhappy to think 3 happy not to have 4 pleased to find 5 surprised to find 6 happy to be 7 pleased to see

5 1 They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane. 5 They want me to buy a motorbike.

6 1 to work 2 to see 3 smoking 4 driving 5 to buy 6 to talk 7 sending 8 talking. 9 to come 10 speaking.

7 1 Correct. 2 not to have 3 to learn 4 Correct. 5 by taking 6 smoking 7 Correct. 8 to go 9 Correct. 10 Correct. 11 you to pay 12 Correct. 13 to get 14 eating 15 changing 16 Correct. 17 to see 18 Correct. 19 not to forget 20 Correct.

8 1 Anna wants Beth to look after the children. 2 Joe wants Jack to lend him money. 3 Peter’s mother wants him to clean his room. 4 Sam wants Joe to go shopping. 5 Tom would like Sarah to pass the newspaper. 6 Mike’s parents would like him to study medicine. 7 The boss would like Emma to answer the phone. 8 Mary doesn’t want Jack to look at her like that. 9 Harry doesn’t want Jim to say anything to the police. 10 Maria’s mother doesn’t want her to fall in love with a pop singer.

9 1 I get (some) money 2 got into 3 got (a long) letter 4 Get out 5 get wet. 6 get cold. 7 get off 8 get (really) hungry 9 get(ting) tired 10 gets dark

10 1 got burnt. 2 getting divorced. 3 got broken 4 get undressed 5 gets lost. 6 get stolen. 7 get dressed. 8 get changed. 9 get invited. 10 got married.

11 1 A laugh 2 C wait 3 B ask 4 E belong 5 J listen 6 H Look 7 G think 8 F talks 9 I happened

12 1 believe in; belong to; happen to; laugh at; listen to; look at; talk about; think about; wait for

13 1 for 2 at 3 to 4 after 5 for 6 for 7 about 8 to 9 for 10 about 11 into 12 on 13 to 14 in 15 on 16 – 17 in 18 out of 19 at 20 off

14 1 Wake/get 2 go 3 round. 4 on. 5 back 6 up! 7 lie 8 Go

15 1 up 2 down 3 back

16 1 on 2 on 3 down 4 off 5 down 6 back 7 up 8 look 9 pick 10 give 11 let 12 fill 13 take 14 Break

17 1 Could you turn the TV down? Could you turn it down? 2 You can throw the potatoes away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don’t you take your glasses off? Why don’t you take them off? 4 Please put that knife down. Please put it down. 5 Shall I fill your glass up? Shall I fill it up? 6 I’ll switch the heating on. I’ll switch it on.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
page 144

1 1 I lent my bicycle to Joe yesterday.
   2 I often read Lucy stories.
   3 Carol teaches maths to small children.
   4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
   5 Amanda often gives flowers to her mother.
   6 Could you buy me a newspaper?
   7 I found my parents a hotel room.
   8 Pass Mr Andrews this paper.
   9 Luke has written Joy a letter.
   10 I want to get Peter a good watch.

2 1 Sally gave Fred a book.  2 Fred gave Annie flowers.
   3 Annie gave Luke a picture.
   4 Luke gave Mary a sweater.  5 Mary gave Joe a camera.

3 1 find  2 Give; give  3 buy

page 145

1 1 has his tyres checked  2 has his oil changed
   3 has his car repaired  4 has his shoes cleaned
   5 has his gardening done  6 has his letters typed

2 1 She should have it repaired.  2 He should have them cleaned.
   3 They should have it repaired.  4 He should have it cut.
   5 They should have it serviced.  6 She should have them checked.
   7 He should have it repaired.  8 He should have it checked.

page 146

1 1 B  2 D  3 C

2 1 Turn  2 go  3 Turn  4 take  5 turn

3 1 Hurry up!  2 Be careful.  3 Help!
   4 Have a good holiday.  5 Sleep well.
   6 Don't forget  7 Wait for me!  8 Have some more
   9 Follow me  10 Don't worry.
   11 Come in; sit down; make yourself at home.

page 147

1 1 Let's not go for a walk.  2 Let's play tennis.
   3 Let's play cards.  4 Let's go swimming.
   5 Let's not go swimming.  6 Let's go skiing.
   7 Let's watch TV.  8 Let's go to France/Paris.

2 1 Athens.  2 to Copenhagen.  3 go to Vienna.
   4 'Let's go to Prague.'  5 'Let's go to Warsaw.'
   6 'Let's go to Moscow.'  7 'Let's go to Marrakesh.'
   8 'Let's go to Istanbul.'  9 'Let's go to Bangkok.'
   10 'Let's go to Beijing.'  11 'Let's go to Mexico City.'  12 'Let's go to Rio.'

Page 148

1 1 up  2 round  3 fill  4 turn  5 on  6 Put
   7 up  8 back.  9 Go  10 wake/get

2 1 Could you wash the cups up? Could you wash
   them up?  2 You can throw those papers away.
   You can throw them away.  3 Why don't you
   take off your coat? Why don't you take it off?
   4 You need to fill this form in. You need to fill it in.
   5 Please bring back my bicycle. Please bring it
   back.  6 Let me fill your glass up. Let me fill it up.
   7 Please put that gun down. Please put it down.
   8 I'll switch on the TV. I'll switch it on.
   9 Can you cut the onions up? Can you cut them
   up?  10 Pick up your coat. Pick it up.

3 1 Alice sent €500 to her sister.  2 Sarah bought
   the children ice creams.  3 Let's send a postcard to Granny.
   4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
   5 I gave the secretary some flowers.  6 Can you
   find me John's address?  7 I found Aunt Patsy a
   hotel.  8 Take Mrs Lewis these papers.
   9 I've given all the information to George.
   10 I want to buy my sister a nice present.

Page 149

4 1 Come  2 worry.  3 Have  4 out!  5 Make
   6 Help  7 Sleep  8 Follow  9 Have  10 forget

5 1 Pick  2 Hold  3 Put  4 Let  5 fetch
   6 continue  7 throw  8 Get  9 Open
   10 Get  11 Kneel  12 blow  13 Drink
   14 remove  15 Telephone  16 Find

Page 150

1 1 A, B, D  2 E  3 A, D  4 A, C  5 C  6 A
   7 B, C  8 C, D  9 A, C  10 A, B, C, D

2 1 to  2 at  3 for  4 about  5 for  6 for
   7 after  8 – 9 for  10 on  11 to  12 in
   13 to  14 at  15 to  16 – 17 to  18 –;  on
   19 about  20 from
In these answers, we usually give *either* contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*)
or full forms (for example *I am, do not*). Normaly both are correct.
page 162

334 4 1-

page 163

10 answer

page 164

page 165

page 166

page 168

page 169

page 170
3 1 Could I have some coffee? 2 Would you like some bread? 3 Would you like some rice? 4 Could I have some tomatoes? 5 Would you like some more potatoes? 6 Could I have some more milk?

page 171

4 1 E 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 F

5 1 buy any 2 some tomorrow 3 some (in front of) you 4 want any 5 any good 6 put some

6 1 wasn’t 2 didn’t do 3 didn’t have 4 didn’t ask 5 didn’t find

page 172

1 1 Nothing 2 anywhere 3 someone 4 anything 5 everywhere 6 No one/Nobody 7 Nowhere 8 something 9 Everyone/Everybody 10 anybody 11 Everything 12 somewhere

2 1 anybody/anyone 2 nowhere 3 anything 4 Nobody/No one 5 nothing 6 everything

3 1 knows 2 happens 3 is 4 is 5 Has 6 agrees

4 1 X 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 X 5 X 6 X 7 ✓ 8 X 9 X 10 X

page 173

1 1 much 2 much 3 many 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 many 8 many 9 much 10 many 11 many 12 much 13 many 14 much 15 much

2 1 How many symphonies did Beethoven write? 2 How many cents are there in a dollar? 3 How many kilometres are there in a mile? 4 How many states are there in the USA? 5 How much blood is there in a person’s body? 6 How much air do we breathe every minute? 7 How many points do you get for a try in rugby union? 8 How much food does an elephant eat every day?

page 174

1 1 have 2 are 3 has 4 a lot 5 work 6 A lot 7 need 8 is

2 1 plenty of food 2 plenty of time 3 plenty of patience 4 plenty of warm clothes 5 plenty of eggs 6 plenty of water 7 plenty of ideas

page 175

1 1 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little 5 a few 6 a little 7 a few 8 a little 9 a little 10 a few

2 1 a little 2 little 3 few 4 a few 5 a few 6 few 7 few 8 A little

3 1 There was only a little room on the bus. or There wasn’t much room on the bus. 2 Only a few people learn foreign languages perfectly. or Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. 3 She only has a few friends. or She doesn’t have many friends. 4 We only get a little rain here in summer. or We don’t get much rain here in summer. 5 This car only uses a little petrol. or This car doesn’t use much petrol. 6 There are only a few flowers in the garden. or There aren’t many flowers in the garden. 7 Our town only gets a few tourists. or Our town doesn’t get many tourists. 8 We only have a little time to catch the train. or We don’t have much time to catch the train.

page 176

1 1 not enough food 2 not enough strings 3 not enough seats 4 not enough water

2 1 enough time 2 enough girls 3 enough chairs 4 enough work 5 enough money 6 enough salt

3 1 not loud enough 2 not comfortable enough 3 not bright enough 4 not easy enough 5 not clear enough 6 not fresh enough 7 not deep enough

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.

ANSWER KEY 335
1 warm enough 2 early enough 3 enough beds 4 often enough 5 quiet enough 6 enough children 7 enough milk 8 enough help 9 sweet enough 10 young enough

page 177

1 1 too old 2 too much trouble 3 too many problems 4 too much money 5 too ill 6 too much work 7 too hot 8 too many students 9 too many cars 10 too difficult

2 1 too low 2 too short 3 too light 4 too soft 5 not wide enough 6 not cheap enough 7 not wet enough 8 not thin enough

3 (possible answers)
1 too many (pairs of) socks 2 enough (pairs of) boots 3 too many pocket torches 4 not enough (tubes of) suncream 5 too many waterproof jackets 6 too many pairs of sunglasses 7 too much bread 8 too much cheese 9 not enough water 10 not enough oranges 11 not enough chocolate 12 enough soap 13 too many toothbrushes
(Other answers are possible.)

page 178

1 1 The films all start at 7 o'clock. 2 All our secretaries speak Arabic. 3 All the children went home. 4 These coats all cost the same. 5 Languages all have grammar. 6 All the people voted for the Radical Conservatives. 7 My friends all live in London. 8 All these houses need repairs. 9 Those shops all belong to the same family. 10 All children need love.

2 1 The offices all close at weekends. 2 The lessons will all start on Tuesday. 3 Those children can all swim. 4 Our windows are all dirty. 5 Sorry, the tickets have all gone. 6 We all went to New York for Christmas. 7 The shops will all be open tomorrow. 8 We all stopped for lunch at 12.30. 9 These watches are all too expensive. 10 The lights have all gone out.

page 179

1 1 Every animal breathes air. 2 She's read every book in the library. 3 I paid every bill. 4 Every computer is working today. 5 Every language has verbs. 6 Every London train stops at Reading. 7 I've written to every customer. 8 Every glass is dirty. 9 Every child can be difficult. 10 Every road was closed.

2 1 No. 2 Yes. ... to every letter. 3 No. 4 No. 5 No. 6 Yes. Every house ...
3 1 a little 2 few 3 a few 4 a few 5 little
6 lots of 7 many 8 think 9 too 10 big enough

4 1 Most of 2 Most 3 A few of 4 any
5 some of 6 most of; all of 7 enough
8 too many 9 A lot. 10 many of

page 183
5 1 f 2 b 3 j 4 c 5 i 6 d 7 g 8 h
9 e 10 a

6 half of us; most of the rest; few; a lot; most of us; half; some of us; how many; a lot; all of us

page 184
1 1 He spoke fast, but I understood everything.
2 I'm hungry, but there isn't anything / there's nothing to eat.
3 She has a lot of / plenty of money.
4 A lot of us were at the party last night.
5 Most people think I'm right.
6 He was carrying a heavy bag in each hand.
7 Everything is very difficult.
8 I like every kind / all kinds of music.
9 I think you're driving too fast.
10 If everybody is ready, we can go.

2 1 this 2 That 3 those 4 that 5 This
6 somebody 7 I need 8 some 9 anything
10 anywhere

3 1 all 2 Is 3 Both 4 each 5 every
6 a little 7 little 8 a little 9 a few
10 A little. 11 lots of 12 many
13 too many 14 much 15 is 16 each
17 everything 18 every 19 neither
20 something

page 186
1 1 her 2 us 3 him 4 they 5 her
6 them 7 her; she

2 1 He 2 them 3 him 4 They 5 him
6 She

3 1 They 2 It 3 It 4 them 5 it
6 it 7 them. 8 they

page 187
5 1 He has moved to London. 2 They are on that chair. 3 I like them. 4 She is going to study medicine.
5 No, it is difficult. 6 I put it in the garage. 7 I/we play tennis. 8 It is beautiful.

6 1 It's warm. 2 It's windy. 3 It's snowing.
4 It's hot. 5 It's raining. 6 It's sunny.
7 It's cloudy. 8 It's cold.

page 188
1 1 her 2 his 3 Whose 4 its 5 my
6 their 7 his 8 her 9 your 10 his
11 its 12 her

page 189
2 1 James sold his bike to Carlos.
2 Carlos sold his dog to Sara.
3 Sara sold her house to Pat and Sam.
4 Pat and Sam sold their motorbike to Harry.
5 Harry sold his piano to Alice.
6 Alice sold her coat to Michael.
7 Michael sold his camera to Helen.
8 Helen sold her guitar to Marilyn.
9 Marilyn sold her hair dryer to Tom.
10 Tom sold his dictionary to Amy.

3 1 their son Joe 2 their daughter Emma
3 their camper van. 4 her brother Frank
5 her sister Lucy 6 his sister Louise
7 his brother Simon 8 their friend Pete

page 190
1 1 theirs. 2 looks better than yours.
3 Yours looks terrible. 4 That dog looks like ours. 5 That car's not hers. 6 This coat isn't mine.
7 My cooking is better than his.
8 Is this bike yours?

2 1 The towel is not theirs. 2 The razor is his.
3 The red toothbrush is his. 4 The green toothbrush is hers.
5 The toothpaste is theirs.
6 The make-up is hers. 7 The soap is hers.
8 The green washcloth is hers. 9 The hair dryer is hers.
10 The dressing-gown is his. 11 The shampoo is theirs.
page 191

1 1 him  2 herself  3 themselves  4 yourselves  5 him

2 1 myself  2 'Himself.'  3 yourself.  4 ourselves  5 herself  6 yourselves  7 themselves.

3 1 yourself  2 themselves.  3 myself.  4 ourselves  5 herself.

4 1 each other  2 themselves.  3 each other  4 yourselves  5 each other

page 192

1 Column 2: us, not our Column 3: her, not hers Column 4: mine, not mines Column 5: themselves, not theirselves

2 1 his wife  2 mine  3 ours  4 its  5 'I like it.'  6 It's five miles  7 It's Tuesday.  8 'It's over there!'  9 They were  10 it was wonderful  11 them  12 'I was me.'  13 That's her  14 It is cold  15 I have  16 her leg  17 It is  18 Is that my coat?  19 Whose  20 'It's me.'

3 1 her.  2 herself.  3 each other.

page 193

4 1 myself.  2 each other  3 himself  4 me; myself.  5 each other  6 themselves  7 you; yourself.  8 yourselves.  9 each other.  10 yourselves

5 1 myself  2 yourself  3 himself  4 myself  5 ourselves  6 yourself

6 1 his  2 each other  3 they  4 her  5 she  6 they  7 They  8 it's  9 Hers  10 their  11 his  12 she's  13 him  14 her  15 herself.  16 them  17 they're  18 each other  19 I  20 they

page 194

1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>me</th>
<th>my</th>
<th>mine</th>
<th>myself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>itself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>ours</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 1 I like it  2 It's 20 miles  3 It's Friday.  4 his sister  5 theirs  6 their children  7 Whose  8 each other  9 enjoyed myself  10 teaching myself  11 Where's my bike?  12 It is  13 his arm  14 I have  15 made myself comfortable

3 1 him; me.  2 her; herself.  3 each other  4 ourselves.  5 myself.  6 each other.  7 yourself; you  8 me; yourself.  9 me.  10 her  11 me; me  12 her  13 his  14 myself; they  15 her

page 196

1 1 + -s: cats, chairs, gardens, hotels, planes, ships, tables, times, trees  
    + -es: boxes, brushes, churches, classes, dresses, gases, glasses, watches, wishes

2 1 + -s: guys, holidays, keys, ways  
    + -es: copies, countries, families, parties

3 1 children  2 students  3 want  4 cities  5 wives  6 do  7 teeth  8 watches  9 babies  10 matches  11 guys  12 work  13 people

page 197

1 1 class ✓ club ✓ Communist Party ✓ company ✓ crowd ✓ idea ✓ lunch ✓ question 
    ✓ room ✓ school ✓ train ✓

2 1 D say  2 A want  3 B play  4 C haven't  5 G have  6 F are

3 1 dark glasses.  2 shorts.  3 scissors  4 black trousers  5 silk pyjamas.  6 tights
In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example 'I'm, don't') or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
2 1 F office building 2 D dog food 3 A computer engineer 4 B language school 5 E baby clothes 6 G knife drawer

3 1 a metal box 2 chocolate cakes 3 a plastic fork 4 vegetable soup 5 a leather jacket 6 cotton shirts 7 a paper plate 8 tomato salad 9 a stone wall

**page 205**

4 1 an office manager 2 a coffee maker 3 a coffee drinker 4 an animal lover 5 floor cleaner 6 a tennis player 7 a letter opener 8 a cigar smoker 9 a mountain climber

5 1 telephone book 2 teacher’s book 3 Elizabeth’s journey 4 train journey 5 aunt’s home 6 holiday home 7 brother’s interview 8 job interview

**page 206**

1 1 some 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 some 8 a 9 a 10 some

2 (possible answers) trousers, jeans, tights, shorts, pants, pyjamas, glasses, scissors

3 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 ✗ 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 ✗ 10 ✓

4 1 That’s Peter’s house 2 children’s 3 boys’ 4 father’s 5 boss’s secretary or secretary’s boss 6 Jane and Peter’s 7 parents’ 8 teacher’s 9 John’s 10 men’s

5 1 a shoe shop 2 orange juice 3 a leather jacket 4 a train driver 5 a coffee table 6 a window cleaner 7 news readers 8 a computer magazine 9 a street market 10 a gold watch

**page 207**

6 1 bus driver 2 a mountain climber 3 a tennis player 4 a maths teacher 5 a dog trainer 6 a glass blower 7 a road cleaner 8 a butterfly collector 9 a computer programmer 10 a bird watcher

7 1 clothes shops 2 family business 3 Joe’s wife 4 sons’ 5 daughter’s 6 plastic tables and chairs 7 have 8 Joe’s 9 bus drivers 10 chocolate cake

**page 208**

1 foxes, journeys, matches, books, tables, feet, people, knives, mice, dogs, days, families, women, leaves, men, children, cars, wives, babies

2 1 X 2 X 3 ideas 4 ducks 5 X 6 journeys 7 X 8 governments 9 classes 10 X

3 1 tennis player 2 are 3 an hour’s sleep 4 women’s 5 countries 6 A large one 7 information 8 are 9 flower shop 10 phone book

4 1 milk chocolate 2 lives 3 book shops 4 were the people or was the person 5 sister’s son 6 the blue ones 7 I’d like one 8 a football player 9 journeys 10 street market 11 my brother’s 12 an animal doctor 13 Anna’s mother 14 silver earrings 15 orange juice 16 animal doctor 17 door of the house 18 There’s Peter’s house. 19 Do you have Emma’s address? 20 a big job

**page 210**

1 1 a beautiful little girl 2 in a red coat 3 was walking through a dark forest 4 with a big bag 5 of wonderful red apples 6 to see her old grandmother 7 Under a tall green tree 8 she saw a big bad wolf 9 with long white teeth

2 1 ‘Good morning, little girl,’ said 2 the big bad wolf. 3 ‘Where are you going 4 with that heavy bag 5 on this fine day?’ 6 ‘I’m going to see my old grandmother,’ 7 said the little girl. 8 ‘She lives in a small house 9 near the new supermarket.’

3 1 friendly 2 little 3 stupid. 4 big

**page 211**

4 1 beautiful and intelligent 2 cold, hungry and tired
5 1 'That car looks expensive.' 2 'Jane seems happy.' 3 'I feel ill and tired.' 4 'It gets dark very early here in winter.' 5 'My parents are getting old.'

6 1 'The train is late.' 2 'He looks Australian.' 3 'Your hair looks beautiful.' 4 'My memory is getting very bad.' 5 'I want to become rich and famous.'

**Page 212**

1 1 slow 2 interestingly 3 beautifully 4 easy 5 perfect 6 badly 7 happy 8 angry 9 strong 10 quietly

2 1 finally 2 sincerely 3 loudly 4 thirstily 5 probably 6 usually 7 nicely 8 wonderfully 9 coldly 10 unhappily 11 comfortably

**Page 213**

1 1 I read the letter carefully/slowly/yesterday.
2 2 I bought a computer yesterday.
3 3 Write your name carefully/clearly.
4 4 You must see the doctor tomorrow.
5 5 He speaks four languages correctly/perfectly.
6 6 You didn't write the address clearly/correctly.
7 7 I don't like skiing much/slowly.
8 8 Please speak clearly and slowly.

3 1 extremely/terribly 2 completely 3 beautifully/very well 4 extremely/terribly 5 beautifully/very well 6 nearly 7 badly/terribly 8 extremely/terribly

**Page 214**

1 1 Jake always eats fish. He even eats fish for breakfast. 2 Ann often plays tennis, but she only plays in the evenings. 3 Edward usually puts tomato sauce on everything. He probably puts it on ice cream. 4 I sometimes forget names. I never forget faces. 5 Jane hardly ever gets angry, and she never shouts at people. 6 I always get to the station on time, and the train is always late. 7 I will definitely phone you tomorrow, and I will probably write next week. 8 I usually drink tea. I sometimes drink coffee. 9 Your sister is certainly a good singer. She is also a very interesting person. 10 My mother is still asleep. I think she is probably ill.

2 1 Do you often play cards? 2 Have you ever been to Tibet? 3 Are you always happy? 4 Does the boss ever take a holiday? 5 Do you usually eat in restaurants? 6 Is Barbara still ill?

**Page 215**

(possible answers)
Eva never plays football. Tom plays football three times a week. Eva plays tennis once a week. Tom hardly ever plays tennis. Eva often goes skiing. Tom never goes skiing. Eva goes to the theatre every week. Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year. Eva goes to the cinema three or four times a year. Tom goes to the cinema twice a month. Eva never goes to concerts. Tom goes to concerts every week.

(Other answers are possible.)

4 go climbing 1 go swimming 8 go sailing 4 go wind-surfing 12 go skiing 11 go skating 10 go fishing 3 go shopping 7 go to the opera 9 go to the theatre 2 go to concerts 5

**Page 216**

1 1 boring 2 bored 3 interested 4 interesting
2 1 annoying 2 frightened; frightening 3 exciting; excited 4 surprising; surprised

**Page 217**

1 1 well 2 early 3 hard 4 weekly 5 hardly
2 1 Daily 2 lately 3 fast 4 hardly 5 early 6 well 7 late 8 weekly 9 hard 10 lately

3 1 X 2 ✓ 3 X 4 X 5 ✓

**Page 218**

1 1 He was driving a fast red car. 2 She speaks perfect Chinese. 3 She speaks Chinese perfectly. 4 I lost my keys yesterday. 5 I've got a very important meeting tomorrow. 6 Anna read Peter's letter slowly. 7 Tim plays the piano brilliantly. 8 Lucy is terribly unhappy. 9 They make very good ice cream here. 10 She's been happily unmarried for 15 years.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
2 1 terrible 2 slowly 3 hard 4 friendly 5 badly 6 unhappy 7 extremely; late 8 carefully 9 late 10 completely 11 beautiful 12 hard 13 unclearly 14 perfect 15 well 4 careful; extremely

page 219

5 1 interesting films 2 a good cheap restaurant 3 and good-looking 4 interested 5 I very much like or I like ... very much. 6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Emma!' 7 terribly 8 my glasses yesterday. 9 happily 10 have often thought 11 difficult 12 in a friendly way/voice 13 Arabic very well. 14 beautiful 15 fast 16 carefully 17 perfect 18 is always 19 usually speak 20 hard 6 1 fast 2 daily 3 hard 4 late 5 hardly 6 friendly 7 silly 8 lonely. 7 1 a light/coffee 2 water 3 holidays 4 hair, skin 5 a light 6 a bed, water 7 hair, skin 8 milk 9 apples 10 children

page 220

1 1 really, completely, possibly, happily, nicely, easily, beautifully, probably, usually, incredibly, unhappily, rightly, sincerely, hungrily, carefully, perfectly, warmly, angrily, comprehensibly, slowly 2 1 I saw a good film yesterday. 2 Andy can definitely help you. 3 You speak Russian very well. 4 She never smiles. 5 Alice had some really interesting ideas. 6 They sell very good clothes here. 7 I have never been to Norway. 8 Karl plays the violin very badly. 9 I have already paid. 10 He was wearing a new blue suit. 11 We often see Annie and Seb. 12 Emma read the report slowly. 13 Judy and Simon are always late. 14 You are probably right. 15 I hardly ever go to the cinema.

3 1 X 2 X 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 X 6 ✓ 7 X 8 ✓ 9 X 10 X 11 ✓ 12 ✓ 13 X 14 X 15 X 4 1 and stupid-looking 2 are usually 3 bored 4 will never 5 always listen 6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Jenny!' 7 have often been 8 terribly 9 slowly 10 is already 11 You never tell me 12 beautiful 13 has probably 14 fast 15 slowly

page 222

1 1 greener, greenest 2 safer, safest 3 richer, richest 4 smaller, smallest 5 stranger, strangest 6 finer, finest 7 higher, highest 8 wider, widest 9 nearer, nearest 10 whiter, whitest 2 1 bigger, biggest 2 hotter, hottest 3 newer, newest 4 wetter, wettest 5 slimmer, slimmest 3 1 lazier, laziest 2 hungrier, hungriest 3 sleepier, sleepiest 4 angrier, angriest 5 dirtier, dirtiest 4 1 more careful, most careful 2 more beautiful, most beautiful 3 more intelligent, most intelligent 4 more dangerous, most dangerous 5 more important, most important 6 more boring, most boring 7 more interested, most interested 5 1 farther/further 2 better 3 worse.

page 223

1 1 the nicest 2 the best 3 more expensive 4 more dangerous 5 the most dangerous 6 bigger 7 the fastest 8 most 2 1 shorter 2 the most intelligent 3 quieter 4 the coldest 5 louder 6 the biggest 7 more intelligent 8 the most boring

page 224

1 1 Dogs are friendlier than cats. 2 Dogs are more intelligent than cats. 3 Train travel is cheaper than air travel. 4 Air travel is faster than train travel. 5 The Sahara is hotter than the Himalayas. 6 The Himalayas are colder than the Sahara. 7 English is easier than Chinese. 8 Chinese is more difficult than 9 English. 9 Canada is bigger than Ireland. 10 Ireland is smaller than Canada.
The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America. Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales. Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps. Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats. The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts. Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

1. The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America.
2. Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales.
3. Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps.
4. Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats.
5. The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts.
6. Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

Page 225

1. is more careful than him. is more careful than he is. hungrier than me. hungrier than I am.
2. is shorter than you. is shorter than you are.
3. are more excited than us. are more excited than we are.
4. is more beautiful than her. is more beautiful than she is.

Page 226

1. Fn 2 Eq 3 Ar 4 Cm 5 Bp
2. In the 1970s, the Beatles were the richest musicians in the world. Eric says that Eleanor is the best singer in the group. When I was a child, my father was the tallest man in our town.
3. In this country, February is the coldest month of the year. Who is the oldest of your three aunts?
4. Helen is very intelligent, but she is the quietest person in my class. Which is the best of these three bikes? The biggest city in Argentina?

Page 227

1. Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.
2. Liam works more carefully than John.
3. Simon goes swimming more often than Karen.
4. My car runs more quietly than my sister's car.
5. Annie talks more slowly than Rob.
6. Olivia thinks more clearly than most people.
7. Jack dresses more expensively than me.
8. I live more cheaply than my friends.

Page 228

1. Picture A is Jenny. Picture B is Cassie.
2. Cassie is not as slim as Jenny. Cassie is not as tall as Jenny.
3. Jenny's skirt is not as long as Cassie's. Cassie's bag is not as big as Jenny's.
4. Jenny's coat is not as heavy as Cassie's. Cassie's glass is not as big as Jenny's.

Page 229

1. Eric has twice as many cousins as Tony.
2. Ben eats three times as many sandwiches as Jo.
3. Helen has nearly as many computer games as Adrian.
4. Chris drinks twice as much coffee as Liz.
5. Mike has just as many books as David.
6. Rebecca doesn't have nearly as much free time as Fred.

Page 230

1. as; as 2. most; in 3. than 4. the; in
5. better; best 6. more 7. as; as 8. than
9. more; am. 10. than; less

2. in the world 2. than 3. most 4. more
5. slowly 5. most 6. than me 7. as cold as ice
8. than his wife 9. higher 10. worst
11. most intelligent 12. happier 13. in
14. of 15. the best
3 1 B is faster than C. 2 A is not as fast as B. 3 C is not as fast as B. 4 B is the fastest. 5 C is more expensive than A. 6 A is not as expensive as B. 7 B is the most expensive. 8 B is not as big as C. 9 C is bigger than A. 10 C is the biggest.

page 231

4 1 more than a year and less than a century 2 more than a week and less than a year 3 more than a day and less than a month 4 more than a minute and less than a day 5 more than an hour and less than a week 6 more than a month and less than a decade

5 1 John 2 Tom 3 Hannah

6 than

page 232

1 1 more interesting, most interesting 2 thinner, thinnest 3 cheaper, cheapest 4 easier, easiest 5 worse, worst 6 more beautiful, most beautiful 7 lazier, laziest 8 farther/further, farthest/furthest 9 better, best 10 older, oldest 11 fatter, fattest 12 happier, happiest 13 later, latest 14 hotter, hottest 15 slower, slowest 16 bigger, biggest 17 more expensive, most expensive 18 dirtier, dirtiest 19 more important, most important 20 stronger, strongest

2 1 as; as 2 than 3 that 4 than 5 than 6 as 7 that 8 than 9 as 10 than

3 1 than; more 2 am. 3 earlier; earliest 4 more 5 the; in 6 As; as 7 most; in 8 as; as 9 than 10 worse; worst.

4 1 in 2 worst 3 most 4 than 5 more quickly 6 as hard as stones 7 bigger 8 most beautiful 9 of 10 the worst

page 234

1 1 so 2 although 3 but 4 and 5 while 6 because 7 until 8 while 9 or 10 as soon as

2 1 We'll be glad when this job is finished. 2 I'll be very angry if you do that again. 3 I'd like to talk to you before you go home. 4 Sue watched TV until John came home. 5 We'll see you again after we come back from holiday. 6 I like her, although she's a difficult person. 7 Henry didn't like working in a bank, so he changed his job. 8 They think they can do what they like because they're rich. 9 I want to stop working before I'm 50. 10 You look beautiful when you're smiling.

page 235

1 1 I put on two sweaters because it was very cold. Because it was very cold, I put on two sweaters. 2 I'm going to work in Australia when I leave school. When I leave school, I'm going to work in Australia. 3 I go and see Felix if I want to talk to somebody. If I want to talk to somebody, I go and see Felix. 4 Ann made coffee while Bill fried some eggs. While Bill fried some eggs, Ann made coffee. 5 I was interested in the conversation, although I didn't understand everything. Although I didn't understand everything, I was interested in the conversation. 6 We went to a restaurant because there was no food in the house. Because there was no food in the house, we went to a restaurant. 7 We'll have a big party when John comes home. When John comes home, we'll have a big party. 8 I stayed with friends while my parents were travelling. While my parents were travelling, I stayed with friends. 9 I go for long walks at the weekend if the weather's fine. If the weather's fine, I go for long walks at the weekend. 10 Come and see us as soon as you arrive in Scotland. As soon as you arrive in Scotland, come and see us.

page 236

1 1 hear 2 make 3 leaves 4 write 5 get 6 am 7 stops 8 go 9 arrive 10 finishes.

2 1 finds OR gets 2 travels 3 will help 4 starts 5 will tell 6 look after 7 will look 8 stops 9 come 10 will get
1 1 Because the rooms were dirty, I changed my hotel. I changed my hotel because the rooms were dirty. The rooms were dirty, so I changed my hotel.  
2 Because the taxi was late, we missed the train. We missed the train because the taxi was late. The taxi was late, so we missed the train.  
3 Because I didn’t like the film, I walked out of the cinema. I walked out of the cinema because I didn’t like the film. I didn’t like the film, so I walked out of the cinema.

2 1 Although I felt ill, I went on working. I went on working, although I felt ill. I felt ill, but I went on working.  
2 Although she was very kind, I didn’t like her. I didn’t like her, although she was very kind. She was very kind, but I didn’t like her.  
3 Although he’s a big man, he doesn’t eat much. He doesn’t eat much, although he’s a big man. He’s a big man, but he doesn’t eat much.

1 My company has offices in London, Tokyo, New York and Cairo.  
3 I’ll be here on Tuesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday.  
4 She’s got five cats, two dogs, a horse and a rabbit.  
5 He plays golf, rugby, hockey and badminton.  
6 She addressed, stamped and posted the letter.

1 She has painted the kitchen, (the) living room and (the) dining room.  
2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt, blue jeans and white trainers.  
3 Can you give me a knife, fork and spoon, please?  
4 Many people speak English in India, Singapore and South Africa.  
5 I’ve written and posted six letters this morning.

1 I think that she’s either Scottish or Irish.  
2 I’d like to work with either animals or children.  
3 He did well in both mathematics and history.  
4 This car is neither fast nor comfortable.  
5 She neither looked at me nor said anything.  
6 I’ve got problems both at home and in my job.  
7 You can either stay here or go home.  
8 I like both (the) theatre and (the) cinema.  
9 She speaks neither English nor French.  
10 I don’t understand either politics or economics.

1 1 will have; go 2 will wait; arrives 3 come; will be 4 will be; goes 5 get; will cook  
6 will send; receive 7 will be; are 8 go; will take 9 stops; will go 10 will have; gets up.

1 Because the teacher was ill, the children had a holiday. The children had a holiday because the teacher was ill.  
2 When I was in China, I made a lot of friends. I made a lot of friends when I was in China.  
3 Until they built the new road, it was difficult to get to our village. It was difficult to get to our village until they built the new road.  
4 Although Jessica wrote three letters, Dylan never answered. Dylan never answered, although Jessica wrote three letters.  
5 As soon as the work was finished, I phoned him. I phoned him as soon as the work was finished.

1 I both swim and play tennis.  
2 He either lives or works in Birmingham.  
3 My father speaks neither Greek nor French.  
4 She likes neither pop music nor jazz.  
5 She can have either orange juice or water.  
6 I can neither sing nor dance.  
7 He’s either Scottish or Irish.  
8 He’s studying both physics and biology.  
9 This sofa is neither nice-looking nor comfortable.  
10 Anna neither looked at Henry nor spoke to him.

1 so 2 when 3 and 4 although  
5 because 6 and 7 because 8 and 9 until 10 although 11 before

1 Karl plays neither the trombone nor the saxophone.  
2 Melanie plays both the cello and the drums.  
3 Neither Steve nor Karen play(s) the violin.  
4 Both Joanna and Charles play the guitar.  
5 Karen plays both the piano and the trumpet.  
6 Sophie plays neither the guitar nor the trumpet.  
7 Both Charles and Steve play the saxophone.  
8 Neither Sophie nor Steve play(s) the trumpet.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I’m, don’t) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
page 242

1 1 I'm going to do some gardening until it gets dark. 2 I couldn't read because it was too dark. 3 The food wasn't very good, but he ate everything. 4 The lesson finished early, so we went for a walk. 5 After I got his letter, I went round to see him. 6 As soon as Jane gets up, she makes coffee. 7 You can't have any more coffee, because there isn't any. 8 I didn't go to work, because the buses weren't running. 9 The buses weren't running, so I didn't go to work. 10 The phone always rings while I'm having a bath. 11 I can't tell you the decision until I know myself. 12 He didn't work very hard, but he passed all his exams. 13 When the holiday was over, I had to start working very hard. 14 As soon as Andrew saw Zoe, he fell madly in love with her. 15 After I left school, I worked as a taxi driver.

2 1 He plays neither the piano nor the guitar. 2 Although the train was late, I got there in time. or The train was late, but I got there in time. 3 small, cold and dirty 4 I/he/she/we/they went out 5 gets 6 Because it was cold, I put on a coat. or It was cold, so I put on a coat. 7 or walk home 8 a knife and fork 9 Although I would like to help you, I don't have time. or I would like to help you, but I don't have time. 10 both classical music and jazz. 11 I find 12 I'm old

page 244

1 1 If I can't sleep, I get up and read. I get up and read if I can't sleep. 2 If you take books from my room, please tell me. Please tell me if you take books from my room. 3 If you're hungry, why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup if you're hungry? 4 If she's been travelling all day, she must be tired. She must be tired if she's been travelling all day. 5 If we catch the first train, we can be in London by 9.00. We can be in London by 9.00 if we catch the first train.

page 245

1 1 get 2 will bring 3 will give 4 phones 5 have 6 stop 7 will be 8 won't laugh 9 will cook 10 stops

2 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 am not; will see 5 will study; has 6 will drive; can 7 marries; will not have 8 will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) lend

3 1 If I lose my job, I won't find another job. 2 If I don't find another job, I'll lose my flat. 3 If I lose my flat, I'll move back to my parents' house. 4 If I move back to my parents' house, I'll get very bored. 5 If I get very bored, I'll go swimming every day. 6 If I go swimming every day, I'll look very good. 7 If I look very good, I'll meet interesting people. 8 If I meet interesting people, I'll go to lots of parties. 9 If I go to lots of parties, I'll have a wonderful time.

page 246

1 1 could; would eat 2 were; would know 3 knew; would tell 4 asked; would (you) do 5 could; would (you) do 6 would buy; had 7 asked; would (you) say 8 would finish; did not talk 9 would study; had 10 were; would watch

2 1 If Jane and Peter were here, we would play cards. 2 If we had enough money, we would buy a new car. 3 If Fred answered letters, I would write to him. 4 If I could find my camera, I would take your photo. 5 If I could understand the words, I would enjoy opera. 6 If Carola didn't talk about herself all the time, I would like her. 7 If I had a dog, I would go for walks.
page 247

1. If I were you, I'd take a holiday. 2. If I were you, I'd join a club. 3. If I were you, I'd fly. 4. If I were you, I'd call the police at once. 5. If I were you, I wouldn't sell it.

2. 1. If I were you, I'd start a business. 2. If I were you, I'd put the money in the bank. 3. If I were you, I'd buy a sports car. 4. If I were you, I'd have a big party. 5. If I were you, I'd travel round the world. 6. If I were you, I'd stop work. 7. If I were you, I'd give the money away.

page 248

1. lived 2. could 3. go 4. started 5. gave 6. need 7. gave 8. thought 9. was 10. go

2. 1. have; 'll 2. had; 'd 3. get; will 4. got; would
   5. did; would 6. do; will 7. go; won't
   8. went; wouldn't 9. does; won't 10. did; would

page 249

1. had been 2. had worked 3. had taken 4. had not played 5. would have studied 6. Would (you) have crashed 7. would not have slept
   8. had come; would have had
   9. had not broken down; would have been
   10. would (you) have studied; had liked
   11. would not have got; had not wanted
   12. would (you) have helped; had asked

2. 1. If I had caught the 8.15 train, I would have sat by a beautiful foreign woman.
   2. If I had sat by a beautiful foreign woman, I would have fallen in love and married her.
   3. If I had fallen in love and married her, I would have gone to live in her country.
   4. If I had gone to live in her country, I would have worked in her father's diamond business.
   5. If I had worked in her father's diamond business, I would have become very rich.
   6. If I had become very rich, I would have gone into politics.
   7. If I had gone into politics, I would have died in a revolution.

page 250

1. (possible answers)
   1 G 2 H 3 J 4 B 5 K 6 D 7 F 8 C 9 E 10 I

   (Other answers are possible.)

2. 1. bought; would 2. go; 'll 3. lived; would
   4. went; wouldn't 5. start; won't 6. win; will
   7. married; would 8. take; 'll 9. rains; won't
   10. did; wouldn't

3. 1. will 2. looks; it's 3. will; will; will take
   4. will 5. won't 6. will

page 251

4. 1. had not drunk; would have slept
   2. had had; would have gone
   3. would have gone; had not met
   4. had not been; would have gone
   5. would have caught; had run
   6. had stopped; would have lived
   7. would not have asked; had needed
   8. would have been; had stayed
   9. would have won; had known
   10. had had; would have gone

5. ... the cat wouldn't have eaten her supper. If the cat hadn't eaten her supper, she wouldn't have gone to the shop to buy food. If she hadn't gone to the shop to buy food, she wouldn't have seen an advertisement for a secretary. If she hadn't seen an advertisement for a secretary, she wouldn't have got a new job and met my father.

6. 1. If she goes to Egypt, she will have to learn Arabic. 2. If she goes to Brazil, she will have to learn Portuguese. 3. If she goes to Holland, she will have to learn Dutch. 4. If she goes to Kenya, she will have to learn Swahili. 5. If she goes to Greece, she will have to learn Greek. 6. If she goes to Austria, she will have to learn German.

page 252

1. cleaned 2. knows 3. will come
   4. would understand 5. leave 6. would not sell
   7. did not live 8. will translate 9. ask 10. gets

2. 1. if I pass 2. Correct. 3. ate 4. will see
   5. Correct. 6. Correct. 7. he works
   8. Correct. 9. if we are 10. Correct.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
had not asked; would not have known
had been; would have gone
would not have said; had known
would have been; had said
had not got; would not have met
would have died; had not taken
had not been; would have gone
had done; would have studied
would have gone; had had
had not helped; would have been

1 who 2 which 3 which 4 which 5 who
6 which 7 which 8 who 9 who 10 which
11 which 12 who

1 took 2 live 3 she is 4 lost 5 bought
6 is parked 7 it cuts 8 writes 9 make
10 I lent you

The man and woman who live in flat 1 play loud music all night.
The woman who lives in flat 2 broke her leg skiing.
The three men who live in flat 3 play golf all day.
The students who live in flat 4 haven't got much money.
The doctor who lives in flat 5 has three children.
The man who lives in flat 6 drives a Rolls-Royce.
The two women who live in flat 7 are hiding from the police.

The bus which goes to Oxford isn't running today.
Yesterday I met a man who works with your brother.
The child who didn't come to the party was ill.
Can you pick up the papers which are lying on the floor?
The eggs which I bought yesterday were bad.
Here's the book which you asked me to buy for you.
I don't like the man who is going out with my sister.

1 an insect that doesn't make honey and can bite you
2 a bird that can't fly
3 a bird that eats small animals and birds
4 an animal that flies at night and hears very well
5 a machine that can fly straight up
6 a plane that doesn't have an engine
7 a thing that can fly to the moon

the languages she spoke
the sweater I wore
a man I helped
the weather we have had
the car you bought

I'm working for a man I've known for twenty years.
They played a lot of music I didn't like.
The campsite we found was very dirty.
I'm going on holiday with some people I know.
That book you gave to me is very good.
The ring she lost belonged to her grandmother.
I'm driving a car I bought 15 years ago.
The papers you wanted are on the table.

the girl that I was talking about
the people that I work for
the house that I live in
the music that you are listening to
the bus that I go to work on

the girl I was talking about
the people I work for
the house I live in
the music you are listening to
the bus I go to work on

Eric is the man she works for.
Monica is the woman she plays tennis with.
Karen is the woman she reads to.
Emily and Jack are the people she babysits for.
Tom is the man she is in love with.

The man she works for gave her chocolates.
The woman she plays tennis with gave her a clock.
The woman she reads to gave her theatre tickets.
The people she babysits for gave her a picture.
The man she is in love with gave her flowers and earrings.
page 259

1 1 What he did made everybody angry. 2 Take what you want. 3 Soap — that's what I forgot to pack. 4 She gave me a watch. It was just what I wanted. 5 That child does what he likes. 6 What I read in the paper makes me unhappy. 7 Don't tell me what I know already. 8 What I like best in life is doing nothing.

page 260

1 1 I know a man who writes film music. 2 The bus which I took got to London twenty minutes late. 3 We have friends who live in Chicago. 4 The car which I bought last month isn't very good. 5 We stayed in a hotel which had a beautiful garden. 6 I didn't like the man who my sister married. 7 The people who were at the party weren't very interesting. 8 Tim uses long words which I can't understand. 9 The computer which I'm using crashes every five minutes. 10 The woman who works in the flower shop is terribly nice.

2 1 The tickets that I got were terribly expensive. 2 These are the scissors that I use for cutting paper. 3 The woman that gives me tennis lessons is from Brazil. 4 The man that lives next door is always very friendly. 5 I'm spending the day with some people that I know. 6 What did you do with the money that we collected? 7 People that study languages are called linguists. 8 We've got a cat that brings dead rats into the house. 9 The oranges that you bought are all bad. 10 Why did you throw away the soup that I cooked?

page 261

3 1 the clock I bought 2 the film I saw 3 No change. 4 No change. 5 a man I really disliked 6 No change. 7 that dog you had 8 No change. 9 No change. 10 those earrings I bought.

4 The rooms they put us in; the beds they gave us; the extra blankets we asked for; The 'full English breakfast' they served; the 'French champagne' we ordered; that brochure you showed me; The 'view of the sea' they talked about; the gym they advertised; the bill we got.

5 1 the book I was looking at 2 the people I work for 3 the hotel we stayed in 4 the place I drove to 5 those people we were talking to 6 the train we travelled on 7 some people I work with 8 the place I was telling you about 9 the pen I write with 10 the small village my mother lives in.

6 1 Naomi got what Jessica wanted. 2 Sally got what Thalia wanted. 3 Jane got what Anna wanted. 4 Jessica got what Jane wanted. 5 Thalia got what Sally wanted.

page 262

1 1 A, B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A, B 7 A 8 A, B 9 A, B 10 A, B 11 A 12 A 13 A, B 14 B 15 A

2 2 which had 6 The woman who came 8 the man who 10 which I couldn't understand. 12 People who / that live 15 people that you can't relax with. (The other sentences are all correct)

3 1 that 2 that 3 What 4 that 5 what 6 that 7 what 8 what 9 What 10 that

page 264

1 1 he 2 she 3 her. 4 they; their 5 he 6 me. 7 they 8 he; his 9 she; her 10 their

2 1 told 2 said 3 said 4 say 5 told 6 tell 7 told 8 said

page 265

3 1 She said (that) her sister needed a car. 2 He said (that) he had to phone Andrew. 3 She said (that) nobody wanted to help her. 4 She said (that) the radio didn't work. 5 He said (that) he would be in Paris in July. 6 He said (that) he liked the red sweater. 7 He said (that) he couldn't swim. 8 She said (that) her parents were travelling. 9 She said (that) the lessons were very good. 10 They said (that) they hadn't heard from Joseph.

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
4 He thought (that) cats had nine lives. He thought (that) his father knew everything. He thought (that) spaghetti grew on trees. He thought (that) the teacher lived in the school. He thought (that) he would be rich one day. He thought (that) his mother had always been old.

page 266

1 1 She asked him where he lived. 2 She asked him where he worked. 3 She asked him where he was going. 4 She asked him where he had been. 5 She asked him what the number of his car was. 6 She asked him why he was driving on the right.

2 1 She asked him whether it was his car. 2 She asked him if/whether he had a driving licence. 3 She asked him if/whether he had it with him. 4 She asked him if/whether he always drove with the door open. 5 She asked him if/whether he was listening to her.

3 1 They asked him if/whether he was married. 2 They asked him if/whether he had children. 3 They asked him where he had worked before. 4 They asked him why he wanted to change his job. 5 They asked him if/whether he could speak any foreign languages. 6 They asked him what exams he had passed.

page 267

1 1 they live in Greece. 2 she went to Belfast yesterday. 3 he's been ill. 4 it's going to rain. 5 she'll ask her sister. 6 they're going to be rich. 7 if/whether lunch is ready. 8 where I put my keys. 9 I'm getting a cold. 10 this is the right answer.

2 1 Can you tell me where I can buy tickets? 2 Do you know how much it costs? 3 Can you tell me if/whether John has phoned? 4 Can you tell me if/whether I must pay now? 5 Can you tell me if/whether Maria likes steak? 6 Do you know where I parked the car?

page 268

1 1 now – then 2 this – that 3 tomorrow – the next day 4 yesterday – the day before 5 today – that day 6 tonight – that night 7 last week – the week before 8 next week – the next week

2 1 that place. 2 the week before. 3 the day before. 4 that day. 5 that night. 6 the next day.

3 1 He said he loved that place. 2 He said he'd seen a great film the day before. 3 He said he was going to another party that night. 4 He asked if I wanted to play tennis the next day. 5 He said his girlfriend would be there the next week.

page 269

1 1 Dave asked Sandra to give him her phone number. 2 The boss told James to work late. 3 Judy asked Kim not to tell Karen about Ryan. 4 Mr Sanders asked Fred not to smoke in his car. 5 The general told Colonel Walker to take 100 men and cross the river. 6 Ann told Polly not to study so hard.

2 1 His girlfriend told him to write to her every day. 2 His mother told him to keep his room clean. 3 His father told him to work hard. 4 His sister told him not to go to too many parties. 5 His brother told him to get a lot of exercise. 6 His mother told him to change his shirt every day. 7 His father told him not to go to bed late. 8 His brother told him to be careful with money. 9 His sister told him not to play cards for money. 10 His grandmother told him to eat properly.

page 270

1 1 He asked her if/whether he could have ice cream for breakfast. 2 He asked her why the stars only came out at night. 3 He asked her why Daddy / his father had to work. 4 He asked her where God was. 5 He asked her whether he would be taller than her one day. 6 He asked her if she believed in Father Christmas. 7 He asked her if/whether Scotland was in London. 8 He asked her when he would be rich. 9 He asked her why French people didn't speak English. 10 He asked her how big the universe was.

2 1 She told him to wash his hands before breakfast. 2 She told him not to eat with his mouth open. 3 She told him to eat everything on his plate. 4 She told him not to talk with his mouth full. 5 She told him to make his bed. 6 She told him to clean his room. 7 She told him to polish his shoes. 8 She told him to put on a clean shirt. 9 She told him not to shout at his sister. 10 She told him not to be late for school.
3 1 John doesn't know how to phone New York.
   2 John doesn't know where to pay.
   3 John doesn't know when to start work.
   4 John doesn't know how to switch the computer on.
   5 John doesn't know where to put his coat.
   6 John doesn't know how much to pay.
   7 John doesn't know what to study.

page 271

4 1 had been 2 told 3 was having 4 was doing 5 had had 6 the (week) before
    7 would 8 said 9 had 10 had lost
11 to buy 12 if/whether 13 was 14 was
15 would 16 was living 17 had spent
18 to send 19 to give 20 told 21 hadn't heard 22 where 23 was living. 24 if/whether 25 wanted

page 272

1 1 said 2 told 3 told 4 said 5 said
   6 told 7 told 8 told 9 said 10 told

2 1 X 2 X 3 ✓ 4 X 5 ✓ 6 X 7 ✓
   8 ✓ 9 X 10 X

3 3 where the post office was. 4 when Jane is arriving? 7 tell me 8 was going 9 if/whether I was 10 what he wanted. 11 what this word means. 12 wanted. 15 why she said (All the other sentences are correct.)

page 274

1 1 on 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 at; on 6 on
   7 on 8 at; on 9 at 10 on 11 at 12 on

2 1 at 2 in 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 in 7 at; in
   8 in 9 in 10 at; in; on 11 in 12 in 13 at
   14 in 15 in

page 275

3 1 I'll see you next Wednesday. 2 It rained non-stop last week. 3 Business was bad last month.
   4 Shall we go out this evening? 5 We're going to America next month. 6 Ann had a car crash last Wednesday. 7 I'm going to change my job next year. 8 My holiday is in August every year. OR ... every August. 9 I've spent too much money already this month. 10 The new school will be open next March. OR ... in March next year.

4 1 In five days. 2 In a week. 3 In two weeks.
   4 In a month. 5 In a year. 6 In a hundred years.

5 1 the twenty-first of March / March the twenty-first, nineteen ninety-nine 2 the fourteenth of February / February the fourteenth, nineteen sixty
   3 the twenty-eighth of July / July the twenty-eighth, eighteen forty-six 4 the sixth of May / May the sixth, two thousand and three 5 the ninth of May / May the ninth, nineteen eighty-four
   6 the seventeenth of December / December the seventeenth, two thousand and twelve

page 276

1 1 until lunchtime. 2 until Saturday. 3 until the age of 14. 4 until the end. 5 until July.

2 1 He washed the car from 8.00 to/till/until 9.00.
   2 He talked to the woman next door from 9.00 to/till/until 9.15.
   3 He played tennis from 10.00 to/till/until 11.00.
   4 He talked to friends from 11.00 to/till/until 11.30.
   5 He went for a walk from 11.30 to/till/until 12.45.

4 1 by 2 until 3 by 4 by 5 by 6 until

page 277

1 1 for 2 during 3 during 4 for; during 5 during 6 for 7 during 8 for

2 1 while they were playing 2 during the lesson 3 during the war 4 while she was teaching 5 while he was speaking 6 while they were talking 7 during her illness 8 while it was snowing

3 (possible answers)
   1 for an hour or so 2 for ever 3 for a moment 4 for a couple of hours 5 for a minute or two 6 for a few minutes 7 for an hour or so 8 for life (Other answers are possible.)

page 278

1 1 in 2 on 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 on
   7 on 8 in 9 on 10 on

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
2 1 in my diary. 2 in the office 3 on her first finger 4 in the cupboard. 5 on the roof of the car. 6 in your car 7 on his T-shirt 8 on the wall 9 in a little village 10 on a piece of paper; in my pocket

page 279
1 1 at the cinema 2 at the station. 3 at the party 4 at a Chinese restaurant 5 at a theatre 6 at work. 7 at breakfast 8 at Birmingham. 9 at the hotel bar 10 at the crossroads.
2 1 at the bottom 2 at the end 3 at the top 4 at the top 5 at the beginning

page 281
1 1 above 2 by 3 above 4 by 5 behind 6 under 7 against
2 1 under 2 between; opposite 3 against 4 behind 5 near 6 in front of 7 near
3 1 opposite 2 between 3 behind 4 near 5 in front of 6 under 7 against 8 between 9 by

page 282
1 1 up the steps 2 through the gate 3 over the fence 4 past the café 5 round the corner 6 out of the shop 7 across the river 8 along the yellow line 9 under the bridge 10 into the water 11 off the bike 12 down the mountain

page 283
2 1 along the road 2 up the mountain 3 down the stairs 4 over the wall 5 into the bank 6 round the corner 7 through the door 8 off the table 9 out of the church 10 under the bridge 11 past the bank 12 across the river
3 1 out of; along 2 down; over 3 along; through; into 4 up; into; off 5 past; under; round 6 off; into 7 out of; across; out of 8 up; down
4 1 to 2 in 3 to 4 from; to 5 in 6 to 7 at 8 at 9 in 10 to

page 284
1 1 on 2 on 3 at 4 for 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 in 9 in 10 on 11 by 12 until 13 during 14 while 15 at
2 1 last Saturday 2 next year 3 in September every year or every September 4 this month 5 last week 6 tomorrow evening 7 next Saturday 8 last month 9 next month 10 next August or in August next year
3 1 along the road 2 down the mountain 3 into the church 4 of the table 5 out of the church 6 up the mountain 7 over the wall 8 past the church 9 round the corner 10 through the door
4 1 between 2 above 3 in front of 4 opposite 5 against 6 through 7 along; by 8 out of; across 9 off; into 10 past; under; round

page 285
5 1 out of the church 2 on the bus 3 up the stairs 4 under the bridge 5 into the river 6 behind the door 7 at the bottom of the stairs 8 down the mountain 9 in front of the police station 10 at the end
6 1 the twenty-third of April or April the twenty-third 2 the first of September or September the first 3 the fifth of August, two thousand and ten or August the fifth ... 4 the second of March, nineteen eighty or March the second ... 5 the tenth of January, two thousand and two or January the tenth ... 6 the third of April, two thousand and eight or April the third ... 7 the fourth of October or October the fourth ... 8 the twenty-first of March, nineteen thirty-six or March the twenty-first ... 9 the twenty-second of October, two thousand and six or October the twenty-second ... 10 the first of January, two thousand and one or January the first ...
7 (possible answers) 1 for a moment. 2 for life. 3 for a long time. 4 for a few minutes. 5 for a long time. 6 for a couple of hours 7 for years and years. 8 for a moment 9 for a few minutes. 10 for an hour or so. (Other answers are possible.)
8 1 on 2 on 3 opposite 4 off 5 by
6 along 7 at 8 under 9 up 10 round
11 down 12 across 13 through 14 out of
15 in front of 16 in 17 by

page 286
1 1 on 2 over 3 on 4 at 5 off 6 by
7 in 8 for 9 through 10 while
2 1 on 2 from; until 3 for 4 during 5 in
6 at/in front of/opposite 7 on 8 on 9 on
10 at 11 by/before 12 between 13 at
14 in 15 along/by/near
3 1 for three hours 2 by Saturday 3 out of the
room 4 opposite our house 5 across this river
6 on the ceiling 7 across the town 8 next
Monday 9 at Christmas 10 off the bus

page 288
1 1, won't you? 2, has he? 3 -? 4, isn't it?
5, can he? 6, isn't it? 7, was it? 8 -?
9, aren't I?
2 1 isn't it? 2 aren't we? 3 isn't she? 4 won't
you 5 can't he? 6 doesn't she? 7 doesn't it?
3 1 is he? 2 can you? 3 do they? 4 does she?
5 do they? 6 has he/she?

page 289
4 1 wasn't there? 2 aren't there? 3 isn't there?
4 has there? 5 were there?
5 1 do you? 2 isn't she? 3 isn't it? 4 can you?
5 wouldn't you? 6 do they? 7 hasn't she?
8 aren't I? 9 isn't there? 10 don't you?
6 1 They've lived in France, haven't they? 2 They
all went home early, didn't they? 3 It rained all
last week, didn't it? 4 Her brother writes for the
newspapers, doesn't he? 5 I need a visa, don't I?
6 You'd like a holiday, wouldn't you? 7 The train
was late, wasn't it? 8 Sarah forgot your birthday,
didn't she? 9 There was a letter for me, wasn't
there? 10 I'm in time for lunch, aren't I?

page 290
1 1 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.' 2 'No, he hasn't.'
3 'Yes, they do.' 4 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.'
5 No, he doesn't.' 6 'Yes, I/we do.' 7 'No,
thanks, she wouldn't.' 8 'No, it wasn't.'
9 'No, I'm afraid I'm not.'
3 1 'No, I'm not.' 2 'Yes, it is.' 3 'Yes, she does,'
4 'No, it doesn't.' 5 'Yes, he did.' 6 'Yes, he did.'

page 291
1 1 Have you? 2 Did he? 3 Is there?
4 Can't you? 5 Doesn't it? 6 Is she?
7 Do they? 8 Don't they?
2 1 C Don't you? 2 B Are they? 3 F Is it?
4 D Has he? 5 E Can't you?
3 (possible answers)
1 'Congratulations!' 2 'Say 'hello' to her for me.'
3 'Good luck!' 4 'That's interesting.'
5 'What a pity!' 6 'What a nuisance!'
7 'I am sorry.' 8 'That's a surprise.'
9 'That's terrible.' (Other answers are possible.)

page 292
1 1 Are you? 2 Joe didn't phone yesterday.
3 I'm feeling ill. 4 John needs help.
5 You don't remember David, 6 Have you?
7 can't they?
2 1 don't you? 2 Yes, I do. 3 didn't he?
4 he didn't. 5 Is he? 6 does he? 7 Yes, it is.
8 Aren't you? 9 don't you? 10 Yes, I do
11 haven't you? 12 Yes, I have. 13 Are you?
14 Yes, I would. 15 can I? 16 Yes, you can.
17 Are you?

page 293
1 1 ... but I do. 2 ... I have. 3 ... I don't think
she will. 4 ... I hope he has. 5 ... Of course I
will. 6 ... I can tomorrow.
2 1 'They hope to.' 2 she didn't want to. 3 I'd
like to. 4 I used to. 5 'Sorry, I forgot to.'
6 'It's starting to.'

In these answers, we usually give either contracted forms (for example I'm, don't)
or full forms (for example I am, do not). Normally both are correct.
3 1 I couldn't understand what he wanted from me.  
   She doesn't know what she's doing.  
   The bus is late again.  
   Do you speak French?  
   I haven't seen them.  
   I don't think so.

page 294

1 1 'So is Alice.'  2 'So does my father.'  
   'So can I.'  4 'So does Carla.'  5 'So has Edward.'

2 1 neither/nor was the meat.  
   'Neither/Nor has Gemma.'  
   'Neither/Nor does this one.'  
   'Neither/Nor can I.'  5 neither/nor will his friends.

3 1 'My car does.'  2 her sister hasn't.  
   3 our dog can't.  
   4 'The train doesn't.'  5 the back door was.  
   6 'Her second one did.'

page 295

4 1 Eric plays tennis, and so does Dan.  
   2 Julie isn't tall, but Denise is.  
   3 Denise doesn't laugh a lot, and neither/nor does Paul.  
   4 Dan can ski, but Rachel can't.  
   5 Julie has been to America, and so has Denise.  
   6 Eric isn't tall, and neither/nor is Paul.  
   7 Julie doesn't play tennis, but Dan does.  
   8 Paul doesn't like dancing, but Rachel does.

page 296

1 1 she wasn't.  
   2 he does.  
   3 she wouldn't.  
   4 it doesn't.  
   5 I can.  
   6 I haven't.  
   7 he doesn't.  
   8 she did.  
   9 they won't.  
   10 I do.

2 (possible answers)
   1 'Say 'hello' to him for me.'  
   2 'Congratulations!'  
   'I don't believe it.'  
   4 'Good luck!'  
   5 'That's interesting.'  
   6 'That's terrible.'  
   7 'What a nuisance!'  
   8 'I am terrible.'  
   9 'That's a surprise.'  
   10 'What a pity.'

3 1 nor/neither do cats.  
   2 nor/neither has the 3.15.  
   3 'Nor/Neither was I.'  
   4 nor/neither did Sally.  
   5 so does his brother.  
   6 so are the potatoes.  
   7 nor/neither does her brother.  
   8 so were we.  
   9 'Nor/Neither do her parents.'  
   10 'So will I.'

page 297

4 1 ... but I do.  
   2 ... 'I have.'  
   3 ... but I don't think he will.  
   4 ... 'I'm trying to.'  
   5 ... 'Of course I won't.'  
   6 ... but I can't.  
   7 ... but I don't want to.  
   8 ... but I haven't.  
   9 ... 'No, I didn't.'  
   10 ... but I hope to.

5 1 I don't know why.  
   2 Have you seen my mother today?  
   3 I don't think so.  
   4 Sorry, you can't come in here.  
   5 Do you want some help?  
   6 Do you know what I think?  
   7 I can't understand a word.  
   8 The house is cold.  
   9 It's raining again.  
   10 I've lost my keys.

6 1 They're paper clips, aren't they?  
   2 It's a diary, isn't it?  
   3 It's a hole-punch, isn't it?  
   4 It's an address book, isn't it?  
   5 They're rulers, aren't they?  
   6 They're calculators, aren't they?

page 298

1 1 ✓ 2 x 3 x 4 x 5 ✓ 6 x 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 x 10 x

2 1 can't you?  
   2 won't she?  
   3 have you?  
   4 doesn't he?  
   5 was there?  
   6 didn't she?  
   7 does he?  
   8 isn't it?  
   9 is it?  
   10 will you?  
   11 haven't they?  
   12 have they?  
   13 aren't I?  
   14 don't they?  
   15 did it?

3 1 They haven't gone home, have they?  
   2 We need tickets, don't we?  
   3 You'd like some more coffee, wouldn't you?  
   4 Mike was away yesterday, wasn't he?  
   5 Angela didn't tell you her news, did she?  
   6 Sophie can't play the piano, can she?  
   7 There will be room for everybody, won't there?  
   8 Your father doesn't eat meat, does he?  
   9 These books don't belong to the library, do they?  
   10 You're tired, aren't you?

4 1 it wasn't.  
   2 he wouldn't.  
   3 it doesn't.  
   4 it did.  
   5 it won't.

5 1 Have they?  
   2 Won't you?  
   3 Do you?  
   4 Has it?  
   5 Didn't I?
index

a, an: see articles
a bit with comparatives 225
a few
and a few of 181
and few, a little and little 175
a little
and a little of 181
with comparatives 225
a lot
a lot (of) 174, 181
with comparatives 225
able: be able to 81
above 280–281
across 282–283
active and passive 94
active and passive verb forms 300
adjectives 209–211; 216–220
after be, become, etc 211
and adverbs: the difference 212
comparatives and superlatives 221–226
ending in -ly 217
followed by infinitives 128
with enough/too + infinitive 129
words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217
adverb particles (away, back etc) 142–143
adverbs 212–215; 217
and adjectives: the difference 212
comparatives and superlatives 227
of manner 212
other adverbs 213
position 214–215
words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217
advice: uncountable 198
afraid
afraid of 305
with be 3
after
and afterwards 307
with present tense for future meaning 41, 236
against 280–281
ages with be 3
ago, for and since 307
agree
+ infinitive 122–123
agree with 305
all
all, every and each 179
all, everybody and everything 178
and all of 181
position with noun or verb 178
along 282–283
already
already, yet and still 308
position 64, 214–215
with present perfect 64
also: position 214–215
although 234
and but 237
always: position 214–215
and 234, 238
with adjectives 211
angry about/with 305
annoyed and annoying 216
another 307
any
and any of 181
and some 170–171
anybody 172
anyone 172
anything 172
anything to 130
anywhere 172
aren’t I? 288, 301
arrive at/in 141, 283, 305
articles 151–166
a and an 152
a/an and one 153
a/an for jobs, roles etc 156
a/an in descriptions 157
expressions without articles (e.g. in bed, have breakfast, next Monday) 162–163
names 160–161
not used with my etc 163, 189
pronunciation 152
special cases 162–163
the and a/an 154–155
the not used in generalisations 158–159
with countable and uncountable nouns 153
as
and like 307
as, than and that 308
jobs and roles 307
not used without article 163
as ... as 228–229
as I am or as me 228
as soon as 234
with present tense for future meaning 41, 236
ask
ask for 141, 305
ask somebody to do something 125
at (preposition of place) 279
and in 279
at a party 306
at the bottom/top/side 306
at the cinema/theatre 306
at, to and in 283
at (preposition of time) 274–275
at the beginning 306
at/in the end 306
back: at the back 163
bad at (…ing) 133, 305
baggage: uncountable 198
be 1–5
auxiliary: see progressive, passive
be able to 81
be born 97
be careful 146
be in/out/away/back etc 142
contractions 2, 3
there is 6–7
with hungry, thirsty, ages etc 3
because 234
and so 237
and why 308
become + adjective 211
expect
+ infinitive 122–123
expect somebody to do something 125
explain: structures 144, 305, 307
family: singular or plural verb 197
farther, farthest 222
fast: adjective and adverb 217
feel + adjective 211
fetch something 144
few
and few of 181
few, a few, little and a little 175
fill in (a form) 143
find up 143
fine
+ infinitive 122–108
+ infinitive or ...ing 308
friendly: adjective, not adverb 217
frightened: adjective, not adverb 217
from ... to
movement 283
time 276
front: at the front 163
fruit: uncountable 198
further, furthest 222
future 35–44
future passive 96
going to 36–37
of be 5
of have 9
present progressive 38
simple present 41
will 39–40
gerunds: see -ing forms
get: structures 140
+ adjective 211
get into, out of, on, off 141, 305
get out 142
get somebody something 144
get to a place 305
get up 142
have got 11
give
give back 143
give somebody something 144
give up ...ing 134, 143
glasses 197
go
...ing 134
go away/back/in/out/on 142
going to 36–37
gonna 301
gone and been 61
good at (...ing) 133, 305
good luck 291
got: have got 11
gotta (= ‘got to’) 301
grammar and vocabulary
adjectives that go with particular nouns 219
adverbs of degree; subjects of study 216
animal behaviour 117
animals, birds and other creatures 155
cities and countries 147
clothes 33
common adjectives 176, 177
common adjectives with somebody etc 183
common expressions with reflexive pronouns 191
common imperative expressions 146
containers 199
dates 275
discovery, invention, creation 55
duration 285
eight useful things 91
games 19
giving directions 43
go with spare-time activities 215
housework 71
interests 159
jewellery 261
jobs 91
kinds of things 156
learning and using a language 127
materials 153, 165
musical instruments 241
names of languages 251
one-word noun + noun structures 205
public notices 131
relations 13
seven useful things 152
showing our feelings 291
some useful questions 107
the bathroom 190
things from the office 297
things that come in twos 180
things that fly 256
things that people can do 290
time 231
towns 174
travelling by air 100
useful time-expressions with for 277
vehicles 137
weather 187

group nouns 197
hair: uncountable 198
happen to 141, 305
hard: adjective and adverb 217
hardly
used without not 115
hardly ever: position 214–215
hate
+ -ing form 135
+ infinitive 135
not normally used in progressive 30–31
have 8–11
auxiliary: see perfect
don’t have to and mustn’t 77
have a good journey/holiday 146
have breakfast, a shower, a good flight etc 10
have got 11
have some (more) ... 146
have something done 145
have to 76–78
he 186–187
hear
and listen to 307
somebody do/doing something 308
help
help yourself 190
help! 146
help somebody to do something 125
her
object pronoun 186–187
possessive: her and his 188–189
hers 190
herself 191
him 186–187
himself 191
his 188–189, 190
and her 188
holiday: on holiday 162
home 307
without article 162
hope 307
+ infinitive 122–123
not normally used in progressive 30–31
hospital: expressions without article 162
how
How do you spell/pronounce …? 107
How long does it take to …? 107
How long have you been here? and How long are you here for? 107
how many as subject 108–109
how many/much 173
how old/tall/far etc 106
how to … 269
hundred: a hundred 163
hungry with be 3
hurry up 142, 146
I 186–187
I am sorry 291
I don’t believe it 291
I don’t mind 31
I hope so/not 31
I see (=‘I understand’) 30
idea: the idea of …ing 305
if 243–252
and when 307
if I go or if I went 248
if I were you 247
in indirect questions 266
position of if-clauses 244
unless 244
unreal past 249
with past tense and would
meaning ‘not real’ or ‘not probable’ 246
with present tense for future
meaning 41, 245, 248
imperatives 146
in (preposition of time) 274–275
in/at the end 306
in/on time 306
in (preposition of place) 278–279
in a picture 306
in a coat/dress/hat 306
in a … voice 306
in and at 279
in and on 278
in front of 280–281
in or of after superlatives 226
in pen/pencil 306
in the middle 306
in the rain/snow 306
in the sky 306
in, at and to 283
indirect speech 263–272
here and now words 268
if and whether 266
indirect questions 266
infinitives 269
present reporting verbs 267
pronouns 264–265
say and tell 264
tenses 264–265
infinitives 119–130
after adjectives 128
after nouns (e.g. letters to write) 130
after verbs 122–123
in indirect speech 269
infinitive of purpose 121
it with infinitive subjects 126–127
verb + object + infinitive 124–125
with adjective and enough/too
129
with and without to 120
information: uncountable 198
-ing forms (gerunds) 131–135
after adjectives 132–133
after to 133
as subjects 131
verb + -ing form 134–135
-ing forms (present participles)
in progressive (continuous)
verb forms: see present
progressive, past
progressive etc
interested
and interesting 216
interested in 305
with be 3
into 282–283
irregular comparatives 222
irregular plurals 196
irregular verbs 299
it 186–187
used for countries, animals,
times, dates, distance, weather
186–187
it depends 31
it doesn’t matter 30
its 188–189
and it’s 189, 301
itself 191
jeans 197
just 307
position 214–215
with present perfect 64
keep on …ing 134
kind to 305
know: not normally used in progressive 30–31
knowledge: uncountable 198
last: expressions without prepositions 274
last year etc: no article 162
late: after etc: no article 162
laugh at 141, 305
learn + -ing 122–123
leaving out words
in speech 293
relative who, which, that 257
left: on the left 163
lend somebody something 144
less than 225
let and make 307
let in 143
let’s 147
lie down 142
like (verb)
+ …ing 135
+ infinitive 135
not normally used in progressive 30–31
like and as 307
listen to 141, 305
and hear 307
little
and little of 181
little, a little, few and a few 175
lonely: adjective, not adverb 217
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>+ adjective 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after/at/for</td>
<td>141, 305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look out!</td>
<td>142, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look round</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up (something in a dictionary etc)</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look, see and watch</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots (of)</td>
<td>174, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>+ ...ing 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>+ infinitive 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>not normally used in progressive 30–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lovely: adjective, not adverb</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luck: uncountable</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luggage: uncountable</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made of</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>and do 307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>and let 307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make somebody something</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make yourself at home</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make yourself comfortable</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>and many of 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>and much 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>too many 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married to</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>and might 82–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>and may not and can’t 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>permission 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>186–187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me too</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean: not normally used in progressive 30–31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might and may</td>
<td>82–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>million: a million</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind …ing</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mine</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modal verbs</td>
<td>73–92, and see entries for individual verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monthly: adjective and adverb</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>and more of 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>in comparatives 222–225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>more than 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>and most of 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>in superlatives 222–223, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountains: the mountains</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>and many 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>and much of 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>too much 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>with comparatives 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>75, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>and should 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustn’t and don’t have to</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>188–189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myself</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>names with or without the</td>
<td>160–161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>+ infinitive 122–123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>somebody to do something 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>not normally used in progressive 30–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negatives</td>
<td>112–115; see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>and neither of 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>neither ... nor 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>neither can I etc 294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>neither, either and both 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>position 214–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>tenses 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>used without not 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news: uncountable</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>expressions without prepositions 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>Friday etc: no article 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice to</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no (= ‘not any’)</td>
<td>and none (of) 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>and not 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>...ing 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>used without not 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no one</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>used without not 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none (of)</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-progressive verbs</td>
<td>30–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nor can</td>
<td>1 etc 294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>and no 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>I hope not 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not much/many and little/few</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used without not</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>195–208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>+ infinitive (e.g. letters to write) 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>countable and uncountable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>nouns 198–199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>group nouns 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>noun + noun 204–205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>one(s) 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>possessives with ‘s and ‘s 201–203, 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>singular and plural 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>used without not 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>or in after superlatives 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>with determiners 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>282–283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer somebody something</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer somebody something</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer somebody something</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer somebody something</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often: position</td>
<td>214–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>(preposition of place) 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>and in 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>foot 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>holiday 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>page 22, 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>the phone 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>the radio 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>TV 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>(preposition of time) 274–275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>in time 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one and a/an</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one(s)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>only a little/few 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>position 214–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>the only 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>280–281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orchestra: singular or plural verb</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought to</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>188–189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ours</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of</td>
<td>282–283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of</td>
<td>282–283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>282–283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pair</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
passives 93–102
future introduction to passives 94
passive and active verb forms 300
present perfect 99
present progressive 98
simple past 97
simple present 95
past 282–283
past continuous: see past progressive
past participles (worked, broken, seen etc)
in perfect tenses 58, 68
in passives 94
past perfect 68–69
past progressive 51–53
past simple: see simple past
past tenses 45–56
of be 4
of have 9
past progressive 51–53
past progressive and simple past 52–53
simple past 46–50
with if 246–248
pay and pay for 141, 305
people 196
most people or most of the people 181
perfect tenses 57–72
present perfect 58–65
present perfect progressive 66–67
past perfect 68–69
personal pronouns 186–187
phrasal verbs 142–143
pick up 143
place names with or without the 160–161
plan + infinitive 122–123
pleased with 305
plenty (of) 174, 181
plural nouns 196
police: plural verb 197
polite to 306
possessive determiners and pronouns 188–190
mine, your etc 190
my, your etc 188–189
possessive nouns with ‘s and s’ 201–203, 205
practise …ing 134
prefer
+ infinitive 122–123
not normally used in progressive 30–31
prepositions 273–286
+ing form 132–133
after particular verbs 141
at (place) 279
at, in and on (time) 274–275
by and until 276
common expressions with prepositions 306
for, during and while 277
from … to (time) 276
in and on (place) 278
in questions 111
in relative clauses 258
movement 282–283
other prepositions of place 280–281
present participles (−ing forms) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc
present perfect 58–67
forms 58–59
passive 99
present perfect and present 61, 67
present perfect and simple past compared 60–61
present perfect progressive 66–67
time words 62–63
with already, yet and just 64
with since and for 65
present progressive 23–29
and simple present 28–29
for future 38
passive 98
present simple: see simple present
present tenses 15–34
simple present 16–22
present progressive (continuous) 23–27
the two present tenses compared 28–29
non-progressive verbs 30–31
present and present perfect 61, 67
prisoner: expressions without article 162
probably: position 214–215
promise
+ infinitive 122–123
promise somebody something 144
punctuation 301–302
put down 143
put on (clothes) 143
pyjamas 197
question tags 288–289, 292
question words 2, 106–107
as subjects 108–109
questions 102–111
indirect questions 266
prepositions in questions 111
question words 2, 106–107
question-words as subjects 108–109
questions with long subjects 110
yes/no questions 104–105
see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses
radio: on the radio 163
read somebody something 144
reason for 306
reflexives (myself etc) 191
and each other 191
refuse + infinitive 122–123
relative pronouns (who, whom, which, that, what) and relative clauses 253–262
leaving out relative pronouns 257
prepositions in relative clauses 258
that 256, 259
what 259
who and which 254–255
whom 255
remember
+ infinitive or …ing 308
not normally used in progressive 30–31
reply questions 291, 292
reported speech: see indirect speech
right with be 3
right: on the right 163
round 282–283
’s and s’ possessives 201–203, 205
same 308
INDEX 361
understand: not normally used in progressive 30–31
university: expressions without article 162
unless 244
until/till 234, 276
+ present with future meaning 41, 236
and by 276
up 282–283
us 186–187
used to 89
usually: position 214–215
verbs with adverb particles
(phrasal verbs) 142–143
verbs with infinitives 122–123
love, like, hate 135
with object + infinitive 124–125
verbs with prepositions 141
verbs with two objects 144
very and too 308
very much: position 213
wait: structures 141, 308
wait for me 146
wake up 142
wanna (= ‘want to’) 301
want
+ infinitive 122–123
not normally used in progressive 30–31
want somebody to do something 124
wash up (cups, plates etc) 143
watch, look and see 308
we 186–187
weekly: adjective and adverb 217
well: position 213
were: if I were you 247
what (question word)
and which 308
as subject 108–109
what …? as subject 108–109
what ... like? 107
what a nuisance/pity 291
what time/colour/size/sort of …?
etc 3, 106
what to … 269
what (relative pronoun) 259
when
+ present with future meaning 41, 236
and if 307
when to … 269
Where are you from / do you come from? 107
whether 266
which (question word)
and what 308
which …? as subject 108–109
which (relative pronoun) 254–255
while 234
+ present with future meaning 41, 236
while, for and during 277
who (question word) as subject 108–109
who (relative pronoun) 254–255
whom 308
relative pronoun 255
whose and who’s 301
why and because 308
will 39–40
with + article 163
without
+ article 163
without …ing 133
won’t 39
word order 304
work
expressions without article 162
uncountable 198
worse, worst 222
would with if 246–249
would like + infinitive 88
would like somebody to do something 124
write somebody something 144
write to 306
wrong
be wrong 3
wrong with 306
yet
with present perfect 64
yet, still and already 308
you 186–187
your 188–189
yours 190
yourself, yourselves 191
Short grammar explanations are easy to remember. Colour makes the grammar clear.

Clear simple examples show how the grammar works.

**AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?**

All yes/no questions begin with a verb. To make questions: put an auxiliary verb before the subject. (Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)

**STATEMENT:** The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay.

**QUESTION:** Is the taxi coming? Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late? Can you pay?

**texts, articles, quotations and poems use the grammar.**

About the authors

Michael Swan and Catherine Walter are experts in English and language teaching. Michael is the author of Practical English Usage. Catherine is a Lecturer in Applied Linguistics at Oxford University. Their well-known books include The Good Grammar Book and How English Works (the basis for Oxford English Grammar Course Basic and Intermediate).

Hundreds of exercises practise the grammar.

Questions and negatives: more practice

1. Questions with and without do/does/did. Ask about the words in italics.
   - She said something. What did she say?
   - She cooked dinner. What did she do?
   - She cooked eggs. What did she cook?
   - She baked a cake. What did she bake?
   - She baked a cake. What did she bake?

2. Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself.

   *You said we...*  
   - Just you and me.  
   - In the sea.  
   - In the sky.  
   - I never call.  
   - I never call.

   Your poem. I'm going away...  
   - Three times to do everything...  
   - I don't need...  
   - Can play the...  
   - I can say...  

   I can see...  
   - I can see...  
   - I'll never do...  
   - I won't...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  
   - I'll never...  

   1. Text, articles, quotations and poems use the grammar.

   - Internet exercises and grammar-and-vocabulary work
   - Tests in the book and online

   making digital sense

   Pronunciation for grammar CD-ROM practises rhythm, stress and intonation. Listen, think, repeat and record.

   Online exercises take you from practising grammar to using grammar.